



GUIDE



New

Hello!

FREE GIFT  
NOT FOR SALE

By A Group Of Supervisors

& King Lear

الفصل الدراسي الثاني

للمصف الثاني الثانوى



تطبيق  
التعلم التفاعلى

طبعة  
جديدة

طبقاً لأحدث مواصفات  
الورقة الامتحانية ٢٠٢٣-٢٠٢٤

2<sup>nd</sup>  
Sec.  
2024  
SECOND TERM  
عام - أزهر



# CONTENTS



قاموس المعاصر الناطق

## Module 3

### Travel

#### UNIT 7

Living abroad ..... page 9

#### UNIT 8

High-tech transport ..... page 57

#### UNIT 9

Conservation ..... page 101

#### Revision 3

..... page 149

## Module 4

### The media

#### UNIT 10

The news ..... page 155

#### UNIT 11

What a performance! ..... page 199

#### UNIT 12

Achievements and goals ..... page 257

#### Revision 4

..... page 301

## KING LEAR

page 312

### Second Term

توزيع منهج اللغة الإنجليزية للصف الثاني الثانوي للعام الدراسي ٢٠٢٤/٢٠٢٣

| Months   | New Hello! English for Secondary Schools Year Two (SB+WB) |
|----------|---|
| February | Units 7 + 8   |
| March    | Unit 8 cont. + Unit 9 + Revision 3 + Unit 10              |
| April    | Unit 10 cont. + Unit 11 + Unit 12                         |
| May      | General Revision - Final Tests                            |





## UNIT

# 7

## Living abroad

SB pages 6 : 15

WB pages 2 : 7

### Objectives :

#### ✧ Reading :

An extract from the novel *The Secret Garden* by Frances Hodgson Burnett

#### ✧ Writing :

A diary entry by a student who is living abroad

#### ✧ Listening :

Voice messages from students who are studying abroad

#### ✧ Speaking :

Discussing the pros and cons of working abroad

#### ✧ Language :

Present continuous Stative verbs

#### ✧ Life skills :

Critical thinking : Showing respect for people from different cultures





## PART I VOCABULARY

### 1 Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

|                      |                               |                          |                         |
|----------------------|-------------------------------|--------------------------|-------------------------|
| come across (phr. v) | يصادف - يجد بالصدفة           | independent (adj)        | مستقل - معتمد           |
| determination (n)    | إصرار / تصميم / عزيمة - تحديد | pick(ed) ... up (phr. v) | يُقل / يوصل - يلتقط     |
| encouragement (n)    | التشجيع                       | pick-up (n)              | شاحنة صغيرة             |
| get used to          | يعتاد علي                     | struggle (n)             | كفاح - نضال             |
| host family (n)      | عائلة مضيضة                   | struggle(d) (v)          | يُكافح - يُناضل - يثابر |

### 2 Important Vocabulary المفردات الهامة

|                      |                       |                     |                              |
|----------------------|-----------------------|---------------------|------------------------------|
| abroad (adv)         | بالخارج (خارج البلاد) | explain (ed) (v)    | يُفسّر - يوضح                |
| accommodation (n)    | إقامة - سكن           | explore (d) (v)     | يستكشف - يستجلي              |
| activity (n)         | نشاط                  |                     | - يتفحص                      |
| afterwards (adv)     | فيما بعد              | extract (n)         | مقتطف - اقتباس               |
| annoy(ed) (v)        | يضايق                 | gardener (n)        | بستاني                       |
| biology(adv)         | علم الأحياء           | harbour (n)         | مَرسى - مرفأ                 |
| celebration(n)       | احتفال                | lamb (n)            | خَل (صغير الغنم) - لحم الضأن |
| certificate(n)       | شهادة                 | lonely (adj)        | شاعر بالوحدة                 |
| challenge(d) (n - v) | تَحَدّي - يتحدى       | maid (n)            | خادِمة - وصيفة               |
| climber (n)          | مُتسلّق               | main (adj)          | أساسي / رئيسي                |
| concentrate (d) (v)  | يُرَكّز - ينتبه بشدة  | normal (adj)        | طبيعي - عادي                 |
| conditions (n)       | ظروف - أوضاع - شروط   | publish (ed) (v)    | يُنشر (كتاب - مقال ...)      |
| confident (adj)      | واثق - متفائل         | secret (n/adj)      | سِرّ - سِرّي                 |
| confused (adj)       | متحير - مرتبك         | servant (n)         | خادم - خادمة                 |
| creature (n)         | مخلوق - كائن          | specific(adj)       | مُحدّد - مخصوص               |
| current(adj)         | حالي - جاري           | stressed(adj)       | مضغوط - مُثقل بالأعباء       |
| degree(n)            | درجة / شهادة جامعية   | support(ed) (n - v) | دعم - يدعم                   |
| distract(ed) (v)     | يشتت - يصرف انتباه    |                     |                              |



|                   |                        |                       |                    |
|-------------------|------------------------|-----------------------|--------------------|
| distracted(adj)   | مُشْتَت                | understandable(adj)   | متطوع - يتطوع      |
| drought(n)        | الجفاف                 | volunteer(ed) (v - n) | يَزِن - يفكر ملياً |
| experience(d) (v) | يمر بموقف - يعيش تجربة | weigh(ed) (v)         | يُضَفِّر - صافرة   |
| experience(n)     | تجربة - مغامرة         | whistle(d) (v - n)    |                    |
| temporary(adj)    | مؤقت - غير دائم        |                       |                    |

### 3 Definitions تعريفات

| Memorise   | Understand   |
|--|--|
| <b>come across (phr. v)</b><br>يصادف - يجد ... بالصدفة | to meet, find, or discover someone or something by chance بالصدفة  |
| <b>determination(n)</b><br>إصرار - عزم - عزيمة         | the quality of trying to do something even when it is difficult  |
| <b>encouragement(n)</b><br>التشجيع - حافز              | - the act of encouraging somebody to do something<br>- something that encourages somebody                          |
| <b>get used to</b> يعتاد علي                           | to have experienced يُحَرِّب something so that it no longer seems surprising, difficult, strange etc.              |
| <b>host family(n)</b><br>عائلة مضييفة                  | a family which provides board وجبات and lodging to students, usually for a fee أجر                                 |
| <b>independent(adj)</b><br>مستقل - معتمد على نفسه      | confident واثق and able to do things by yourself in your own way, without needing help or advice from other people |
| <b>pick ... up(phr. v)</b><br>يُقَلِّ / يوصل           | to let someone get into your car, boat etc. and take them somewhere  |
| <b>struggle (v)</b><br>يُكَافِح - يُنَاضِل - يثابر     | to try extremely hard to achieve something, even though it is very difficult                                       |

### Exercise On Vocabulary

#### • Understand

- Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

#### 1 Key vocabulary

- I was over the moon when I ..... an old friend in the street the other day.  
a. came across    b. determined    c. got used to    d. picked up  
(أبو حمص ٢٠٢٣)
- When Mona went to London to learn English, she stayed with a very kind ..... family.  
a. hostile    b. host    c. guest    d. cruel  
(الدلتجات ٢٠٢٣)



3. All big medical companies were full of ..... to find a vaccine for Covid-19.

(ادكو ٢٠٢٣)

- a. respiration                      b. determination  
c. accommodation                  d. habitation

4. It took some time to ..... my new schedule, but I'm comfortable with it now.

(شربين ٢٠٢٣)

- a. used to                      b. use to                      c. get used to                      d. uses to

5. The school offered students prizes of money and a lot of ..... for their good work.

(ادكو ٢٠٢٣)

- a. enforcements                      b. encouragements  
c. contracts                      d. efforts

6. Teens want to feel ..... and live their lives the way they want.

(ميت سلسيل ٢٠٢٣)

- a. independence                      b. independent                      c. dependent                      d. self-employed

7. Hi Ali, can you ..... me up from the stations, please?

(المحمودية ٢٠٢٣)

- a. pick                      b. get                      c. grow                      d. bring

8. Successful people ..... to reach their goals.

(دار السلام ٢٠٢٣)

- a. sleep                      b. struggle                      c. smuggle                      d. steal

## 2 Important vocabulary

9. Every failure one meets adds so much to one's .....

(شمال بورسعيد ٢٠٢٣)

- a. experiment                      b. success                      c. experience                      d. wealth

10. When was the novel entitled "The Secret Garden" .....

(العمرانية ٢٠٢٣)

- a. come out                      b. borne                      c. published                      d. established

11. I felt ..... when he asked me that question. I couldn't think clearly.

(المحمودية ٢٠٢٣)

- a. aware                      b. confused                      c. concentrated                      d. encouraged

12. Concentrate on your goal. Don't be ..... by unimportant details.

(ابو حمص ٢٠٢٣)

- a. dissatisfied                      b. distracted                      c. determined                      d. discovered

13. We can see a lot of ships in the maintenance..... They are being serviced.

(طما ٢٠٢٣)

- a. portal                      b. seaside                      c. harbour                      d. anchor

14. Students like it when they have a/an ..... they can meet.

- a. whistle                      b. challenge                      c. entry                      d. sound

15. When a lesson is ....., I can depend on myself.

- a. understandable                      b. stressed                      c. confused                      d. confident



16. I find it strange that he feels ..... although he has several close friends.  
a. confused      b. distracted      c. determined      d. lonely
17. It was funny when the referee's ..... didn't work.  
a. whistle      b. challenge      c. entry      d. sound
18. He was a kind master who never asked his ..... to do hard jobs.  
a. servants      b. leaders      c. volunteers      d. grandparents
19. I am ..... to achieve my goal and join the faculty of medicine.  
a. picked up      b. determined      c. got used      d. come across
20. Don't ask him to do any more jobs. He is already .....  
a. understandable      b. stressed      c. independent      d. confident
21. When children ..... things for the first time, they may be worried and make mistakes.  
a. experience      b. distract      c. publish      d. sound
22. This woman works as a ..... in this house where she does the housework.  
a. servant      b. maid      c. volunteer      d. a & b
23. Last year's ..... destroyed most of the forests in the area.  
a. diary      b. accent      c. draught      d. drought
24. He is thin. He only ..... 34 kilograms.  
a. explores      b. feels      c. weighs      d. wishes
25. Walid ..... to look after the old lady.  
a. stressed      b. confused      c. volunteered      d. sounded
26. I have missed the train. I will ..... the possibility of taking a bus.  
a. explore      b. feel      c. give      d. wish
27. Sama is intelligent. I am ..... that she will make the correct choice.  
a. understandable      b. stressed      c. confused      d. confident

### 3 Definitions

28. .... is the quality of trying to do something even when it is difficult. (سوهاج ٢٠٢٣)  
a. Determination      b. Action  
c. Communication      d. Participation
29. "....." means to find, or discover someone or something by chance. (ساقلة ٢٠٢٣)  
a. Get used to      b. Come up with  
c. All in all      d. Come across



30. .... is the scientific study of the life and structure of plants and animals. (ديروط ٢٠٢٣)  
a. Chemistry b. History c. Botany d. Biology
31. '.....' is something that motivates somebody.  
a. Presentation b. Encouragement c. Experience d. Determination
32. '.....' means to have experienced something so that it no longer seems surprising, difficult, strange etc.  
a. Get used to b. All in all c. Come across d. Keep in touch
33. The adjective '.....' means confident and able to do things by yourself in your own way, without needing help or advice from other people.  
a. independent b. dependent c. confused d. stressed
34. To ..... someone up means to let someone get into your car, boat etc. and take them somewhere.  
a. struggle b. weigh c. back d. pick
35. The verb '.....' means to try extremely hard to achieve something, even though it is very difficult.  
a. explore b. encourage c. struggle d. distract
36. A ..... family provides board and lodging to students, usually for a fee أجر.  
a. guest b. big c. host d. hostess

## PART II

## VOCABULARY STUDY

## 1 Verbal Collocations متلازمات لفظية

|         |  |       |   |
|---------|--|-------|---|
| become  | independent<br>يصبح مستقل                |       | a great time<br>يقضي وقتًا رائعًا       |
| do      | an action / activity<br>يقوم بعمل / نشاط | have  | a break<br>يأخذ استراحة                 |
|         | my best<br>أبذل ما في وسعي               |       | ... for dinner<br>يتناول ... على العشاء |
| feel    | quite confused<br>يشعر بالحيرة إلى حد ما |       | fun<br>يمرح                             |
| find    | a big difference<br>يجد اختلافًا كبيرًا  | play  | the guitar<br>يعزف على الجيتار          |
| get     | distracted<br>يتشتت                      | share | the experience<br>يعيش التجربة مع       |
| make    | notes on<br>يدون ملاحظات عن              | show  | respect for<br>يظهر الاحترام لـ         |
| perform | an action / activity<br>يقوم بعمل / نشاط |       |   |



## 2

## Synonyms مترادفات

| Word          | Synonym (=Meaning)                                     |
|---------------|--|
| come across   | يصادف - يجد بالصدفة                                    |
| confident     | متفائل   |
| confused      | متحير - مرتبك  |
| determine     | يحدد   |
| distracted    | مُشتت  |
| encourage     | يُشجّع   |
| encouragement | التشجيع  |
| explore       | يستجلي - يتفحص - يُمعن التفكير في                      |
| independent   | مستقل - معتمد على نفسه                                 |
| lonely        | شاعر بالوحدة - منطوي                                   |
| main          | أساسي / رئيسي  |
| pick ... up   | يُقلّ / يوصل   |
| struggle      | يُكافح - يُناضل - يثابر                                |
|               | encounter, find by chance, meet by chance              |
|               | optimistic, hopeful                                    |
|               | puzzled, at a loss, at sixes and sevens                |
|               | indentify  |
|               | inattentive, confused, puzzled                         |
|               | motivate, inspire, urge                                |
|               | inspiration, motivation, reinforcement                 |
|               | look at, examine                                       |
|               | self-reliant, self-supporting                          |
|               | lonesome, solitary, by oneself                         |
|               | chief, basic, fundamental                              |
|               | collect  |
|               | strive, do one's best, spare no effort, compete, fight |

## 3

## Antonyms متضادات

| Word          | Antonym (= Opposite)        |
|---------------|-----------------------------|
| confident     | متفائل / يانس               |
| distracted    | متنبه                       |
| encourage     | يُثبّط العزيمة              |
| encouragement | تثبيط - توهين               |
| independent   | متواكل - خاضع               |
| lonely        | اجتماعي                     |
| struggle      | يستسلم - يُذعن              |
|               | pessimistic, hopeless       |
|               | attentive, clear-headed     |
|               | discourage                  |
|               | discouragement, frustration |
|               | dependent                   |
|               | sociable                    |
|               | give up, surrender          |

## 4

## Derivatives of key vocabulary مُشتقات المفردات الرئيسية

| determination     |                               |  |
|-------------------|-------------------------------|--|
| determine (v)     | يُصمم - يحدد                  | - The police determined the cause of the accident. |
| determination (n) | إصرار / تصميم / عزيمة - تحديد | - Determination helps you succeed.                 |
| determined (adj)  | مُصمم - عازم                  | - He is determined to achieve his goals in life.   |
| encouragement     |                               |  |
| encourage (v)     | يُشجّع - يُحفّز               | - I work hard because you have encouraged me.      |



|                     |                            |  |
|---------------------|----------------------------|--|
| encouragement (n)   | التشجيع                    | - I work hard because of your encouragement.           |
| encouraging (adj)   | مُشجّع / مُحفّز            | - Thank you for your encouraging words.                |
| <b>host</b>         |                            |  |
| host (v)            | يستضيف                     | - Mr Ashraf offered to host us in his house.           |
| host (n)            | مستضيف / مضيف              | - Mr Ashraf offered to be our host.                    |
| hostess (n)         | مستضيفة / مضيفة            | - We thanked our hostess.                              |
| <b>independent</b>  |                            |  |
| depend (v)          | يعتمد - يُعَوّل            | - You should depend on yourself.                       |
| dependence (n)      | اعتماد / تعويل - توابل     | - Dependence on yourself is a good quality.            |
| independence (n)    | استقلال - اعتماد على النفس | - Independence is a good quality.                      |
| dependent (adj)     | معتمد على غيره - متوابل    | - Huda's mother is dependent on her for physical care. |
| independent (adj)   | مُستقلّ - معتمد على نفسه   | - Being independent is a good quality.                 |
| dependently (adv)   | بتوابل                     | - You shouldn't behave dependently.                    |
| independently (adv) | باستقلالية                 | - You should behave independently.                     |
| <b>struggle</b>     |                            |  |
| struggle (v)        | يُكافح - يُناضل - يثابر    | - We admire the way you struggle to succeed.           |
| struggle (n)        | كفاح - نضال - معافرة       | - We admire your struggle to succeed.                  |

## 5 Expressions & Idioms تعبيرات و مصطلحات

|                      |                           |                          |                         |
|----------------------|---------------------------|--------------------------|-------------------------|
| a novel by           | رواية من تأليف            | different from / to      | مختلف عن                |
| a short time later   | بعد وقت قصير              | feel like (+ n / gerund) |                         |
| at first             | في البداية                |                          | يشعر وكأنه - يرغب في    |
| at the beginning of  | في بداية                  | for example,             | على سبيل المثال         |
| at this time of year | في هذا الوقت من العام     | help on a farm           | يساعد في أعمال المزرعة  |
| be confident with    | مُتمكّن من                | on his own               | بمفرده                  |
| be far away from     | يبتعد عن - يكون بعيداً عن | That's all I can do      | هذا كل ما يمكنني عمله   |
| by yourself          | بمفردك                    | There was nothing to do  | لم يكن هناك شيء يقوم به |

## 6 Verb + Preposition فعل + حرف جر

|                |                    |               |                 |
|----------------|--------------------|---------------|-----------------|
| come into      | يدخل               | struggle to   | يكافح لكي       |
| come to + inf. | يصير - يصبح        | struggle with | يُكافح في       |
| decide to      | يقرر أن            | talk about    | يتحدث عن        |
| look around    | ينظر حول - يبحث في | talk to/with  | يتحدث إلى (شخص) |



|             |                     |                  |                   |
|-------------|---------------------|------------------|-------------------|
| look out of | ينظر للخارج من خلال | think of / about | يُفكر في          |
| move to     | ينتقل إلى           | travel across    | يسافر عبر         |
| plan to     | يخطط أن             | work as          | يعمل كـ (+ وظيفة) |

## 7 Clear the confusion لاحظ الفرق

### servant - maid

- **servant** خادم (رجل أو امرأة)
  - He was kind to all the **servants** in his house.
- **maid** خادمة / وصيفة (تطلق على الأنثى فقط)
  - Mr Omar asked the **maid** to water the plants in the balcony.

### experiment - experience - experienced - expert

- **experiment (n)** تجربة علمية
  - Mr Hossam is doing an **experiment** in his laboratory.
- **experience (n)** الخبرة (كلمة لا تُعدّ)
  - Travelling gives us so much **experience**.
- **experience (n)** تجربة حياتية - موقف (كلمة تُعدّ)
  - Getting lost in my first visit to Cairo is an **experience** I will never forget.
- **experience (v)** يمر بتجربة - يعايش - يواجه
  - We **experienced** some difficult problems in 2020.
- **experienced (in) (adj)** ذو خبرة - مُحَنَّك
  - My grandfather was **experienced** in farming.
- **expert (in / on) (n)** خبير (في) (تستخدم كأسم)
  - Mr Hossam is an **expert** in teaching English.
  - She is an **expert** on heart disease.
- **expert (in / on / at) + (inf. + ing)** خبير (في) (تستخدم كصفة)
  - Mr Hossam is **expert** in (on / at) teaching English.

### lonely - alone

- **lonely = lonesome (adj)** شاعر بالعزلة - منطوي
  - I feel sorry for that **lonely** old woman.
  - He leads a very **lonely** life with no friends.
- **lonely = remote / desolate (adj)** ناءٍ - مُنْعَزَل
  - This old man lives in a **lonely** farmhouse.
- **alone = by (myself / yourself ...) = on (my / your ... own) (adj)** بمفرده - وحده (هذه الصفة لا تسبق الاسم)



- After their son had got married, they lived **alone**.  
 = After their son had got married, they lived **by themselves**.  
 = After their son had got married, they lived **on their own**.

### Exercise On Vocabulary study

★ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

- Young people need encouragement in order to succeed in life. (الفتح ٢٠٢٣)  
 "Encouragement" is a synonym for .....  
 a. settlement      b. reinforcement      c. replacement      d. amusement
- "We must give encouragement to students to succeed." The synonym of "encouragement" is ..... (القرين ٢٠٢٣)  
 a. depression      b. frustration      c. support      d. replacement
- Our team struggled to win the fight but failed. The antonym of the verb "struggle" is ..... (الفتح ٢٠٢٣)  
 a. suffer      b. surrender      c. fight      d. gain
- "You should appreciate your parents' struggle to make you have better life." The synonym of "struggle" is ..... (ساحل سليم ٢٠٢٣)  
 a. fight      b. betray      c. lift      d. blog
- The police took fingerprints and identified the body. The synonym of "identify" is ..... (رشيدي ٢٠٢٣)  
 a. determine      b. damage      c. remove      d. achieve
- Everyone can't be ..... on their parents all the time. They should find work. (ادفو ٢٠٢٣)  
 a. dependent      b. independent      c. independence      d. dependence
- My first novel ..... when I was twenty. (غرب الزقازيق ٢٠٢٣)  
 a. published      b. spreading      c. publishing      d. came out
- He spares no effort to help his family. This means he ..... (ابو المطامير ٢٠٢٣)  
 a. does his best      b. is lazy      c. is irresponsible      d. is inactive
- Achieving your aims in life requires that you ..... your best. (ساحل سليم ٢٠٢٣)  
 a. do      b. be      c. have      d. make
- What is the main factor of success? "Main" is similar in meaning to ".....". (شرق مدينة نصر ٢٠٢٣)  
 a. chief      b. secondary      c. available      d. minor
- Lonely and ..... give the same meaning.  
 a. sociable      b. of his own      c. off his own      d. lonesome
- Distracted and ..... give antonymous meanings.  
 a. confused      b. attentive      c. inattentive      d. puzzled
- Whenever I remember them, your words ..... me greatly.  
 a. encourage      b. encouraged      c. encouraging      d. encouragement
- Your words are greatly ..... to me.  
 a. encourage      b. encouraged      c. encouraging      d. encouragement



15. He never ..... on others.  
a. depends      b. independent      c. independently      d. independence
16. .... from others is one of his best qualities.  
a. Depends      b. Independent      c. Independently      d. Independence
17. Behaving ..... is one of his best qualities.  
a. depends      b. independent      c. independently      d. independence
18. She struggles ..... her children well.  
a. with educating      b. to educate      c. educating      d. b & c
19. I came ..... understand him only after I had known him well.  
a. in      b. out      c. to      d. up
20. Most people struggle ..... the high cost of living تكلفة المعيشة.  
a. with      b. to      c. by      d. outside
21. Osman is a .....  
a. dairy      b. maid      c. servant      d. b & c

### PART III

## READING & LISTENING

### 1 Reading Texts

#### The Secret Garden

(SB page 7)

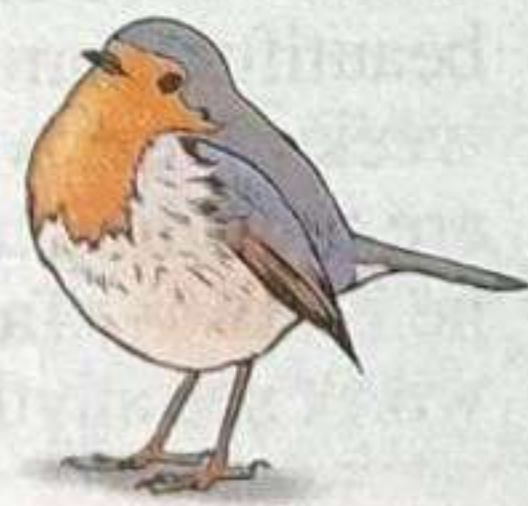
The **Secret Garden**<sup>(1)</sup> is a novel by Frances Hodgson Burnett. It was **published**<sup>(2)</sup> in Britain in 1911. At the beginning of the book, we meet the main character, Mary Lennox. Mary was born in India and her parents were rich. When Mary is nine years old, her parents **die**<sup>(3)</sup> and Mary **moves**<sup>(4)</sup> to England to live with her uncle. It is cold and very different from India, and Mary is unhappy at first.

Mary opened her eyes on that first morning because a **maid**<sup>(5)</sup> had come into her room.

"Are you my **servant**<sup>(6)</sup>?" she asked. "I'm Mrs Medlock's servant, and she is Mr Craven's servant," replied Martha, the maid. "Are you going outside today?" Mary looked around her. There was nothing to do in the bedroom.

"Who will go with me?" Mary asked. "You can be **independent**<sup>(7)</sup> and go out **by yourself**<sup>(8)</sup>. My brother is always **exploring**<sup>(9)</sup> **on his own**,"<sup>(10)</sup> said Martha. "There are some **gardens**<sup>(11)</sup>, but it is winter so nothing is **growing**<sup>(12)</sup> now. Oh, now Mrs Medlock's **bell**<sup>(13)</sup> is ringing. I must go!"

A short time **later**<sup>(14)</sup>, Mary was in the gardens when she **came across**<sup>(15)</sup> a small bird **singing**<sup>(16)</sup> in some trees **behind**<sup>(17)</sup> a wall. When she asked an old **gardener**<sup>(18)</sup> about the bird, he **whistled**<sup>(19)</sup> and the bird **flew**<sup>(20)</sup> to him.



(1) الحديقة السرية

(2) يُنشر

(3) يموت

(4) تنتقل

(5) خادمة - وصيفة

(6) خادم

(7) مُستقل

(8) بمفردك

(9) يتجول - يستكشف

(10) بمفرده

(11) بساتين

(12) نامي - كثيف

(13) جرس

(14) فيما بعد

(15) يصادف

(16) يُغرد - يصدح

(17) خلف - وراء

(18) بستائي

(19) يُصفّر

(20) يطير



"He was **lonely**<sup>(21)</sup> and we became friends," the old man **explained**<sup>(22)</sup>.

"I'm lonely," said Mary. "I don't know anyone in England."

"I'm sure you will **struggle**<sup>(23)</sup> at first, but you will **get used to**<sup>(24)</sup> the people here soon," said the gardener. **Suddenly**<sup>(25)</sup>, the small bird started singing.

"Why is he doing that?" she asked.

"I think he's **decided**<sup>(26)</sup> to be your friend, too." answered the gardener.

(21) شاعر بالوحدة

(22) يفسر - يوضح

(23) يُكافح - يناضل

(24) يعتاد علي

(25) فجأة

(26) يقرر

### Tarek's blog

(WB page 2)

It is two a.m. in Egypt. At this time, people are sleeping, but here in Australia, it is the afternoon, not the morning! At the moment, all the students in my language class are having a short break. Some of them are drinking coffee, but I'm writing this blog. Most of the students are looking out of the window. We can see Sydney **harbour**<sup>(1)</sup> and it's beautiful. I am staying in Australia for another four weeks. Next week, my Uncle Waleed is visiting me and we are travelling across the country. I hope he enjoys it because he is always **falling asleep**<sup>(2)</sup> when we travel by bus and he won't see anything! I'll write about that in my next blog.



(1) ميناء

(2) يغلبه النعاس

To : parents@mail.com

(SB page 10)

From : Amir@mail.com

Dear Mum and Dad

I've now been in India for a month. I am enjoying it here, but the **volunteer**<sup>(1)</sup> work is quite difficult! This week,

I am helping on a farm. There are lots of **baby goats**<sup>(2)</sup> at this time of year. So the farmer and I are **weighing**<sup>(3)</sup> them to **check**<sup>(4)</sup> that they are healthy.

Life is very different here. The food **tastes**<sup>(5)</sup> different. I found it difficult to eat at first, but I am getting used to it now. Every day, I see different animals, buildings and people, too. I wish you were here so we could share the **experience**<sup>(6)</sup>. I **miss**<sup>(7)</sup> you both, too!

Write soon,

Love from Amir



(1) متطوع

(2) صغار الماعز

(3) يزن

(4) يتحقق - يتأكد

(5) يعطي مذاق

(6) تجربة - مغامرة

(7) يفتقد



## 2 Listening Texts

**Ahmed** : I hope you have a great time in England. Don't worry if you struggle with the course in the beginning. After a few weeks you'll get used to the lessons.

(SB page 6)

(1) مفهوم

**Adam** : I'll just do my best in the lessons. That's all I can do. Did I tell you that the mother from my host family is going to come and pick me up from the airport when I arrive ?

**Ahmed** : That's great! So, you won't be alone when you get there.

**Adam** : Exactly. But I don't want them to take me everywhere and do everything for me. I want to be independent while I'm in England.

**Ahmed** : Yes, that's **understandable**<sup>(1)</sup>. But it will be good to get some encouragement if you feel like your English isn't good enough or anything like that.

**Adam** : You're right. I know that living and studying in England won't be easy, but with a little bit of determination I can do it.

### Speaker 1 :

(SB page 8)

**Teen boy** : Hi Khaled! How are you? I'm having a great time here in Sydney. Australia is such a beautiful country and the sun always seems to be **shining**<sup>(1)</sup> here!



(1) مشرقة

(2) يشم هواء البحر

(3) يركز على

(4) ليلاً ونهاراً

(5) مضطرب - مرتبك

It's so wonderful! Every day-after I've finished my lessons, I go down to the beach to have a break from studying and **smell the sea air**<sup>(2)</sup>. I have a few good friends here now so we usually go together. The only problem is that sometimes I find it too difficult to **concentrate on**<sup>(3)</sup> my lessons because I'm thinking about going to the beach afterwards!

### Speaker 2 :

**Teen girl** : Hi Dad. I hope everything's OK at home. I'm fine, but I'm finding it quite difficult to get used to life in Tokyo - everything is so different here. It's not like at home where it's quiet all the time. It's always noisy because of the cars on the road **day and night**<sup>(4)</sup>! But the most difficult thing about this experience is that I don't know enough Japanese at the moment. People talk to me and I only understand a little bit of what they're saying, so I'm always feeling **confused**<sup>(5)</sup>. I hope things will get better!



**Speaker 3 :**

**Teen boy :** Hi Mum! I miss you and everyone at home. I'm having a good time here in Barcelona. I feel so happy to be here and there are so many fun things I still want to do here, like visiting more of the beautiful buildings in the city. I'm getting a little bit better at Spanish every day - today I went to a café with friends and I remembered enough to buy some lunch. I came home feeling really good!

**PART IV LANGUAGE****Stative Verbs :****الأفعال التقريرية :**

| Types of Verbs   | أنواع الأفعال |
|--|---------------|
| <b>1 Stative Verbs</b> <b>الأفعال التقريرية</b><br>هي أفعال تصف حالة ولا تُستخدم في الأزمنة المستمرة، ومن أمثلة هذه الأفعال:<br>be – love – hate – dislike – seem ... etc.<br><b>ex.</b> - He is being happy. (X) - He is happy. (✓)   |               |
| <b>2 Dynamic (Action) Verbs</b> <b>أفعال الحركة</b><br>هي أفعال تصف حدث أو حركة ويمكن أن تُستخدم في الأزمنة المستمرة، ومن أمثلة هذه الأفعال:<br>play – visit – build – help – write ... etc.<br><b>ex.</b> - She is writing an essay. (✓) - She writes an essay every week. (✓)  |               |
| <b>3 Verbs that are both Dynamic and Stative</b> <b>الأفعال التقريرية والحركية</b><br>هي أفعال تصف حدث أو حركة بمعنى معين وتُستخدم في الأزمنة المستمرة، وتصف حالة بمعنى آخر ولا تُستخدم في الأزمنة المستمرة ومن أمثلة هذه الأفعال:<br>be – have – see – smell – taste<br><b>ex.</b> - She is having lunch now. (✓) (يتناول)<br>- She has lunch at three o'clock. (✓) (يتناول)<br>- She is having a tablet. (X) (يمتلك) - She has a tablet. (✓) (يمتلك) |               |

**أهم الأفعال التقريرية Most Important Stative Verbs****1 Feelings and emotions** **أفعال الأحاسيس والمشاعر**

|         |                   |         |               |
|---------|-------------------|---------|---------------|
| care    | يهتم - يراعى      | miss    | يشفق - يفتقد  |
| desire  | يرغب              | need    | يحتاج         |
| dislike | يكره              | please  | يسعد          |
| hate    | يكره              | prefer  | يفضل          |
| impress | يُبهِّر - يؤثر في | satisfy | يُرضي - يُشبع |



|      |                |      |       |
|------|----------------|------|-------|
| like | يحب            | want | يريد  |
| love | يحب            | wish | يتمنى |
| mind | يمانع / يُبالي |      |       |

## 2 أفعال القياس Measurement

|            |               |                      |               |
|------------|---------------|----------------------|---------------|
| consist of | يتكون من      | include              | يشمل / يتضمن  |
| contain    | يحتوي على     | measure              | يبلغ مقاسه    |
| cost       | تبلغ تكلفته   | suit                 | يناسب - يلائم |
| deserve    | يستحق         | weigh (=have weight) | يبلغ وزنه     |
| fit        | يناسب - يلائم |                      |               |

## 3 أفعال الملكية Possession

|        |                       |         |       |
|--------|-----------------------|---------|-------|
| belong | يخص / ينتمي إلى       | own     | يمتلك |
| have   | يمتلك                 | possess | يمتلك |
| owe    | يدين بـ (مال / معروف) |         |       |

## 4 أفعال الحواس Senses

|           |           |       |                |
|-----------|-----------|-------|----------------|
| feel      | يعطي ملمس | see   | يري            |
| hear      | يسمع      | smell | يعطي رائحة ... |
| recognize | يتعرف على | taste | يعطي مذاق ...  |

## 5 أفعال الحالات / السمات States/Qualities

|        |             |          |      |
|--------|-------------|----------|------|
| appear | يبدو / يظهر | resemble | يشبه |
| exist  | يوجد        | seem     | يبدو |
| look   | يبدو        | sound    | يبدو |

## 6 أفعال التفكير والآراء Thoughts & Opinions

|                         |                |                          |             |
|-------------------------|----------------|--------------------------|-------------|
| agree                   | يوافق          | imagine                  | يتخيل       |
| believe                 | يعتقد / يظن    | know                     | يعرف        |
| concern                 | يهم - يشغل بال | matter                   | يهم         |
| deny                    | ينكر           | mean                     | يعني - يقصد |
| depend                  | يعتمد على      | remember                 | يتذكر       |
| disagree                | يرفض           | suppose                  | يفترض       |
| doubt                   | يشك في         | suspect                  | يشك في      |
| feel (=have an opinion) | يعتقد / يظن    | think (=have an opinion) | يعتقد / يظن |
| forget                  | ينسى           | understand               | يفهم        |



## ملاحظات هامة على الأفعال التقريرية Notes for Advanced level

١ لا تُستخدم الأفعال التقريرية بالمعاني المذكورة في الجداول السابقة في الأزمنة المستمرة، ويتم استخدام أقرب زمن بسيط حسب معنى الجملة:

- Mr Nasser is having a BMW. (مضارع مستمر) (X)
- Mr Nasser has a BMW. (مضارع بسيط) (✓)
- I have been knowing him for 6 years. (مضارع تام مستمر) (X)
- I have known him for 6 years. (مضارع تام بسيط) (✓)
- The tank was containing 45 litres of petrol. (ماضي مستمر) (X)
- The tank contained 45 litres of petrol. (ماضي بسيط) (✓)
- She had been owning a large villa. (ماضي تام مستمر) (X)
- She had owned a large villa. (ماضي تام بسيط) (✓)

٢ يمكن استخدام الأفعال التقريرية بمعاني غير المعاني المذكورة في الجداول السابق في الأزمنة المستمرة:

- I am having (=eating) lunch now. (المعنى يتناول وليس يمتلك)
- She is having (=spending) a great time. (المعنى تقضى وليس تمتلك)

## استثناءات هامة Important Exceptions

في الجدول التالي سيتم إلقاء الضوء على أهم الأفعال التقريرية التي تستخدم في الأزمنة المستمرة بمعاني أخرى غير المعاني المذكورة في الجداول السابقة:

| الفعل Verb | Stative usage<br>(لا يستخدم في أزمنة مستمرة)   | Dynamic meaning<br>(يستخدم في أزمنة مستمرة)   |
|------------|--|---|
| 1. be      | <b>am / is / are / was / were</b><br>يكون / يوجد<br>- Nada is being very ill. (X)<br>- Nada is very ill. (✓)   | <b>am / is / are / was / were + being</b><br>يصبح - يتصرف<br>- Nada is boring. (✓)<br>= She is boring by nature.<br>- Nada is being boring. (✓)<br>= She is temporarily boring. |
|            | <b>Note:</b><br>- يُستخدم الفعل (be) كفعل أساسي في الأزمنة المستمرة ويأتي بعده اسم أو صفة للحديث عن أحداث أو تصرفات وليس عن مشاعر أو وصف حالة دائمة:<br>- He was being very silly. (= He was behaving in a silly way).<br>- Sara is being stupid. (= Sara is doing stupid things). |   |



|            |   |  |
|------------|---|--|
|            | <p>- لا يُستخدم الفعل (be) كفعل أساسي في الازمنة المستمرة للحديث عن مشاعر:</p> <p>- I am <b>being</b> sad now. (X)</p> <p>- I am <b>sad</b> now. (✓)</p>  |  |
| 2. feel    | <p><b>feel</b> يعتقد - يعطى ملمس</p> <p>- I am <b>feeling</b> he is right. (X)</p> <p>- I <b>feel</b> he is right. (✓)</p> <p>- The floor is <b>feeling</b> smooth. (X)</p> <p>- The floor <b>feels</b> smooth. (✓)</p> | <p><b>feel</b> يشعر</p> <p>- He is <b>feeling</b> better today. (✓)</p> <p>- I am <b>feeling</b> hot. (✓)</p> <p>- She was <b>feeling</b> very tired yesterday. (✓)</p>  |
| 3. have    | <p><b>have / has / had</b> يمتلك</p> <p>- He is <b>having</b> a villa. (X)</p> <p>- He <b>has</b> a villa. (✓)</p> <p>- She was <b>having</b> a bike. (X)</p> <p>- She <b>had</b> a bike. (✓)</p>                       | <p><b>have - eat / drink / spend</b></p> <p>يأكل / يشرب / يقضي</p> <p>- I am <b>having</b> a nice time. (✓)</p> <p>= I am <b>spending</b> a nice time.</p> <p>- We were <b>having</b> fish. (✓)</p> <p>= We were <b>eating</b> fish.</p> |
| 4. look    | <p><b>look</b> يبدو</p> <p>- Mum is <b>looking</b> tired. (X)</p> <p>- Mum <b>looks</b> tired. (✓)</p>  | <p><b>look</b> ينظر / يبحث</p> <p>- I am <b>looking</b> at the screen. (✓)</p> <p>- She was <b>looking</b> for a pen. (✓)</p>  |
| 5. measure | <p><b>measure</b> يبلغ مقاسه</p> <p>- This room is <b>measuring</b> four metres long. (X)</p> <p>- This room <b>measures</b> four metres long. (✓)</p>  | <p><b>measure</b> يقيس</p> <p>- He is <b>measuring</b> the length of the room. (✓)</p> <p>- I was <b>measuring</b> the diameter قطر of the circle. (✓)</p>   |
| 6. see     | <p><b>see</b> يرى</p> <p>- He is <b>seeing</b> some fish in the clear water. (X)</p> <p>- He <b>sees</b> some fish in the clear water. (✓)</p>  | <p><b>see</b> يقابل</p> <p>- I am <b>seeing</b> some friends in the club tomorrow. (✓)</p> <p>- She <b>has been seeing</b> the dentist in the afternoon. (✓)</p>   |
| 7. smell   | <p><b>smell</b> يعطى رائحة - له رائحة</p> <p>- This meat is <b>smelling</b> delicious. (X)</p> <p>- This meat <b>smells</b> delicious. (✓)</p>  | <p><b>smell</b> يشم</p> <p>- I am <b>smelling</b> the cake. (✓)</p> <p>- Sama was <b>smelling</b> the new bottle of perfume. (✓)</p>   |



|           |  |   |
|-----------|--|---|
| 8. taste  | <b>taste</b> يعطى مذاق - له مذاق<br>- This soup is <b>tasting</b> salty. (X)<br>- This soup <b>tastes</b> salty. (✓) | <b>taste</b> يذوق - يذوق<br>- Mum is <b>tasting</b> the soup. (✓)<br>- The chef <b>was</b> <b>tasting</b> the rice. (✓)     |
| 9. think  | <b>think</b> يعتقد<br>- I am <b>thinking</b> she is ill. (X)<br>- I <b>think</b> she is ill. (✓)                     | <b>think</b> يفكر<br>- I am <b>thinking</b> about the best solution to this problem. (✓)                                    |
| 10. weigh | <b>weigh</b> يبلغ وزنه<br>- This apple is <b>weighing</b> 70 grams. (X)<br>- This apple <b>weighs</b> 70 grams. (✓)  | <b>weigh</b> يزن<br>- The butcher is <b>weighing</b> the meat. (✓)<br>- Ali <b>was</b> <b>weighing</b> the bag of rice. (✓) |

## General Exercise On Language

Apply

- ★ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

### 1 Getting started

- Now, he .....  
 a. look happily  
 b. looks happy  
 c. is looking happy  
 d. is looking at happily  
 (اللواتية ٢٠٢٣)
- This camera ..... to Ahmed.  
 a. isn't belonging  
 b. belongs  
 c. is belonging  
 d. belong  
 (الدلتجات ٢٠٢٣)
- My father always says that coffee ..... good after a meal.  
 a. tasted  
 b. was tasted  
 c. is tasting  
 d. tastes  
 (حلوان ٢٠٢٣)
- The English very rarely talk on the underground. They ..... to read their newspapers.  
 a. prefers  
 b. are preferring  
 c. prefer  
 d. will prefer  
 (شرق مدينة نصر ٢٠٢٣)
- I ..... 90 kilograms. I need to follow a diet.  
 a. weigh  
 b. am weighing  
 c. have been weighing  
 d. weighs  
 (العمرانية ٢٠٢٣)
- His wife's food tastes ....., so he eats outdoors.  
 a. badly  
 b. well  
 c. bad  
 d. delicious
- He's very pessimistic. He always ..... the worst is going to happen.  
 a. is thinking  
 b. think  
 c. thinks  
 d. thinking  
 (المرج ٢٠٢٣)



8. They ..... they were better at maths. (أسوان ٢٠٢٣)  
 a. wish      b. were wishing      c. are wishing      d. wishes
9. Most scientists ..... that the world is getting hotter. (بورسعيد ٢٠٢٣)  
 a. will believe      b. are believed      c. are believing      d. believe
10. At the moment, I can't buy this car. It ..... too much money. (الجا ٢٠٢٣)  
 a. is costing      b. costs      c. cost      d. was costing
11. He ..... a large villa.  
 a. own      b. owns      c. owning      d. is owning
12. Sama ..... her meal right now.  
 a. has had      b. is having      c. had      d. have
13. This suggestion ..... good.  
 a. sounding      b. is sounding      c. sound      d. sounds
14. When I am away, I ..... my family very much.  
 a. am missing      b. missed      c. misses      d. miss
15. Children ..... kittens.  
 a. are loving      b. are being loved  
 c. love      d. are loved
16. I really ..... staying on my own. It makes me feel lonely.  
 a. like      b. don't like      c. am liking      d. am not liking
17. Nada ..... like her mother.  
 a. looks      b. is looking      c. is looked      d. is being looked
18. I have to change my tight shoes. These ..... me.  
 a. kill      b. are killing      c. killed      d. were killing
19. I ..... people who never really listen to what you say.  
 a. am hating      b. hate      c. hated      d. am hated
20. Everyone ..... fun. It is such a beautiful day.  
 a. has      b. have      c. is having      d. are having
21. Some people ..... bottles of water in their hand. It's hot and they're thirsty.  
 a. are holding      b. are held      c. hold      d. holds

## 2 Special cases

22. My father looked ..... at me when I interrupted our guest. (المعصرة ٢٠٢٣)  
 a. anger      b. angry      c. angrily      d. angered
23. I ..... of a way to solve this complicated problem. Don't distract me. (جرجا ٢٠٢٣)  
 a. think      b. thinking      c. am thinking      d. thinks
24. Strangely, Sama's little sister ..... very helpful today.  
 That's nice!  
 a. be      b. is being      c. will be      d. being









## PART 1 VOCABULARY

### 1 Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

|                   |                            |                    |                   |
|-------------------|----------------------------|--------------------|-------------------|
| all in all,       | في المُجمل - بصفة عامة     | imagine(d) (v)     | يتخيل             |
| believe(d) (v)    | يؤمن - يُصدّق              | miss(ed) (v)       | يفتقد - يفوته     |
| dear diary        | ذكرى عزيزة - ذكرى لا تُنسى | taste(d) (v-n)     | يعطي مذاق - يتذوق |
| feel - felt(v)    | يشعر - يلمس - يتحسس        |                    | مذاق -            |
| forget - forgot - | ينسى                       | think - thought(v) | يعتقد - يفكر      |
| forgotten(v)      |                            | wish(ed) (v-n)     | يتمنى - أمنية     |

### 2 Important Vocabulary المفردات الهامة

|                  |                       |                    |                 |
|------------------|-----------------------|--------------------|-----------------|
| accent(n)        | لهجة                  | mention(ed) (v)    | يذكر - يقول     |
| celebrate(d) (v) | يحتفل بـ - يحيي ذكرى  | organise(d) (v)    | يُنظّم          |
| conversation(n)  | محادثة                | Parthenon(n)       | معبد البارثينون |
| culture(n)       | ثقافة - حضارة         | passport(n)        | جواز سفر        |
| decide(d) (v)    | يقرر                  | presentation(n)    | عرض تقديمي      |
| diary(n)         | مفكرة يوميات          | sound(ed) (v)      | يبدو            |
| entry(n)         | مُقتطف - مَدخل        | storm(n)           | عاصفة           |
| flight(n)        | رحلة جوية             | summarise(d) (v)   | يُلخّص - يختصر  |
| Greece(n)        | اليونان               | text message(n)    | رسالة نصية      |
| include(d) (v)   | يتضمّن - يُضمّن       | unfortunately(adv) | لسوء الحظ       |
| Londoners(n)     | اللندنيين (سكان لندن) | voice messages(n)  | رسائل صوتية     |

### 3 Definitions تعريفات

| Memorise                                    | Understand   |
|---|--|
| <b>all in all</b><br>في المُجمل - بصفة عامة | considering every part of a situation<br>تضع في الاعتبار                   |
| <b>diary (n)</b><br>مفكرة يوميات            | a book in which you write the things that happen to you each day           |
| <b>keep in touch</b><br>يبقى على تواصل      | when people keep in touch, they see, talk to, or write to each other often |



## Exercise On Vocabulary

• Understand

★ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

## 1 Key vocabulary

1. I'm so happy here. I can't ..... living anywhere else. (ادفوق ٢٠٢٣)  
a. think                      b. determine                      c. decide                      d. imagine
2. All ..... all, working hard leads to success. (غرب الزقاريق ٢٠٢٣)  
a. in                      b. at                      c. on                      d. by
3. Meeting you for the first time is a/an ..... I will never forget.  
a. all in all                      b. until tomorrow                      c. get used to                      d. dear diary
4. I have ..... my tablet at home, so I can't log on the internet.  
a. come across                      b. forgotten                      c. sounded                      d. weighed
5. I prefer the chips that ..... of hot pepper and lemon.  
a. imagine                      b. taste                      c. encourages                      d. determines
6. The blind man used his stick to ..... his way.  
a. explore                      b. feel                      c. weigh                      d. wish
7. I'll get you a cold drink if you .....  
a. explore                      b. feel                      c. weigh                      d. wish

## 2 Important vocabulary

8. Admission to the ancient sites is ..... in the Cairo package. (جرجا ٢٠٢٣)  
a. consisted                      b. included                      c. determined                      d. enclosed
9. The new coach of the team speaks English with a French ..... as he is French. (الغنايم ٢٠٢٣)  
a. accent                      b. language                      c. note                      d. sign
10. Not all information is ..... in the report. It should have been included.  
a. celebrated                      b. forgotten                      c. sounded                      d. mentioned
11. A diary ..... is a collection of pages on a diary.  
a. milk                      b. entry                      c. entire                      d. title
12. This meeting has been ..... by Mr Ayman.  
a. felt                      b. believed                      c. organised                      d. sounded
13. It ..... like a mad plan to go swimming in that windy weather.  
a. experienced                      b. struggled                      c. volunteered                      d. sounded
14. To ....., El-Moasser is the most professional educational book.  
a. sound                      b. summarise                      c. organise                      d. mention
15. People who live in Europe have ..... different from that of the Arabs.  
a. dairy                      b. accent                      c. culture                      d. drought
16. We ..... Sama's birthday on July 7<sup>th</sup>.  
a. celebrate                      b. summarise                      c. sound                      d. mention
17. When he didn't answer my call, I sent him a ..... message.  
a. text                      b. voice                      c. flight                      d. a & b



### 3 Definitions

18. A /An ..... is a book in which you write down the things that happen to you each day. (أبو حمص ٢٠٢٣)
- a. diary      b. pamphlet      c. atlas      d. dairy
19. '.....' is used to show that you are considering every part of a situation.
- a. Get used to      b. All in all      c. Come across      d. Pick up
20. When people ....., they see, talk to, or write to each other often.
- a. get lost      b. pick up      c. come out      d. keep in touch

## PART II VOCABULARY STUDY

### 1 Verbal Collocations متلازمات لفظية

|      |               |               |       |             |                     |
|------|---------------|---------------|-------|-------------|---------------------|
| be   | busy with     | ينشغل بـ      | make  | sure        | يتأكد - يتيقن       |
| do   | a job         | يؤدي عمل      |       | new friends | يُكوّن صداقات جديدة |
| feel | at home       | يشعر بالترحاب | miss  | my family   | أفتقد أسرتي         |
| get  | better        | يتحسن         | taste | different   | يعطي مذاق مختلف     |
|      | home          | يصل للبيت     | work  | abroad      | يعمل خارج البلاد    |
| have | conversations | يجري حوارات   |       |             |                     |

### 2 Synonyms مترادفات

| Word                                    | Synonym (=Meaning)   |
|---|--|
| all in all,      في المُجمل - بصفة عامة | considering everything, on the whole, taking everything into account, taking everything into consideration |
| diary      مفكرة يوميات                 | journal, calendar  |
| unfortunately      لسوء الحظ            | unluckily  |

### 3 Expressions & Idioms تعبيرات و مصطلحات

|                    |                     |                   |                                    |
|--------------------|---------------------|-------------------|------------------------------------|
| a long way from    | يَبْغِد كثيرًا عن   | know what to do   | يعرف ماذا يفعل                     |
| famous for         | مشهور بـ            | longer than usual | أطول من المعتاد                    |
| find it hard to    | يجد صعوبة في أن     | on time           | في الوقت المحدد                    |
| for the first time | لأول مرة            | pros and cons     | مزايا وعيوب                        |
| go back home       | يعود للبيت / للوطن  | similar to        | مشابه لـ                           |
| how well           | ما مدي جودة / كفاءة | so far            | حتى الآن                           |
| keep in touch      | يبقي علي تواصل      | until tomorrow    |                                    |
| kind to me         | طيب معي - رفيق بي   |                   | إلي الغد - ألقاك / أراسلك ... غدًا |



#### 4 Verb + Preposition فعل + حرف جر

|                  |                     |           |          |
|------------------|---------------------|-----------|----------|
| arrive at        | يصل إلى (مكان صغير) | stay with | يقيم مع  |
| leave ... behind | ينسي أن يحضر ...    | try to    | يحاول أن |
| look after       | يرعى - يعتلى        |           |          |

#### 5 Clear the confusion لاحظ الفرق

##### diary - dairy

- **diary = journal** مَذْكُرَة / مَفْكُرَة يَوْمِيَّات
  - My grandfather used to keep a diary.
  - I enjoy reading my childhood diary.
- **diary = journal** أَجْنَدَة (سجل مكتوب للتذكير بالمهام اليومية)
  - I forgot to put the time of the flight in my diary.
- **dairy** معمل ألبان / شركة ألبان
  - Make sure that everything in the dairy is clean.

#### Exercise On Vocabulary study

- ★ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. He promised he would ..... with us while he was away.

(ميت سلسيل ٢٠٢٣)

a. innovate      b. mix      c. keep in touch      d. attach

2. I have ..... so many friends since I started secondary school.

a. done      b. made      c. felt      d. understood

3. It is your duty واجب to make your guests ..... at home.

a. do      b. make      c. feel      d. understand

4. Yesterday afternoon, I ..... busy preparing for my online test.

a. was      b. showed      c. studied      d. had

5. My mother's food ..... different.

a. understands      b. shares      c. tastes      d. finds

6. The word '.....' gives the same meaning of 'journal'.

a. dairy      b. diary      c. entry      d. b & c

7. "Unluckily, I missed my flight." The adverb 'unluckily' is an antonym of '.....'.

a. unfortunately      b. luckily      c. fortunately      d. b & c

8. How ..... did she do in the test?

a. good      b. well      c. much      d. many



9. The bus moved and left me .....  
 a. ahead                      b. behind                      c. on                      d. with
10. Don't worry. Rodayna knows .....  
 a. to do                      b. doing                      c. to doing                      d. what to do
11. He works in a .....  
 a. dairy                      b. diary                      c. servant                      d. maid

## PART III READING & LISTENING

### 1 Reading Texts

#### A diary<sup>(1)</sup> entry<sup>(2)</sup> (SB page 11)

28<sup>th</sup> November 2020

I've been in London for six weeks now. It's been a great experience so far<sup>(3)</sup>, but it hasn't always been easy.



- (1) مفكرة يوميات
- (2) مُقتطف - مدخل
- (3) حتى الآن
- (4) لهجات
- (5) اللندنيون (سكان لندن)
- (6) محادثات
- (7) عائلة مضيضة
- (8) وجبة
- (9) في المُجمل - بصفة عامة
- (10) يفتقد
- (11) رسائل نصية
- (12) يُنظّم
- (13) يتأكد

When I first arrived, I struggled to understand people. But I'm getting better at understanding their accents<sup>(4)</sup> now. I enjoy listening to Londoners<sup>(5)</sup> and trying to have conversations<sup>(6)</sup> with them. You won't believe what happened to me today! I was talking to a woman in a shop and she asked me if I'm from London! Isn't that amazing? Everyone I've met has been very kind to me, so I feel really at home here. The host family<sup>(7)</sup> that I'm staying with are really nice.

They really look after me! There's always a hot meal<sup>(8)</sup> waiting on the table when I get home in the evening and I'm getting used to English food!

All in all<sup>(9)</sup>, I'm really glad that I decided to study in London. I miss<sup>(10)</sup> my family, but we keep in touch by text messages<sup>(11)</sup>. I've become more independent since I've been away. I have to organise<sup>(12)</sup> a lot of things on my own and make sure<sup>(13)</sup> I have enough money, for example. I'm still learning how to do that, but I'm enjoying it.

Until tomorrow!

Heba



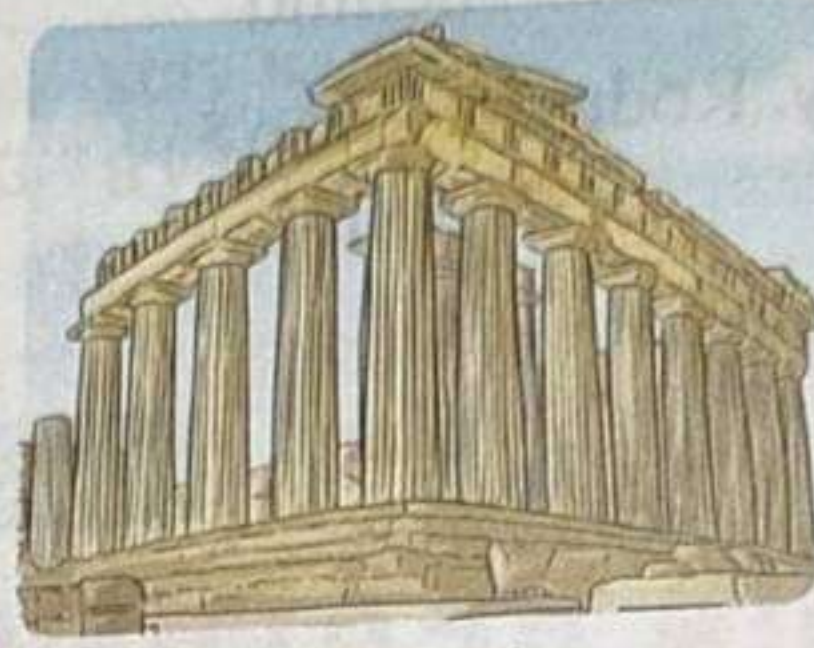
## Dalida's Diary

(WB page 5)

## Monday

Dear diary

I'm very **excited**<sup>(1)</sup>. My parents have bought our tickets to **Greece**<sup>(2)</sup>, and tomorrow I'm visiting Judy in **Athens**<sup>(3)</sup>. I'm going with Adam.



He's very independent and knows what to do in new places. I always enjoy travelling with my older brother.

## Tuesday

We struggled to leave the house this morning. Adam's always **forgetting**<sup>(4)</sup> things and nearly left his **passport**<sup>(5)</sup> behind! But we arrived at the airport **on time**<sup>(6)</sup>. I believe the **flight**<sup>(7)</sup> was longer than **usual**<sup>(8)</sup> because there was a **storm**<sup>(9)</sup>, but all in all, the journey was not too bad. Now I'm looking out of my window at the buildings of Athens. Isn't that amazing? I wish I could see Judy today, but we arrived very late. We're seeing her tomorrow.

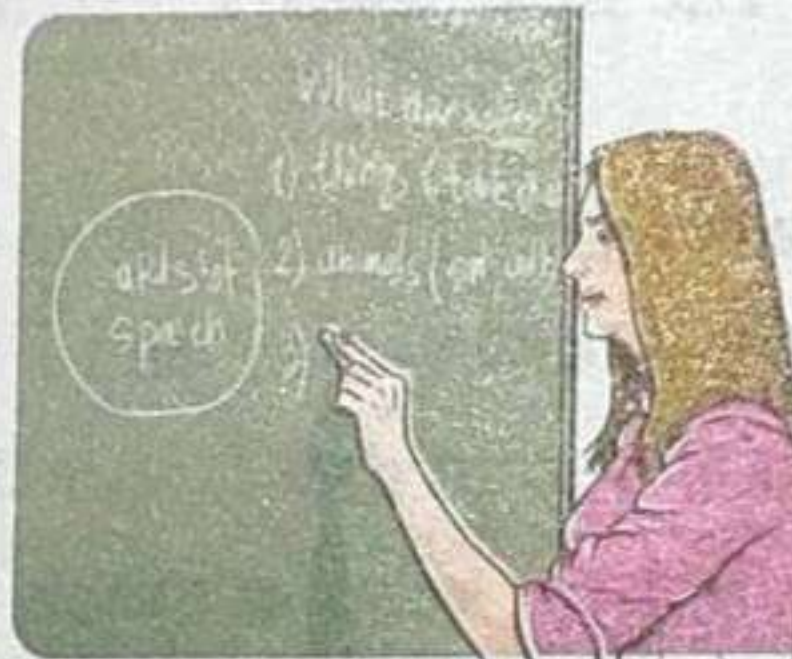
## Wednesday

You won't believe what happened to me! I've been to the **Parthenon**<sup>(10)</sup>! I think it is one of the oldest buildings in the world! Judy took us there this afternoon. Judy loves Athens now and **showed**<sup>(11)</sup> us some amazing places, but I'm too tired to write more now. Until tomorrow!

- (1) متحمس / سعيد
- (2) دولة اليونان
- (3) مدينة أثينا
- (4) ينسى
- (5) جواز سفر
- (6) في الوقت المحدد
- (7) رحلة جوية
- (8) مُعتاد - مألوف
- (9) عاصفة
- (10) معبد البارثينون
- (11) يوضح - يبين

## 2 Listening Texts

(SB page 10)



- (1) عرض / تقديم
- (2) المزايا والعيوب
- (3) العمل خارج البلاد
- (4) ثقافة

**Teen Girl :** Hello everyone. In this **presentation**<sup>(1)</sup>, I'm going to talk about the **pros and cons**<sup>(2)</sup> of working abroad. When you first think about **working abroad**<sup>(3)</sup>, it sounds very exciting. But there are a few disadvantages of working abroad as well as advantages. Let's start with the advantages first.

I believe that the best thing about working abroad is probably that you can learn a lot about another country's **culture**<sup>(4)</sup>.



Imagine trying new food every day and learning about how people from another culture **celebrate**<sup>(5)</sup>.

Another good reason for working abroad is that it helps you to become more independent. Perhaps you feel that you're independent at home, but when you're living far away from home, you really have to be. Finally, I think a further **argument**<sup>(6)</sup> for working abroad is that you can learn useful skills, especially language skills and probably also **communication skills**<sup>(7)</sup>.

These skills can help you to get a good job when you come back home.

However, there are clearly disadvantages to working abroad as well. One serious disadvantage is that you will probably be a long way from home and **miss**<sup>(8)</sup> your family.

And let's not forget that you may not like the country or city that you move to if it's different to your home.

**Unfortunately**<sup>(9)</sup>, it's sometimes difficult to make friends when you're living abroad too, and you might wish you could just go back home and spend time with your old friends.

(5) يحتفل

(6) جدال

(7) مهارات التواصل

(8) يفقد

(9) لسوء الحظ

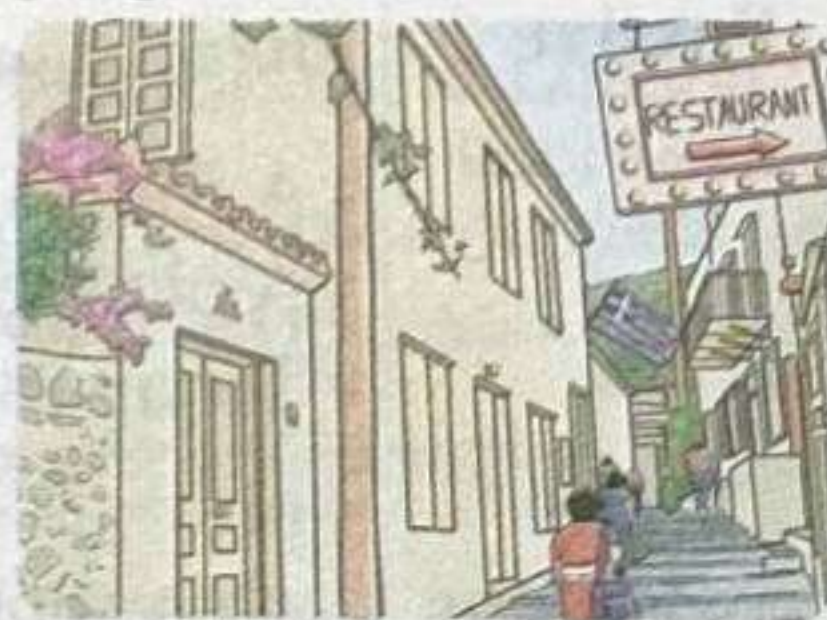
(WB page 4)

**Teen boy :** Hi Dalida, I imagine you're thinking that I have forgotten you! Don't worry, I haven't! I've just been really busy in my new job here in Greece. Sorry, I haven't phoned you before! As you probably know, I'm working here in a language school. It's the first time I've worked abroad. It's fun sharing a flat with two other women, but I'm not used to cooking, cleaning and shopping every week for myself! I **suppose**<sup>(1)</sup> I'm becoming more independent though.

Greece is very beautiful and I believe that the weather is quite like Cairo but not so hot! I enjoy hearing Greek music and most of the food tastes really good! Some things are different, though. It is more expensive here, and I don't like the prices of things in the shops! I'm trying to learn Greek but it is not easy. When I say something in Greek to people in the shops, they usually answer me in English! So, I am having a great time, but of course, I miss friends **especially**<sup>(2)</sup> you. Call me back some time, or I'll call again later. Bye!

(1) يفترض

(2) على وجه الخصوص





# PART IV LANGUAGE

UNIT  
7

## The Present continuous tense

زمن المضارع المستمر

| Form   | The present continuous   |
|--|--|
| <b>Affirmation</b><br>الإثبات                | <b>Subject الفاعل + am / is / are + (inf. + ing) ...</b><br>- I'm watching a film on TV at home.<br>- Sama is drawing a picture.<br>- They are playing tennis in the club right now.                                       |
| <b>Negation</b><br>النفي                     | <b>Subj. + am not / is not (isn't) / are not (aren't) + (inf. + ing) ...</b><br>- I am not watching a film on TV at the office.<br>- Sama isn't writing a letter.<br>- They aren't playing football in the club right now. |
| <b>'Yes / No' Q.</b><br>السؤال بـ (هل)       | <b>Am / Is / Are + subj. + (inf. + ing) ... ?</b><br>- Are you watching a film on TV at home ?<br>- Is Sama drawing a picture?<br>- Are they playing tennis in the club right now ?  |
| <b>'Wh_' Q.</b><br>السؤال بأداة استفهام      | <b>Q.W. أداة استفهام + am / is / are + subj. + (inf. + ing) ... ?</b><br>- Where are you watching the film?<br>- Who is drawing a picture?<br>- What are they doing in the club right now?                                 |
| <b>Passive</b><br>المبنى للمجهول             | <b>Object المفعول + am / is / are + being + p.p. ...</b><br>- A film is being watched on TV at home (by me).<br>- A picture is being drawn (by Sama).<br>- Tennis is being played in the club right now (by Ahmed).        |
| <b>Time Expressions</b><br>التعبيرات الزمنية | - now الآن - at the (this) moment في هذه اللحظة - still مازال -<br>at present في الوقت الحاضر - currently حالياً ...<br>tomorrow غداً - in the future في المستقبل - next القادم ...  |

### Mini Test 1

Apply

★ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. Salma and I ..... cleaning the kitchen.

a. am

b. am being

c. are

d. are being



2. The kitchen .....  
 a. is cleaning      b. is being cleaned      c. are cleaning      d. are being cleaned
3. What ..... in the kitchen?  
 a. is doing      b. is being done      c. are you doing      d. b & c
4. Is Nada ..... the baby?  
 a. feeding      b. being fed      c. feeds      d. fed
5. Is the baby ..... ?  
 a. feeding      b. being fed      c. feeds      d. be fed
6. Rodayna is revising for the exams .....  
 a. at the moment      b. at that moment      c. so far      d. the other day

### Usage

- يُستخدم المضارع المستمر في الحالات التالية:

١ وصف أو السؤال عن أحداث أو مواقف تحدث الآن (لحظة الكلام):

- ex. - Omar is taking a shower, so he can't answer the phone.  
 - Are you watching this programme?      - What are you doing?

٢ وصف مواقف أو أحداث في الحاضر تختلف عما كان سائداً أو مألوفاً في الماضي:

- ex. - Young people aren't reading newspapers these days.  
 - Currently, most businesses are communicating via emails.

٣ التعبير عن مواقف مستمرة تحدث حول المضارع وليس بالضرورة الآن وقد تستغرق مدي زمني طويل، ويمكن أن تُستخدم تعبيرات زمنية مثل:

هذا العقد today - tonight - these days - this month - this year - this decade  
 ... لا يزال still

- ex. - Ali is taking the final exams these days.  
 - I'm reading 'King Lear' today.      - Are you still working in London?

٤ التعبير عن الضيق أو عدم الرضا عن أحداث يقوم بها الناس بشكل متكرر، وغالباً يتم استخدام ظروف التكرار (always - constantly) كالتالي:

... am / is / are + always / constantly / never... + (inf. + ing)

- ex. - You are always coming to school late, Moataz.  
 - Samar is constantly talking about herself.  
 - They're always complaining.

٥ وصف الصور (على اعتبار أن الحدث في الصورة مستمر):

- ex. - In the picture, everybody is having fun.

٦ التعبير عن الترتيبات المستقبلية (أي التعبير عن أحداث تم الترتيب لحدوثها في وقت معين في المستقبل، وفي هذه الحالة لابد من وجود تعبير زمني دال على المستقبل):

- ex. - My sister is getting married next month.



## Important Notes :

- ١ عند التعبير عن الحقائق الثابتة نستخدم المضارع البسيط وليس المضارع المستمر:  
**ex.** - Lions are eating meat. (X) - Lions eat meat. (✓)
- ٢ عند التعبير عن العادات نستخدم المضارع البسيط وليس المضارع المستمر:  
**ex.** - Mum is getting up early every day. (X)  
 - Mum gets up early every day. (✓)
- ٣ عند التعبير عن جداول المواعيد نستخدم المضارع البسيط وليس المضارع المستمر:  
**ex.** - The first train to Cairo is leaving at six tomorrow. (X)  
 - The first train to Cairo leaves at six tomorrow. (✓)
- ٤ نستخدم المضارع البسيط وليس المضارع المستمر مع الأفعال التقريرية (أفعال الحواس والإدراك والمشاعر والملكية...):  
**ex.** - I am loving my mother. (X) - I love my mother. (✓)

## Mini Test 2

## ● Apply

## ● ☆ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

- Karim can't go out with us. He ..... for his exams.  
 a. is revising    b. is being revised    c. was revising    d. was revised
- My car isn't available today. It ..... at the garage.  
 a. was checking    b. was being checked  
 c. is checking    d. is being checked
- Sending letters is no longer common. Not many people ..... using them.  
 a. communicates    b. communicated  
 c. are communicating    d. communicating
- Sama ..... to be a doctor. I think she will achieve her goal.  
 a. study    b. studied    c. is studying    d. was studying
- You ..... my charger, Ahmed. That's annoying.  
 a. always used    b. are always using  
 c. were always using    d. a & b
- It is arranged. I ..... to New York next Friday.  
 a. am travelling    b. am being travelled  
 c. going to travel    d. am going to travel
- Cows ..... grass, not meat.  
 a. are eating    b. are being eaten    c. have eaten    d. eat
- I can't drink this tea. It ..... too sweet.  
 a. taste    b. is tasting    c. tastes    d. is tasted
- My plane ..... off at 6:55 tomorrow.  
 a. take    b. takes    c. is taking    d. us being taken





## Check your understanding

يمكن التعبير عن الترتيبات المستقبلية بالطرق التالية:

- 1- Subj. + am / is / are + (inf. + ing) ...
- 2- Subj. + have / has + prepared / arranged + to + inf. ...
- 3- Subj. + have / has + made arrangements + to + inf. ...
- 4- Everything + is + ready / prepared / arranged + for + .....

- Leen has arranged to meet her friends next Monday.

= Leen is meeting her friends next Monday.

- Rokaya has made the final arrangements to give her birthday tomorrow.

= Rokaya is giving her birthday tomorrow.

لاحظ تحويل جملة المضارع التام المنفي إلى مضارع مستمر مثبت بالصيغة التالية:

- Subj. + haven't / hasn't + finished + (inf. + ing) ...

- Subj. + am / is / are + still + (inf. + ing) ...

- Mariam hasn't finished feeding the baby yet.

= Mariam is still feeding the baby.

## General Exercise On Language

Apply

★ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1 Getting started: Check what you have learnt

1. Why is he always ..... his guitar?

(الزيتون ٢٠٢٣)

- a. play      b. playing      c. going to play      d. plays

2. Turn the TV off. No one ..... it.

(الدلجات ٢٠٢٣)

- a. isn't watching      b. watches      c. is watching      d. watched

3. We can't play tennis today because it .....

(شرق مدينة نصر ٢٠٢٣)

- a. rains      b. rained      c. is raining      d. had rained

4. The program about space ..... at the moment.

(شرق مدينة نصر ٢٠٢٣)

- a. shows      b. is being shown      c. showed      d. has been shown

5. I see you are busy; what ..... now, Reem?

(شرق مدينة نصر ٢٠٢٣)

- a. are you doing      b. were you doing  
c. will you do      d. you are doing



6. Which subject ..... at the moment?

- a. do you study                      b. will you study  
c. are you studying                d. study

(شمال بورسعيد ٢٠٢٣)

7. These days, most people ..... email instead of writing letters.

- a. have used            b. used            c. are using            d. are used

(شربين ٢٠٢٣)

8. I can't meet you tomorrow as I ..... my uncle.

- a. visiting            b. will visit            c. visit            d. am visiting

(اسوان ٢٠٢٣)

9. I'm sick of Mona and Reham. They don't get on well. They .....

- a. disputes                      b. always disputes  
c. are always disputing        d. never dispute

(ساقطة ٢٠٢٣)

10. We ..... my uncle. Everything is arranged.

- a. will visit            b. visit            c. are visiting            d. can visit

(سوهاج ٢٠٢٣)

11. I ..... my sunglasses today because the sun is very strong.

- a. am wearing                      b. am being worn  
c. won't wear                      d. can't wear

(منشية أبو عامر ٢٠٢٣)

12. .... with us tonight?

- a. He comes            b. Does he come            c. He is coming            d. Is he coming

13. Why ..... doing your homework? What a lazy boy!

- a. are you            b. aren't you            c. you are            d. you aren't

14. The number of applicants ..... throughout the whole period.

- a. increasing                      b. is increasing  
c. being increased                d. be increased

15. Ahmed, you ..... me when I speak. Stop it, please! It's so irritating.

- a. interrupt always                      b. always interrupts  
c. always are interrupting                d. are always interrupting

16. No one of us ..... a bike. You cannot ride a bike in this field.

- a. are riding            b. is riding            c. rides            d. is ridden

17. Nobody ..... They are not in a hurry.

- a. runs                      b. is being run            c. run                      d. is running

18. I ..... behind the camera. You cannot see me. This is not a selfie.

- a. stands                      b. am standing            c. is stood                      d. has stood

## 2 Special cases

19. He's stayed with us for a week but now, he ..... to leave.

- a. wants                      b. want                      c. is wanting                      d. wanted

(القرين ٢٠٢٣)



20. Hanan ..... about what to do to solve this problem. (ميت سلسيل ٢٠٢٣)  
 a. think      b. is thought      c. is thinking      d. thinking
21. Look! The officer ..... the suitcase again. (دمياط ٢٠٢٣)  
 a. weighs      b. weighed      c. is weighing      d. weight
22. I ..... a wonderful time here in this hotel. Everyone is really nice. (المحمودية ٢٠٢٣)  
 a. had      b. am having      c. going to have      d. had had
23. He ..... that he will mend the door but he never does it. (بها ٢٠٢٣)  
 a. says always      b. will always say  
 c. is always saying      d. was always saying
24. He ..... very happy now. (البداري ٢٠٢٣)  
 a. is seeming      b. seem      c. seems      d. was seeming
25. I ..... dinner at this moment. (سوهاج ٢٠٢٣)  
 a. have      b. am having      c. will have      d. have had
26. My father doesn't like my coffee. He thinks that it ..... awful. (المطرية ٢٠٢٣)  
 a. tastes      b. taste      c. is tasting      d. is being tasted
27. The student ..... the same mistakes while he checks his answers.  
 That's very annoying. (المطرية ٢٠٢٣)  
 a. is always making      b. always make  
 c. always is making      d. is always
28. They ..... me and I am sad about it.  
 a. never helps      b. always help      c. never helping      d. never help
29. She ..... the truth and it is annoying.  
 a. never tell      b. don't tell  
 c. is never telling      d. is always telling
30. I do not like her because she ..... about everything.  
 a. rarely complains      b. always complain  
 c. is never complaining      d. is constantly complaining
31. They ..... up early in the morning.  
 a. always get      b. always gets  
 c. are always getting      d. always are getting
32. Professor Ibrahim really knows his subject. He ..... a lecture on social media at university next Wednesday.  
 a. give      b. gives      c. is giving      d. was giving



33. I can see some people who ..... their dogs. Their dogs are on a leash طوق.
- |                |                     |
|----------------|---------------------|
| a. are walking | b. are being walked |
| c. walked      | d. are walked       |

### 3 Check your understanding

34. "My sister is helping me with a maths problem." This means .....
- |   |
|---|
| a. my sister is helped with a maths problem.            |
| b. I am helping my sister with a maths problem.         |
| c. I am being helped with a maths problem by my sister. |
| d. a maths problem is being helped by my sister.        |
35. Rodayna can't reply to your email. ....
- |                                       |
|---------------------------------------|
| a. Her laptop is offline.             |
| b. She is busy welcoming some guests. |
| c. She has taken a shower.            |
| d. Both 'a' and 'b' are possible.     |
36. "Ahmed has arranged to fly to London next Friday."  
This means .....
- |   |
|---|
| a. Ahmed is flown to London next Friday.        |
| b. Ahmed is flying to London next Friday.       |
| c. Ahmed flies to London next Friday.           |
| d. Ahmed is being flying to London next Friday. |
37. "Aya hasn't finished the cooking yet." This means .....
- |   |                                     |
|---|-------------------------------------|
| a. Aya is still doing the cooking.      | b. Aya hasn't done the cooking yet. |
| c. Aya is still being done the cooking. | d. Aya is not doing the cooking.    |
38. "What annoys me is his repeated complaints." This means .....
- |                                  |                              |
|----------------------------------|------------------------------|
| a. He is never complaining.      | b. He is always complaining. |
| c. He is constantly complaining. | d. b & c                     |





## PART I LANGUAGE HINTS

### verb + object + (inf. + ing)

يمكن استخدام الأفعال التالية ويليه المفعول ثم (inf. + ing) :

→ **keep – hate – dislike – not like – imagine** يتضمن – **involve** يتخيل – **come across** يصادف – **risk** يخاطر بـ – **remember** يمتنع – **prevent** يمنع – **mind** يمانع – **stop + object** + (inf. + ing) مفعول ...

- ex.** I don't mind you joining the school trip.  
- She can't imagine him not being her father.  
- Be cool or you can risk the boy losing interest in his study.  
- I stopped Leen damaging her toys.

### I wish / I'd rather / It's time + past simple

أ. لاحظ :

أ. جملة الماضي البسيط بعد (I wish) تعبر عن تمنى في المضارع :

**ex.** - I wish my father earned more money.

(والدي لا يحصل علي مال كاف و أتمني العكس !)

ب. جملة الماضي البسيط بعد (I would rather) تعبر عن عدم رضا أو رفض (لشيء في المضارع) :

**ex.** - I'd rather you didn't ask me to lend you money.

(يعني ذلك أنني لا أريد أن أقرضك أي نقود !)

ج. جملة الماضي البسيط بعد (It's time) تعبر عن تذكير أو لوم :

**ex.** - It's time you returned the book to the library. (المتحدث هنا يلوم أو يذكّر)

أ. في حالة وجود تعبير زمني يدل علي الماضي بعد (I wish / I'd rather / It's time) استخدم بعدهم الماضي التام (had + p.p.) وليس الماضي البسيط :

**ex.** - I'd rather you had finished the report last Friday.

**ex.** - I wish I hadn't wasted all my money last summer holiday.

### too + adj. + to + inf. ... جداً لدرجة أنه لا يستطيع

تُعطي هذه الصيغة معني النفي:

→ **too + adj. + to + inf. = so + adj. + that +** جملة منفية

**ex.** - I'm too tired to write more now.

= I'm so tired that I can't write more now.

**ex.** - He is too short to play basketball.

= He is so short that he isn't able to play basketball.

### teach - learn - know - show - tell ... + how to + inf.

يمكن استخدام أدوات الاستفهام قبل (to) بعد بعض الأفعال السابقة:

**ex.** - I don't know what to do in this difficult situation.



- Mrs Noha showed me how to draw a nice flower.
- The shop owner told me where to find the bus stop.

### Collective nouns إسم الجُفَع

اسم الجمع هو اسم مفرد يدل على مجموعة أفراد أو أشياء، ومن أمثلة هذه الأسماء ما يلي:

- **team** – **group** – **family class** – **flock** قطيع
- staff** – **crew** طاقم
- couple** زوج
- the government** – **gang** عصابة...

هذه الأسماء في صيغة المفرد تدل على جمع ويمكن أن تأخذ فعل مفرد (عندما نشير إلى معناها كوحدة واحدة) أو جمع (عندما نشير إلى الأعضاء المكونة لها) حسب المعنى المقصود:

- ex.** - My family **are** happy. - My family **is** the most important thing in my life.

تأخذ الكلمات السابقة فعل جمع إذا استخدمنا معها (**who / whom**) أو أي ضمير جمع، أما إذا استخدمنا معها (**which**) أو ضمير غير عاقل فهي تأخذ فعل مفرد

- ex.** - The gang **who** robbed the bank **were** arrested yesterday.

- The gang **which** robbed the bank **was** arrested yesterday.

### on / of ... own

- **On (your-my-her....) own = by + ضمير منعكس = alone.** (دون مساعده)

- ex.** - Mariam did her homework on her own (alone/by herself).

- **Of (my/his/her/your ..... ) own**

تدل على الملكية (ملكه)

- ex.** - I have a flat of my own.

### start / begin + (to + inf.) / (inf. + ing)

- يأتي بعد (start / begin) المصدر مضافاً له (ing) أو (to + inf.) دون فرق في المعنى:

- ex.** - He **began working / to work** for this company last year.

- لكن بعد (starting / beginning) نستخدم (to + inf.) فقط:

- ex.** - I was **starting to do** my homework when the phone rang.

### find it + adj. + to + inf. ... أن يجد من ... أن

- ex.** - I found it difficult to move the cupboard alone.

- Sama finds it interesting to watch programmes about nature.

### else أيضاً / آخر

- **Q.W.** ..... أيضاً **else** + أداة استفهام ؟

- ex.** - Who **else** did you meet? - Where **else** have you been?

- **someone / anyone / something / anything .... + else** آخر

- ex.** - Someone **else** is knocking on the door.

- I don't want anything **else**. Thank you.

كما يمكن استخدام (**else**) بعد (**or**) للتحذير

- ex.** - Do your homework **or else** you will be punished.



## General Exercise On Language Hints

### ★ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. I wish I ..... to Port Said last week. (سوهاج ٢٠٢٣)  
a. would go      b. went      c. could go      d. had gone
2. It is the Governor's responsibility. He'd better consider ..... the expansion to public transport network. (غرب الزقازيق ٢٠٢٣)  
a. organize      b. organising      c. organisation      d. organizer
3. I'd rather he ..... the conference yesterday. (دمياط ٢٠٢٣)  
a. attended      b. had attended      c. attend      d. would attend
4. The team who won the Champions' League ..... being honoured.  
a. is      b. has      c. are      d. have
5. The team which won the Champions' League ..... being honoured.  
a. is      b. has      c. are      d. have
6. Where ..... did you go during your last holiday ?  
a. also      b. else      c. too      d. neither
7. I came across a group of boys ..... in the canal.  
a. swims      b. swam      c. to swim      d. swimming
8. Rokaya finds it ..... to understand maths.  
a. hard      b. hardly      c. hardy      d. hardness
9. I did all these jobs ..... my own. That's why I am dead tired.  
a. from      b. off      c. of      d. on
10. My brother makes a lot of noise, so I want to have a room ..... my own.  
a. from      b. off      c. of      d. on
11. There was too much noise and he was starting ..... nervous.  
a. getting      b. to get      c. a & b      d. to getting
12. Leen took the medicine and soon she started ..... better.  
a. getting      b. to get      c. a & b      d. to getting
13. Mr Mohammed taught me ..... English.  
a. to speak      b. how to speak      c. what to speak      d. a & b

## PART II LANGUAGE SKILLS

### 1 Reading

#### ★ Read the following passage, then answer the questions : (المنيا ٢٠٢٢)

An Egyptian **teenager** has discovered an inexpensive way to turn plastic rubbish into fuel and it could be worth millions of dollars a year. Azza Faiad's ideas attracted the attention of the Egyptian Petroleum



Research Institute. The institute gave her access to a lab and its researchers in order to help refine the trash to fuel formula.

Faiad discovered a cheap and plentiful catalyst **عامل محفز** called aluminosilicate that reduces the cost of converting plastic waste into gases like methane and propane, which can be turned into ethanol. Scientists called this "biofuel" because the organic chemicals from plastic polymers that she extracts are the same chemicals extracted from plants to create ethanol biofuel.

The process releases other chemicals that can also be recycled and sold. Egypt produces a million tons of plastic **garbage** every year. It's estimated that Faiad's process could convert that much trash into fuel worth \$78 million every year. The European Union Contest for Young Scientists has already honoured Faiad with a prize for her work and she is now working on a patent **براءة اختراع** for her trash to fuel project.

✪ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

- Which of the following summarises the second paragraph ?  
 a. A great new discovery                      b. An Egyptian teenager  
 c. Methane is a cheap gas                      d. How to produce propane
- The underlined word "**teenager**" refers to .....  
 a. Faiad's sister                      b. Azza Faiad's friend  
 c. The writer                      d. Azza Faiad
- Azza Faiad is a .....  
 a. doctor                      b. teacher                      c. student                      d. mechanic
- Faiad helped to solve ..... problem.  
 a. overpopulation                      b. pollution                      c. housing                      d. education
- The suitable title for the passage is .....  
 a. Rubbish                      b. Recycling                      c. Teenagers                      d. Fuel
- Azza's idea is very useful as it is .....  
 a. hard to do                      b. cheap and green  
 c. easy but expensive                      d. fast to do
- What will happen if more people throw more rubbish ?  
 a. Pollution will increase.                      b. The environment will be clean.  
 c. Nothing will happen.                      d. The snow will melt.
- The word "**garbage**" can be replaced by .....  
 a. metal                      b. plastic                      c. rubbish                      d. process



## 2 كتابة عن موقف أو ذكرى في مفكرة اليوميات Writing a diary Entry

Write a diary entry of about (180) words about a day in your life while you're living in a new place or abroad.

1<sup>st</sup> January 2021

I've been in Paris for two years now. I think it's been a great experience so far, but it hasn't always been as easy as I have expected.

When I first arrived in Paris, I found it very difficult to understand people. However, I'm getting quite better at understanding people's accents now. I really enjoy listening to people from Paris. I usually try to have conversations with them. I have become very good at speaking French. You won't believe what happened to me two days ago! I was talking to a man on the underground and he asked me if I was from Paris!

Isn't that amazing? The people here are very nice. Everyone I've met has usually been very helpful to me. Consequently, I feel really at home here.

The host family that I'm staying with are really generous. They really look after me as if I am a member of their family! There's always a hot meal waiting on the table when I get home in the evening and I'm getting used to French food! In fact, I liked the French kitchen a lot.

I can't deny that I'm really happy that I decided to study medicine here in Paris. Sometimes I miss my family and friends, but I keep in touch with them by video calls, online chatting and emails. I've become more independent since I've arrived here. I have to do a lot of things on my own. I have to make sure I have enough money, for example. I'm still learning how to do so many things, but I'm really enjoying my life here.

Until tomorrow!

Rokaya

## 3 الترجمة Translation

### 1 Choose the correct Arabic translation from a, b, c or d:

1. Using energy needs more thinking about how to keep the environment clean. The world weather is changing because of the bad use of energy.

a. يطلب استخدام الطاقة مزيد من التفكير عن كيفية الحفاظ على البيئة. فالعالم يتغير بسبب استخدامنا السيئ للطاقة.

b. يحتاج استخدام الطاقة إلى مزيد من التفكير عن كيفية الحفاظ على نظافة البيئة. فطقس العالم يتغير بسبب استخدامنا السيئ للطاقة.

c. يطلب استخدام الطاقة بعض التفكير عن كيفية الحفاظ على البيئة فطقس العالم يتغير بسبب استخدامنا السيئ للطاقة.

d. يحتاج استخدام الطاقة إلى مزيد من التفكير عن كيفية نظافة البيئة. فالعالم يتغير بسبب استخدامنا السيئ للطاقة.



2. Studies show that people with more education live longer. They get better jobs, suffer less economic stress and tend to be more active.

(الفيوم ٢٠٢٣)

- a. تشير الدراسات إلى أن الأشخاص مع التعليم العالي يعيشون حياة أطول، ويحصلون على وظائف أفضل، ويعانون من ضغوط اقتصادية أشد، ويميلون إلى أن يكونوا أكثر نشاطاً.
- b. تشير الدراسات إلى أن الأشخاص الحاصلين على تعليم أكثر يعيشون حياة أطول، ويحصلون على وظائف أفضل، ويعانون من ضغوط اقتصادية أقل، ويميلون إلى أن يكونوا أكثر نشاطاً.
- c. تشير الدراسات إلى أن الأشخاص الحاصلين على تعليم راقى يعيشون حياة أطول، ويحصلون على وظائف أفضل، ويعانون من توترات اقتصادية أقل، ويميلون إلى أن يكونوا أكثر نشاطاً.
- d. تشير الدراسات إلى أن الأشخاص الحاصلين على تعليم أكثر يعيشون حياة أطول، ويحصلون على وظائف أفضل، ويعانون من ضغوط اقتصادية أفضل، ويميلون إلى أن يكونوا أكثر نشاطاً.

**2 Choose the correct English translation from a, b, c or d:**

١. دائماً كن ظموحاً، حفّز نفسك وحدّد أهدافاً واجتهد لكي تحقّقها في الحياة، وعندما تنجح في تحقيق ما تصبو إليه حتماً سوف تشعر بالسعادة بما أنجزته.

(اطسا ٢٠٢٣)

- a. You must be content. Always please yourself, set goals and strive to achieve them in life. When you succeed in achieving what you aspire to, you feel happy with what you have accomplished.
- b. Always be ambitious, motivate yourself set goals and strive to achieve them in life. When you succeed in achieving what you hope to do, you will probably feel happy with what you have accomplished.
- c. You must be ambitious. Always motivate yourself, set goals and strive to achieve them in the future. When you fail in achieving what you aspire to, you don't feel satisfied with what you have tried to accomplish.
- d. Always be ambitious, motivate yourself, set goals and strive to achieve them in life. When you succeed in achieving what you aspire to, you will definitely feel happy with what you have accomplished.

٢. لا تتوقع نجاحاً بدون صعوبات أو سعادة بدون ألم أو مكسباً بدون خسارة، إنها الحياة اقبلها أو

(الاقصر ٢٠٢٣)

ارفضها لكن لتعيشها يجب أن تفهمها.

- a. Don't expect success without hardships, happiness without pain or winning without loss; it was life, take it or live it, but to leave it, you should understand it.
- b. Don't expect success without hardships, happiness without pain or winning without loss. It's life. Take it or leave it, but to live it, you should understand it.
- c. Don't expect success without hardships or happiness with pain or winning without lose. It's life. Take it or live it, but to live it, you should have understood it.
- d. Don't expect success without hardships or happiness without pain and winning without loss: it's life, take it or leave it. But to live it, you should misunderstood it.



## determination

• **determine (v)**

يحدد - يبت في

- The police have **determined** the cause of the fire.
- Your marks in the final exams **determine** the faculty الكلية you will join.

• **determination (n)**

إصرار - عزيمة

- Rodayna has great **determination** to reach her goal.

• **determination (n)**

تحديد - اتخاذ القرار بشأن

- The **determination** of the new plan needs a lot of efforts.

• **determined (adj)**

ذو عزيمة - يتحلى بالإصرار

- My uncle is a very **determined** man.

• **be determined + to + inf.**

مُصمَّم علي - عازم علي

- I was **determined** to look for a better job.

## encouragement

• **encourage + (inf. + ing)** يشجع - يحض علي

يصرف ... عن

- The government **encourages** starting private businesses. مشروعات خاصة

• **encourage someone to + inf.**

يشجع شخص على القيام بشيء

- His mother **encourages** him to do a sport to keep fit.

• **discourage someone from + (inf. + ing)**

يثني ... عن / يضرِف ... عن

- I **discourage** Rodayna from making friends with bad girls.

• **encouraging** مُثَبِّط - مُحَبِّط / مُشَجِّع

مُثَبِّط - محبط

- The words of my boss were really **encouraging**.

• **encouragement** تثبيط - إحباط

تثبيط - إحباط

- She is hard-working by nature. She doesn't need **encouragement**.

لاحظ التعبيرات التالية:

- give ... encouragement
- get encouragement
- positive encouragement
- active encouragement
- words of encouragement

يشجع ...

ينال التشجيع

تشجيع ايجابي

تشجيع بالقول والفعل

كلمات تحفيزية



## explore

### • explore (v)

يفكر بامعان / يتدبر / يتحرى بدقة

- I have to explore other solutions to the problem.

### • explore (v)

يستكشف (مكان)

- Some areas in this forest haven't been explored yet.

### • explore (v)

يتحسس

- The blind man explored the door to find the key hole.

### • explorer (n)

مُستكشف (مكان / فكرة)

- Some explorers went into the forest in the early morning.

### • exploration (n)

استكشاف (مكان)

- The exploration of space costs too much money.

### • unexplored (adj)

مكان غير مُستكشف / فكرة لم يتم مناقشتها

- Some planets الكواكب are still unexplored.

## independent

### • depend (on / upon) = rely (v)

يعتمد علي

- Egypt depends on tourism as a source مصدر of hard currency العملة الصعبة.

### • dependants / dependents (n)

عيال / معولين (عالة علي غيرهم)

- Salma is a widow أرملة with several dependants / dependents.

### • independent

مستقل - غير مُحتل

- Egypt became independent in 1956.

### • independent (of)

معتمد علي نفسه - مستقل في حياته وقراراته

- You shouldn't be dependent on your parents all your life.

- He is now an adult بالغ who is independent of his parents.

### • independent (of) ≠ dependent متوكل - معتمد علي غيره

- He has an independent supermarket.

### • independence (from) ≠ dependence (on) اعتماد (علي) استقلال (عن)

- Egypt gained independence from England in 1956.

### لاحظ التعبيرات التالية:

- full / complete independence
- economic / political independence
- get / gain / achieve / win independence
- grant independence
- Independence Day
- struggle for independence

- استقلال تام
- استقلال اقتصادي / سياسي
- يحصل علي الاستقلال
- يمنح الاستقلال
- عيد الاستقلال
- يناضل من اجل الاستقلال



## struggle

- **struggle to + inf. (v)** يناضل / يكافح لكي  
 - My parents struggled to educate us.
- **struggle with + n / (inf. + ing) (v)** يناضل / يكافح في - يتصارع مع  
 - I am struggling with physics which is very difficult to me.  
 - While he was struggling with the bullies, جرح he was badly wounded. البلطجية
- **struggle for + n / (inf. + ing) (v)** يناضل / يكافح من أجل - يتشاجر علي  
 - We struggle for better living conditions.  
 - The two brothers were struggling for the new bike.
- **struggle (for / with / against) (n)** نضال / كفاح (من أجل / مع / ضد)  
 - We are proud of Egypt's history of struggle for independence.
- **be a struggle (for somebody)** يمثل صعوبة (بالنسبة لشخص ما)  
 - Essay writing is a struggle for some students.

## Important Expressions تعبيرات هامة

- **all in all** في المُجمل - بصفة عامة  
 - All in all, the new villa was a bargain صفقة.
- **dear diary** ذكري عزيزة (تُكتب في بداية صفحة في المفكرة للدلالة علي ذكري سعيدة)  
 - Dear diary: Today is one of the best days in my life. My son Ahmed has graduated from the Faculty of Medicine.  
 - 2003, which was the date of my wedding party, is a dear diary to me.
- **get used to + n / (inf. + ing)** يعتاد علي  
 - Rodayna got used to the noise of the city.  
 - Rania got used to living in Cairo.
- **host family** عائلة مضيضة (اسرة تستضيف طالباً أجنبياً)  
 - While I was studying in France, my host family were very helpful.
- **pick ... up** يُقَلّ / يوصل (شخص في سيارة)  
 - I will pick her up from the airport.
- **Isn't that amazing?** أليس ذلك رائعاً؟ (تُقال للتعبير عن الإعجاب الشديد)  
 - I have got a very good job. Isn't that amazing?
- **You won't believe what happened to me!** لن تُصدّق ما حدث لي! (تُقال في بداية سرد موقف مثير)
- **Until tomorrow!** إلي الغدا! (تُقال في نهاية لقاء أو حديث أو رسالة)



### Advanced Exercise on Vocabulary

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

#### ★ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. He is worried about travelling .....  
a. alone                      b. lonely                      c. loneliness                      d. a & b
2. She has just had her first baby. It is the first time for her to ..... the feelings of real motherhood.  
a. encourage                      b. determine                      c. experience                      d. exercise
3. The fingerprints will ..... who the criminals are.  
a. determine                      b. come across                      c. provide                      d. confuse
4. To explore is synonymous with to .....  
a. travel                      b. invent                      c. discover                      d. look at
5. I bought this ..... to help me carry goods through the narrow streets to the market.  
a. train                      b. pick-up                      c. ship                      d. aircraft

### Advanced Exercise on Language

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

#### ★ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. Can you help me with these boxes or ..... busy?  
a. are you being                      b. are you                      c. you are                      d. b & c
2. Mr Ashraf ..... us greatly. We all enjoy his lessons.  
a. is always impressing                      b. always impresses  
c. is always impressed                      d. always is impressed
3. The current economic crises ..... تستقر steadily.  
a. are stabilising                      b. is stabilising  
c. stabilises                      d. stabilise
4. You ..... me a favour معروف.  
a. owe                      b. owes                      c. are owing                      d. owing
5. Naguib Mahfouz ..... for his great novels.  
a. is still remembering                      b. is still remembered  
c. is still being remembered                      d. was still remembered



# Test on Unit 7

• Understand

• Apply

• Create

تنويه

التقييمات  
الشهرية في  
نهاية الكتاب



اختبار الكتروني

## 1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. "The team has great ..... to win." declared the coach. (البحيرة ٢٠٢٣)  
a. cooperation    b. examination    c. determination    d. transportation
2. Karim is in need of support and ..... to achieve his goals. (شربين ٢٠٢٣)  
a. retirement    b. encouragement    c. improvement    d. supplement
3. The air conditioner must have its own ..... power supply. (القرين ٢٠٢٣)  
a. intended    b. prohibited    c. dependent    d. independent
4. My wife went to the school to ..... the children. (بها ٢٠٢٣)  
a. come    b. struggle    c. pick up    d. get used to
5. I can't drink this tea; it ..... too sweet.  
a. tastes    b. smells    c. imagines    d. forgets
6. My brother writes down his thoughts in his personal ..... every night. (البحيرة ٢٠٢٣)  
a. dairy    b. article    c. essay    d. diary
7. A: What are you doing, Samir ? B: I ..... off my uncle at the airport.  
a. see    b. am seen    c. am seeing    d. be seeing
8. The chef always ..... the food before he serves it. (ادفو ٢٠٢٣)  
a. is tasting    b. was tasting    c. tastes    d. is tasted
9. This camera ..... to you. It's ours. (المحمودية ٢٠٢٣)  
a. belongs    b. is belonging  
c. doesn't belong    d. isn't belonging
10. You haven't said a word all morning. What ..... about? (الفتح ٢٠٢٣)  
a. you think    b. you are thinking  
c. are you thinking    d. you do think
11. Ahmed ..... that he was better at English. (ديروط ٢٠٢٣)  
a. wishes    b. is wishing    c. wished    d. will wish
12. The house ..... at the moment. (بها ٢٠٢٣)  
a. paints    b. is painting  
c. isn't painting    d. is being painted
13. Oh, my God! My daughter ..... her dolls on my bed. That's annoying. (أبنوب ٢٠٢٣)  
a. always is putting    b. is always putting  
c. is always put    d. is put
14. Heba is really enjoying her holiday on the island. She ..... a really good time. (أبو حمص ٢٠٢٣)  
a. has    b. is having    c. was having    d. have
15. Samy ..... This is disgusting. (طما ٢٠٢٣)  
a. is always smoking    b. always smoke  
c. always is smoking    d. smokes always



2. Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

People from long ago used to live in groups in caves or in jungles. They wandered from place to place hunting animals and looking for food like nuts, roots, wild fruits and berries.

Then later, people began to settle along or near rivers because they were sources of water, food, trade and transport. They used the river water for drinking, cooking and washing. Their animals also drank from these rivers.

The rivers were full of fish. Rivers also made good farmland for these early river settlers. During the yearly flood, rivers carried along with them river mud which was very fertile. This fertile soil was left behind after each flood. Thus, river banks or valleys were suitable places for farming. The people started to **cultivate** their own crops.

Besides the fertile soil, rivers also provided a form of transport. Men began to use rafts and boats as a form of water transport to carry their extra food. **They** sailed to another part of the river to trade with the other settlers. So, they became farmers as well as traders. When they began to travel up and down the rivers, they learnt about the customs and beliefs of the other settlers.

As trade and transport grew, the population also grew. These river settlements grew into cities, and these cities became centres of great civilisations like those found in early Egypt, India and China. These civilisations had powerful governments with many laws and government workers.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- All the statements are true EXCEPT: .....
  - As trade and transport grew, the population of river settlements also grew.
  - As the river settlements grew, they became cities and centers of civilisation.
  - Egypt, India and China were at times centers of great civilisation.
  - Egypt, India and China were the only important and powerful countries in the world to have rivers.
- The word "**cultivate**" can best be replaced with ".....".
  - buy
  - look for
  - obtain
  - grow
- The best title to this passage would be ".....".
  - River water
  - River cities
  - Rivers and the beginning of civilisation
  - Rivers and the customs and beliefs of the settlers
- Rafts and boats helped the people living near the rivers to be .....
  - farmers
  - farmers and traders
  - travellers
  - sailors



5. "They wandered from place to place" means they .....  
 a. were surprised    b. travelled    c. settled    d. developed
6. The river banks were suitable for farming for the early settlers because .....  
 a. the land is used once a year    b. the river is used for transport  
 c. people settled down there    d. the soil was fertile
7. Rivers have always been .....  
 a. sources of food    b. routes for travelling  
 c. sources of fresh water    d. all are true
8. The underlined pronoun "They" refers to .....  
 a. farmers    b. traders  
 c. the other settlers    d. men from villages by rivers

● **3. a. Choose the correct Arabic translation from a, b, c or d:**

Travelling abroad is not an aim in itself but it helps us to communicate with other countries and peoples.

(النزهة ٢٠٢٣)

- a. يعد السفر للخارج هدفاً في حد ذاته، فهو يساعدنا على التواصل مع الدول والشعوب الأخرى.  
 b. لا يعد السفر للخارج هدفاً في حد ذاته، وإنما يساعدنا على التواصل مع الدول والناس الآخرين.  
 c. لا يعد السفر للخارج هدفاً في حد ذاته، ولكنه يساعدنا على التواصل مع الدول والشعوب الأخرى.  
 d. لا يعد السفر للخارج هدفاً في حد ذاته، وإنما يساعدنا على التواصل مع المدن والناس الآخرين.

● **b. Choose the correct English translation from a, b, c or d:**

تكمّن أهمية السياحة في توفير العملة الصعبة وفرص العمل وفي زيادة التبادل الثقافي بين الأفراد وبين الدول.  
 (دسوق ٢٠٢٣)

- a. The importance of tourism lies in providing hard currency, job opportunities, increasing cultural exchange among individuals and countries.  
 b. The importance of tourism lies in providing hardly currency, and job opportunities, and increasing cultural exchange among individuals and countries.  
 c. The importance of tourism lays in providing hard currency, and job opportunities, and decreasing cultural exchange among individuals and countries.  
 d. The importance of tourism lies in providing hard currency, job opportunities, and increasing cultural change among individuals and countries.

● **4. Answer the following questions :**

1. Edmund was an evil traitor. Explain giving two points.

.....

2. Do you think Gloucester deserved what happened to him? Why/why not?

.....

3. What did Edgar and Cordelia have in common ?

.....

● **5. Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED and EIGHTY (180) words on the following topic :**

**"A visit to a place that you will never forget"**



## Mini-Test on Unit 7 for Al-Azhar Students

إختبار مصغر لطلاب الأزهر الشريف

### 1. Finish the following dialogue :

A teacher is talking to his student.

**Teacher** : Adam, you didn't show me your homework.

**Adam** : I'm sorry, sir. (1) .....

**Teacher** : Oh, why ?

**Adam** : I wasn't well yesterday.

**Teacher** : (2) .....

**Adam** : I had a headache.

**Teacher** : But, I saw you playing yesterday evening.

(3) .....

**Adam** : Extremely sorry, sir.

**Teacher** : You are the head boy. Shouldn't you set an example to others?

**Adam** : (4) ..... I will never tell a lie in my life.

**Teacher** : OK. This is the last chance.

**Adam** : Thanks a lot.

### 2. Write a paragraph of (80) words on :

“Pros and cons of travelling abroad”

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

### 3. A. Translate into Arabic :

Tourism is one of the growing industries around the world.

.....

.....

### B. Translate into English :

من المأمول أن نستطيع الاكتفاء الذاتي وأن نقوم بعملية تصدير الفائض.

.....

.....





# UNIT 8

## High-tech transport

SB pages 16 : 25

WB pages 8 : 13

### Objectives :

- ✪ **Reading :**  
A notice about the expansion of the Cairo metro network
- ✪ **Writing :**  
A speech for or against an argument;  
An email to the local government about public transport
- ✪ **Listening :**  
A talk show debate about the future of transport

- ✪ **Speaking :**  
A discussion about the advantages and disadvantages of using public transport;  
Asking and answering questions about a schedule
- ✪ **Language :**  
Future perfect
- ✪ **Life skills :**  
Critical thinking ; Problem solving; Respect for diversity

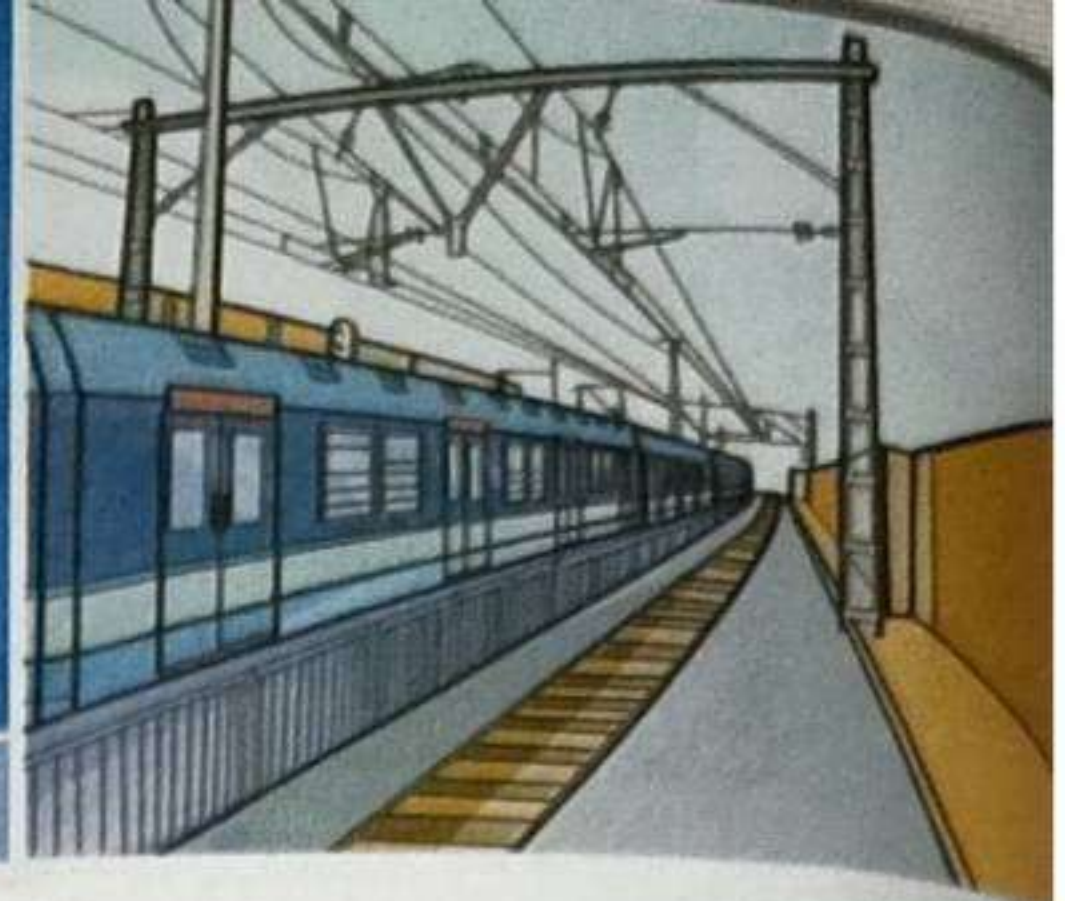


# PART ONE

## LESSONS

# 1 & 2

SB pages 16 : 19 WB pages 8 & 9



## PART I VOCABULARY

### 1 Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

|                     |                          |                         |                                  |
|---------------------|--------------------------|-------------------------|----------------------------------|
| connect(ed) (v)     | يربط - يُوصل             | passenger(n)            | مسافر - راكب                     |
| expansion(n)        | توسّع - تمّدد            | public transport        | المواصلات العامة                 |
| facilities(n)       | تسهيلات - امتيازات       | public(adj)             | عام - شعبي                       |
|                     | - مرافق - مواهب          | system(n)               | نظام - شبكة                      |
| give up on (phr. v) | يفقد الأمل في - يتوقف عن | the Underground(n)      | مترو الأنفاق                     |
|                     |                          | transport(ed) (n-v)     | (وسائل) النقل / المواصلات - ينقل |
| go down (phr. v)    | ينخفض - يقل - يهبط       | underground (adj - adv) | جوفي - تحت الأرض                 |
| high-tech(adj)      | ذو تقنية عالية           |                         |                                  |
| network(n)          | شبكة                     |                         |                                  |

### 2 Important Vocabulary

|                       |                                 |                         |                          |
|-----------------------|---------------------------------|-------------------------|--------------------------|
| add(ed) (v)           | يضيف                            | instead(adv)            | بدلاً من ذلك             |
| affordable(adj)       | مُتاح - في المتناول - رخيص      | interrupt(ed) (v)       | يقاطع                    |
| authority(n)          | السلطة                          | introduce(d) (v)        | يُقدّم - يطرح / يعرض     |
| available(adj)        | مُتاح - في المتناول             | involve(d) (v)          | يتضمن - يشمل             |
| central(adj)          | مركزي                           | length(n)               | طول (مدة / مسافة)        |
| check(ed) in (phr. v) | يُسجّل وصول - يراجع أوراق السفر | line(n)                 | خط                       |
| coast(n)              | ساحل                            | monorail(n)             | قطار أحادي القضبان       |
| complete(d)(adj-v)    | كامل - يُكَمّل                  | New Administrative City | العاصمة الإدارية الجديدة |
| construction(n)       | إنشاء - تركيب                   | operate(d)(v)           | يُشغّل                   |
| controls(n)           | مفاتيح / أدوات تحكّم            | operating system (n)    | نظام تشغيل               |
| debate(n)             | يقاش - مُناظرة                  | persuade(d) (v)         | يُقنع                    |
| disagreement(n)       | خلاف - نزاع                     | pollution(n)            | التلوث                   |
| discussion(n)         | مناقشة                          | practise(d) (v)         | يمارس / يتدرب            |
| doubt(n)              | شك                              | precise(adj)            | دقيق - مُحكّم            |
| driverless(adj)       | دون سائق                        | private(adj)            | خاص - شخصي               |
| emphasise(d) (v)      | يؤكد على                        | production(n)           | إنتاج                    |
| equipment(n)          | معدات - أدوات                   | railway(n)              | سكك حديدية               |
| first-aid(n)          | إسعافات أولية                   | replace(d) (v)          | يستبدل - يحل محل         |
|                       |                                 | schedule(n)             | برنامج - جَدول ترتيبات   |



|                        |                             |                   |                        |
|------------------------|-----------------------------|-------------------|------------------------|
| forms(n)               | أنواع - أشكال               | security(n)       | أمن                    |
| gas(n)                 | غاز                         | series(n)         | سلسلة - مُسَلْسِل      |
| gate(n)                | بوابة                       | size(n)           | حجم                    |
| guess(ed) (v)          | يُخَمِّن                    | suburb(n)         | ضاحية - حارة           |
| importance(n)          | أهمية                       | talk show (n)     | برنامج حوارى           |
| improve(d) (v)         | يُحَسِّن - يُحَسِّن         | total (adj - n)   | كُلِّي / نهائي - مجموع |
| improved(adj)          | مُحَسَّن - مُطَوَّر         | tunnel(n)         | نَفَق                  |
| including(preposition) | بما في ذلك                  | understanding (n) | تَفْهَم - تَحْمُل      |
| increase(d) (v - n)    | يزداد/يزيد - زيادة - ارتفاع |                   |                        |

### 3 Definitions تعريفات

| Memorise                                      | Understand   |
|---|--|
| expansion(n)<br>تَوْسُّع - تَقْدُد - تَضَخُّم | an increase in the size or length of something               |
| facilities(n)<br>تسهيلات - امتيازات - مرافق   | places, buildings or equipment that are used for an activity |
| high-tech(adj)<br>ذو تقنية عالية              | describing something that uses a lot of new technology       |
| network(n) شبكة                               | any system that has a lot of connected parts                 |
| transport (n)<br>وسائل النقل / المواصلات      | buses, trains or trams that anyone can use to travel around  |

### Exercise On Vocabulary

#### • Understand

- Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

#### 1 Key vocabulary

- The word "connect" is the same meaning as the word "link" and .....  
(الرحمانية ٢٠٢٣)  
a. fix                      b. join                      c. detach                      d. leak
- There has been a big ..... in the number of people using mobile phones in recent years.  
(بورسعيد ٢٠٢٣)  
a. invitation                      b. grow                      c. expansion                      d. upload
- The new hotel has a lot of modern ..... to attract more lodgers.  
(القرين ٢٠٢٣)  
a. facilities                      b. discoverers                      c. inventors                      d. difficulties



4. You don't need a ..... camera in order to take good photos; you just need lots of practice. (الزيتون ٢٠٢٣)

- a. high-tech      b. native      c. public      d. biodiversity

5. Blood moves around the body through a ..... of veins, arteries and blood vessels. (بشرين ٢٠٢٣)

- a. transport      b. network      c. gate      d. ways

6. The government encourages people to use ..... transport because there are too many cars on the roads. (نبا ٢٠٢٣)

- a. public      b. general      c. private      d. careful

7. In Egypt, the public transport ..... has improved a lot. (طما ٢٠٢٣)

- a. system      b. discipline      c. reign      d. judgement

8. Huge ships ..... passengers and goods between Egypt and Saudi Arabia.

- a. connect      b. respond      c. transport      d. involve

9. Not all people like it when prices ..... Producers hate it.

- a. give up      b. give up on      c. go up      d. go down

10. The ..... runs on electricity.

- a. facility      b. Underground      c. construction      d. schedule

11. Using forms of public ..... will help solve the traffic problem.

- a. translation      b. transplant      c. health care      d. transport

12. .... aren't allowed to smoke on means of transport.

- a. Issues      b. Transports      c. Expansions      d. Passengers

13. Although he is over seventy years old, he hasn't ..... doing sport.

- a. given up      b. given up on      c. a & b      d. gone down

## 2 Important vocabulary

14. Everyone ..... in the accident has been questioned by the police. (ادفو ٢٠٢٣)

- a. revolved      b. involved      c. secluded      d. included

15. I have a flexible job ....., so I can meet you at any time. (شمال بورسعيد ٢٠٢٣)

- a. column      b. seminar      c. speech      d. schedule

16. The project involves 10,000 workers ..... engineers. (دمياط ٢٠٢٣)

- a. containing      b. consisting      c. content      d. including

17. Quick! We are short of time. We must ..... in before the flight. (ابو غالب ٢٠٢٣)

- a. shake      b. check      c. apply      d. lock

18. I can't assure anything. We don't have a/an ..... schedule for the final exams. (العمرانية ٢٠٢٣)

- a. exact      b. accurate      c. precise      d. nearby



19. The Underground moves in ..... under the surface of the earth.

(أبنوب ٢٠٢٣)

- a. schedules      b. tunnels      c. research      d. farm

20. The company ..... a new site for its products.

(ساحل سليم ٢٠٢٣)

- a. spoke      b. stuck      c. created      d. rescued

21. I have a ..... car. I don't have to take the bus.

- a. precise      b. central      c. private      d. driverless

22. Mr Mohammed ..... an important point for discussion.

- a. interrupted      b. tunnelled      c. operated      d. introduced

23. A ..... is usually quieter than the city centre.

- a. suburb      b. pollution      c. debate      d. market

24. I want my mother to ..... my father to let me join the school trip.

- a. interrupt      b. persuade      c. consider      d. create

25. Try to enjoy what is ..... in your hands.

- a. precise      b. total      c. available      d. driverless

26. The user guide tells you how to ..... a device.

- a. interrupt      b. introduce      c. emphasise      d. operate

27. "Naturally, people like any increase in their income." In this utterance, the word 'increase' is a/an .....

- a. noun      b. pronoun      c. verb      d. adverb

28. Smartphones are now available at ..... prices.

- a. facilitated      b. affordable      c. current      d. grateful

29. The research ..... the importance of planting trees.

- a. interrupts      b. creates      c. emphasises      d. operates

30. The committee اللجّة are ..... the possible solutions to the problem.

- a. cycling      b. debating      c. creating      d. leading to

31. While a traditional train moves on two rails, a/an ..... moves on one rail.

- a. railway      b. Underground      c. construction      d. monorail

32. When someone is talking, it is impolite to ..... them.

- a. interrupt      b. introduce      c. emphasise      d. operate

### 3 Definitions

33. An ..... is an increase in the size or length of something.

(أسوان ٢٠٢٣)

- a. expense      b. expenditure      c. experiment      d. expansion

34. A place, building or equipment that is used for an activity is known as a/an .....

- a. argument      b. facility      c. alternative      d. network

35. The noun '.....' refers to buses, trains or trams that anyone can use to travel around.

- a. transport      b. argument      c. equipment      d. expansion



36. Any system that has a lot of connected parts is called a/an .....

- a. argument      b. facility      c. alternative      d. network

37. .... means using a lot of new technology.

- a. Friendly      b. High-tech      c. Significant      d. Convenient

## PART II VOCABULARY STUDY

### 1 Verbal Collocations متلازمات لفظية

|               |                    |                                |             |              |                       |
|---------------|--------------------|--------------------------------|-------------|--------------|-----------------------|
| <b>build</b>  | a metro line       | يُنشئ خط مترو                  | <b>make</b> | notes        | يدون ملاحظات عن       |
| <b>create</b> | pollution          | يسبب التلوث                    | <b>show</b> | disagreement | يُبدى رفضاً           |
|               | a connection       | يوجد صلة                       |             | doubt        | يُبدى الشك            |
| <b>do</b>     | a cooking course   | يحصل على دورة تدريبية في الطهي | <b>take</b> | a test       | يُمتحن - يخضع لامتحان |
| <b>have</b>   | a precise schedule | لديه جدول عمل واضح             |             | place        | يُحدّث                |

### 2 Synonyms مترادفات

| Word       | Synonym (=Meaning)            |
|------------|-------------------------------|
| affordable | متاح - رخيص                   |
| connect    | يربط - يوصّل                  |
| expansion  | توسّع - تمّدد                 |
| facility   | موهبة / مَلَكة                |
| public     | عام - قومي                    |
| public     | مرموق - بارز                  |
|            | cheap, inexpensive            |
|            | join, attach, associate, link |
|            | growth                        |
|            | talent                        |
|            | national                      |
|            | prominent, well-known         |

### 3 Antonyms المتضادات

| Word       | Antonym (= Opposite)    |
|------------|-------------------------|
| affordable | expensive, costly, dear |
| connect    | disconnect, dissociate  |
| expansion  | contraction             |
| public     | private                 |
| public     | obscure, unknown        |
| public     | secret                  |
|            | غالي                    |
|            | يفصل - يقطع الاتصال     |
|            | انكماش / تقلص           |
|            | خاص - شخصي              |
|            | مغمور - غير معروف       |
|            | سري                     |



#### 4 مشتقات المفردات الرئيسية Derivatives of key vocabulary

| connect         |                                    |   |
|-----------------|------------------------------------|---|
| connect(v)      | يربط - يُوصل                       | - Try to <b>connect</b> causes and results.                                 |
| connection(n)   | رابط - اتصال                       | - Try to make a <b>connection</b> between causes and results.               |
| connected(adj)  | مُتَّصِل - ذي صلة                  | - Results are <b>connected</b> to causes.                                   |
| expansion       |                                    |   |
| expand(v)       | يُمدّد - يتمدد                     | - Metals <b>expand</b> when they are heated.                                |
| expansion(n)    | تَوْسُّع - تَمَدُّد                | - Very high temperatures lead to the <b>expansion</b> of metals.            |
| expandable(adj) | قابل للتوسعة أو التمدّد            | - Metals are <b>expandable</b> when they are heated.                        |
| facility        |                                    |   |
| facilitate(v)   | يُسَهِّل - يُيسِّر                 | - The role of the teacher is to <b>facilitate</b> complicated points.       |
| facilitation(n) | التسهيل - التوضيح                  | - The role of the teacher is the <b>facilitation</b> of complicated points. |
| facilitator(n)  | مُيسِّر                            | - A teacher is more of a <b>facilitator</b> .                               |
| facilities(n)   | تسهيلات - امتيازات - مرافق - مواهب | - Luxor has great tourist <b>facilities</b> .                               |
| public          |                                    |   |
| public(n)       | الجمهور - العامة                   | - Most of the <b>public</b> are against crime.                              |
| public(adj)     | عام - شعبي                         | - Trains are <b>public</b> transport.                                       |

#### 5 تعبيرات و مصطلحات Expressions & Idioms

|                           |                        |                                   |                                |
|---------------------------|------------------------|-----------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| along the coast           | على امتداد الساحل      | make it easier for                | يجعل من الأسهل بالنسبة لـ      |
| around the world          | حول العالم             | metro network                     | شبكة المترو                    |
| bad for                   | ضار بـ                 | monorail line                     | خط سكة حديد أحادي القضبان      |
| bring the total number to | يصل بالرقم النهائي إلى | over the next ten years           | على مدار السنوات العشر القادمة |
| by the end of             | قبل نهاية              | public transport network / system | شبكة المواصلات العامة          |
| Cairo Metro Authority     | هيئة مترو القاهرة      | talk show                         | برنامج جوارى                   |
| close to                  | قريب من                | ten times the pollution of        | عشر أضعاف التلوث الناتج عن     |
| for or against            | مع أو ضد               |                                   |                                |
| forms of transport        | أنواع وسائل المواصلات  |                                   |                                |



Greater Cairo  
increase in  
instead of

القاهرة الكبرى  
زيادة في  
بدلاً من

total number  
underground network

الرقم النهائي - المجموع  
شبكة مترو الأنفاق

## 6 Verb + Preposition فعل + حرف جر

connect ... to  
expect to  
get to  
plan to / for

... يربط ... بـ  
يتوقع ان  
يصل إلي  
يخطط (لـ / من أجل)

stop ... from  
travel around  
work for

يمنع ... من أن  
يتنقل في أنحاء  
يعمل لحساب

## Exercise On Vocabulary Study

- ★ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- The antonym of affordable is .....  
a. cheap      b. inexpensive      c. expensive      d. high
- Man's activities ..... much pollution.  
a. create      b. do      c. cause      d. a & c
- His expression shows .....  
a. research      b. schedule      c. place      d. doubt
- When we say that someone is a public figure, we mean that they are not .....  
a. prominent      b. obscure      c. famous      d. well-known
- He hadn't made up his mind. He ..... doubt.  
a. built      b. showed      c. took      d. got
- Youssef is ..... a cooking course because he wants to start his own restaurant.  
a. emphasising      b. giving      c. doing      d. making
- There are plans for ..... a new metro line.  
a. building      b. showing      c. taking      d. getting
- 'Expansion' is to ..... as 'connect' is to 'associate'.  
a. contraction      b. growth      c. reaction      d. significance
- "Rodayna has a wonderful facility for Maths." The word 'facility' in this sentence is the synonym of .....  
a. easy      b. difficulty      c. talent      d. a & c
- The company plans ..... a new branch in Aswan.  
a. open      b. to open      c. opening      d. to opening
- The Underground is the best ..... of transport in busy cities.  
a. formula      b. forum      c. from      d. form



12. The streets were crowded, so I got ..... the office late.  
a. to                      b. up                      c. off                      d. from
13. The internet ..... needs to be fixed.  
a. connection              b. connects              c. transport              d. transports
14. This exercise ..... the arm muscles.  
a. expands                      b. expansion              c. facilitate              d. facilities
15. This exercise leads to the ..... of the arm muscles.  
a. expands                      b. expansion              c. facilitate              d. facilities

### PART III

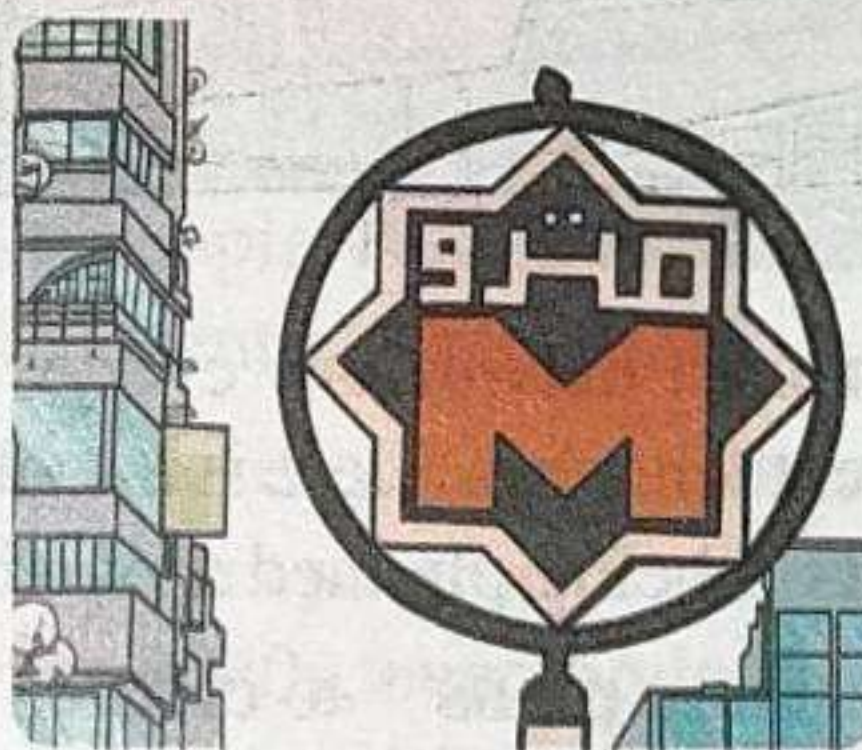
## READING & LISTENING

### 1 Reading Texts

#### Cairo Metro network: Expansion work

(SB page 17)

We hope that all our **passengers**<sup>(1)</sup> will enjoy using our new **Line**<sup>(2)</sup> 3. This **expansion**<sup>(3)</sup> of the Cairo Metro **adds**<sup>(4)</sup> seven kilometres and six new **stations**<sup>(5)</sup> to our **underground network**<sup>(6)</sup>. Line 3 will help people in the east of the city to **get to**<sup>(7)</sup> work faster and more easily because it **connects**<sup>(8)</sup> Heliopolis and the **central**<sup>(9)</sup> station of Adly Mansour. We **expect**<sup>(10)</sup> that 1.5 million passengers will use the new line this year. **High-tech**<sup>(11)</sup> **systems**<sup>(12)</sup> were used to build this 21<sup>st</sup> Century **public**<sup>(13)</sup> **transport**<sup>(14)</sup> system, and more expansion work is planned for in the future. By 2030, we expect to have built three more new lines to **bring**<sup>(15)</sup> the **total**<sup>(16)</sup> number to six. We are already building Line 4 and we will have completed it by 2024.



- (1) مسافرين - ركاب  
(2) خط  
(3) تَوسَّع  
(4) يضيف  
(5) محطات  
(6) شبكة مترو الأنفاق  
(7) يصل إلي  
(8) يربط  
(9) مركزي  
(10) يتوقع  
(11) ذو تقنية عالية  
(12) أنظمة - شبكات  
(13) العامة  
(14) المواصلات  
(15) يصل  
(16) كُلِّي - نهائي  
(17) فترات  
(18) دقيق  
(19) جدول

Line 4 will connect the east and west of Cairo and make it easier for people to travel around the city. However, due to the expansion work on Line 4, some trains will be late and we may have to close some stations for short **periods**<sup>(17)</sup> of time.

Although we don't have a **precise**<sup>(18)</sup> **schedule**<sup>(19)</sup> for the building work on Line 5 and 6 at the moment, we expect to have started building Line 5 by the end of next year.





We would like to thank all Cairo Metro passengers for your **understanding**<sup>(20)</sup> while the building work is **taking place**<sup>(21)</sup>. We hope that you will enjoy using the **improved**<sup>(22)</sup> underground network.

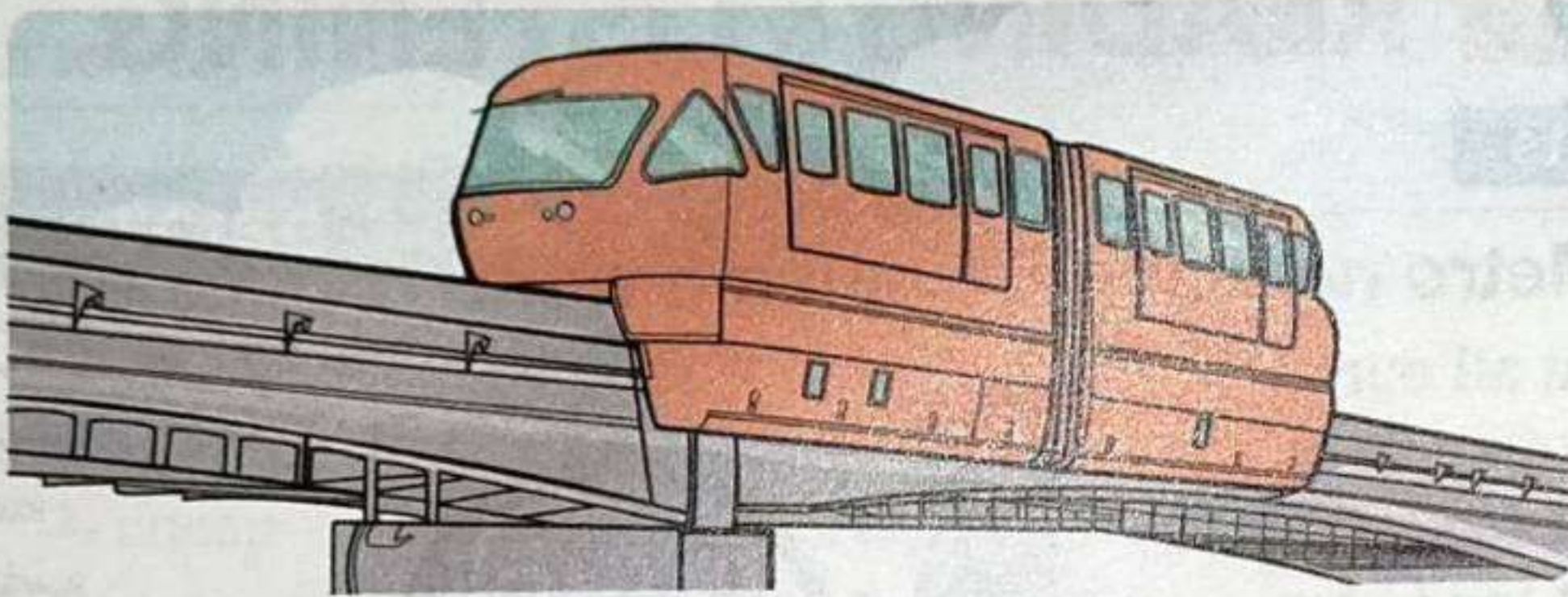
Regards,

The Cairo Metro Authority

(20) نفهم - تفهم  
(21) يحدث  
(22) مُحسّن - مُطوّر

## Public transport projects for the future

(WB page 8)



**Public transport networks**<sup>(1)</sup> everywhere will **improve**<sup>(2)</sup> a lot over the next ten years. Here is a look at some of the biggest **projects**<sup>(3)</sup> being planned around the world.

In Cairo, there are **plans**<sup>(4)</sup> to **create**<sup>(5)</sup> the first public transport **connection**<sup>(6)</sup> from both **New Administrative Capital**<sup>(7)</sup> and 6th of October City to the Greater Cairo area.

The Cairo **Monorail**<sup>(8)</sup> will **involve**<sup>(9)</sup> the **construction**<sup>(10)</sup> of two monorail lines which will take passengers 52 km from New Administrative Capital to East Cairo, and 42 km from 6th of October City to the **Greater Cairo**<sup>(11)</sup> area. The lines will open in 2025.

There are plans for an expansion of the Paris underground network in France. **Using**<sup>(12)</sup> **the latest**<sup>(13)</sup> technology, the high-tech Line 18 will connect Orly airport to the **suburb**<sup>(14)</sup> of Versailles. 21 km of the 35 km-long line will be **underground**<sup>(15)</sup>. It will open in 2030.

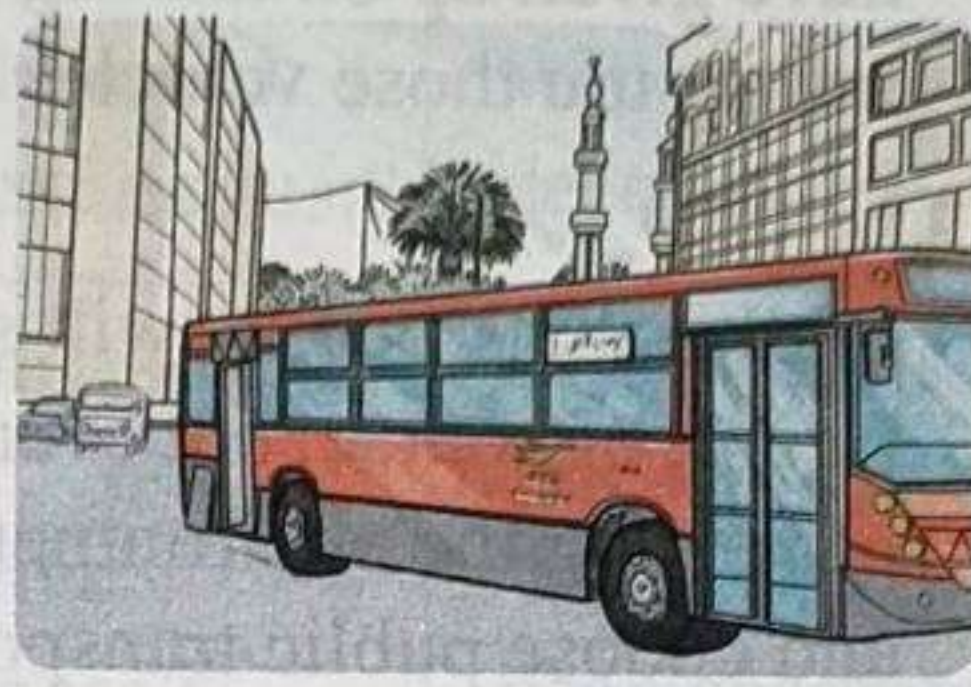
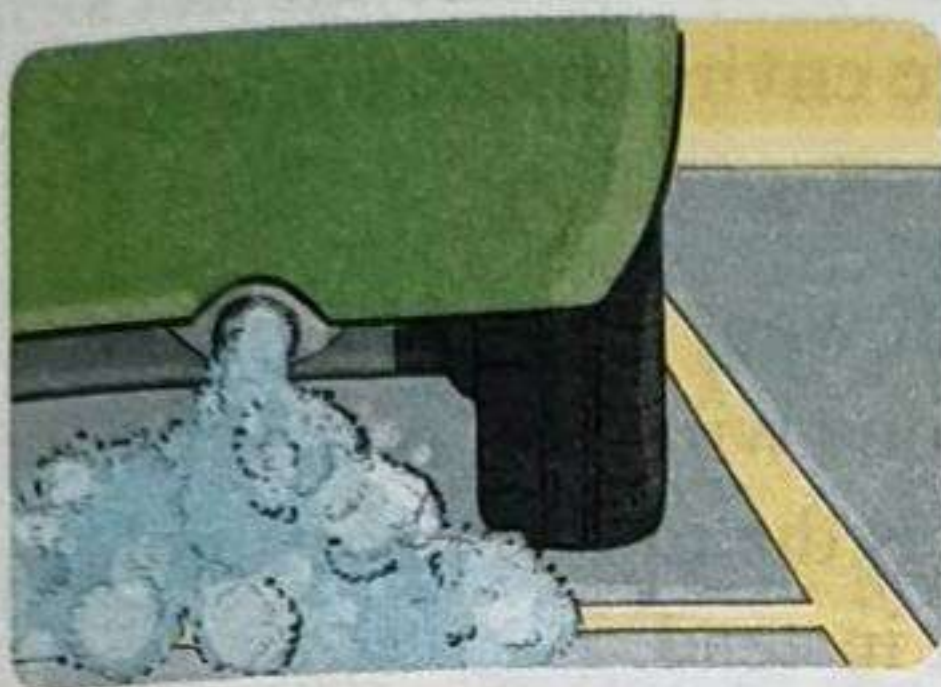
By 2030, there are plans to build the longest **tunnel**<sup>(16)</sup> in Australia's history. The 50 km-long tunnel will be part of the new Sydney Metro West underground system. The project involves 10,000 workers **including**<sup>(17)</sup> engineers.

In the north of Europe, Sweden is building a new train line **along**<sup>(18)</sup> **the coast**<sup>(19)</sup> of the country. The 270 km line will be finished in 2030 and will carry more than 1.6 million passengers a year.

- (1) شبكات المواصلات العامة
- (2) يتحسن
- (3) مشروعات
- (4) خطط
- (5) يُنشئ - يُوجد
- (6) رابط - اتصال
- (7) العاصمة الإدارية الجديدة
- (8) قطار أحادي الخط
- (9) يتضمن - يشمل
- (10) إنشاء
- (11) القاهرة الكبرى
- (12) باستخدام
- (13) الأحدث
- (14) ضاحية
- (15) تحت الأرض
- (16) نفق
- (17) بما في ذلك
- (18) بمحاذاة - على امتداد
- (19) الساحل



## 2 Listening Texts



(SB page 18)

(1) ضيوف

(2) كهربى

(3) يسبب / ينتج عنه

(4) يدمر / يتلف

(5) صديق البيئة

(6) مركبة

(7) متاح

(8) سيارات بدون سائق

**Talk show host :** So, this evening, I'd like to welcome our two **guests**<sup>(1)</sup>. We have Karima, who works for an organisation that wants us to use public transport more often. And we also have Nadiya, who works for a company that makes **electric**<sup>(2)</sup> cars. Karima, maybe you could start the conversation. Why do you think more people will have decided to use public transport in twenty years' time?

**Karima :** Well, I think the answer is quite clear. Because the dangerous gases that cars **produce**<sup>(3)</sup> are bad for the environment. By the 2040s, everybody will have realised that and decided to do something about it.

**Nadiya :** I'm sorry, but that isn't true of all cars. The electric cars that we make don't produce any gases that **damage**<sup>(4)</sup> the environment. They're very **environmentally-friendly**<sup>(5)</sup>. Experts believe that by 2030 most people will have bought an electric **vehicle**<sup>(6)</sup>.

**Karima :** I'm not so sure about that, Nadiya. Do you really think all drivers will have changed the type of vehicle they drive in less than ten years? I think that by 2050 the price of electric cars won't have gone down so much that everyone can buy one.

**Talk show host :** Can I just say something here? By 2030, the types of transport **available**<sup>(7)</sup> to us will have changed completely - don't you think? Perhaps we will have flying vehicles instead of driving on the roads. And if we do still have cars, we won't drive them ourselves because we'll have bought **driverless cars**<sup>(8)</sup>. What would you say to that?



**Nadiya**

: Whatever happens in the future, in ten years we won't have given up on driving our own vehicles. So, let's make sure those vehicles are environmentally-friendly.

**Talk show host : Karima ?**

**Karima**

: Well, I think people will still want to travel in the future, of course, but everyone will have realised that protecting the environment is the most important thing and choose public transport instead.

(WB page 9)

**Huda** : Which is the best way to travel ?

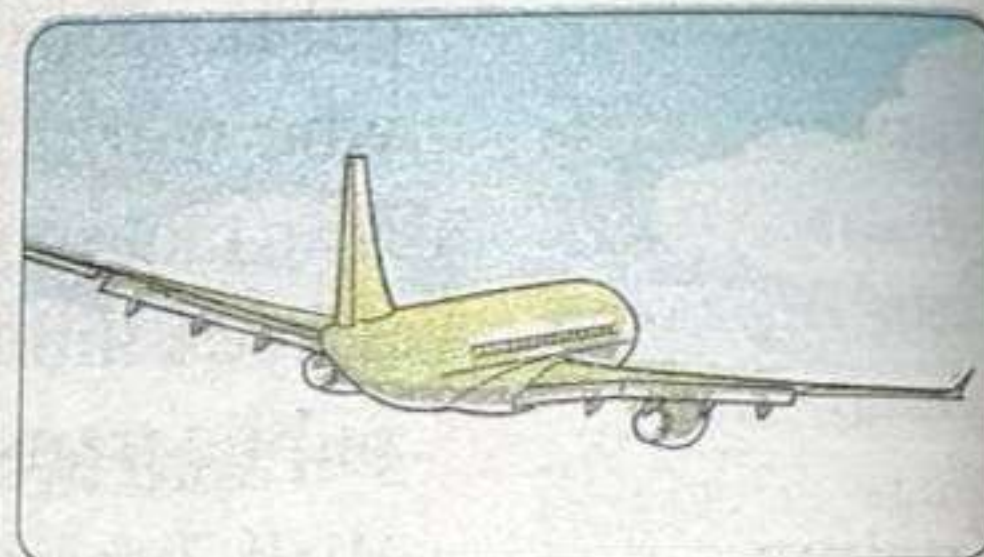
**Injy** : I think the answer is quite clear.  
Flying.

**Huda** : I'm sorry, but that isn't true. Flying causes a lot of pollution.

**Injy** : I'm not so sure about that. Modern planes don't cause much pollution because ...

**Huda** : Can I just say something here ? Planes create more than ten times the pollution of a train!

**Injy** : Yes, but it is much more expensive to build railway lines than airports. What would you say to that ?



## PART IV LANGUAGE

### The Future Perfect Tense

زمن المستقبل التام

| Form                          | Active   | Passive   |
|-------------------------------|--|---|
| <b>Affirmation</b><br>الإثبات | <b>Subj. + فاعل + will + have + p.p. ....</b><br>- He <b>will have decorated</b> the house by next August. | <b>Obj. + مفعول + will + have + been + p.p. ....</b><br>- The house <b>will have been decorated</b> by next August. |
| <b>Negation</b><br>النفي      | <b>Subj. + won't + have + p.p. ....</b><br>- He <b>won't have decorated</b> the house by six o'clock.      | <b>Obj. + won't + have been + p.p. ....</b><br>- The house <b>won't have been decorated</b> by six o'clock.         |



|  |  |  |
|--|--|--|
| <b>'Yes / No' Q.</b><br>السؤال بـ (هل) | <b>Will + subj. + have + p.p. .... ?</b><br>- Will he have decorated the house by next August? | <b>Will + obj. + have been + p.p. .... ?</b><br>- Will the house have been decorated by next August? |
| <b>'Wh' Q.</b><br>السؤال بأداة استفهام | <b>Q.W. + will + subj. + have + p.p. .... ?</b><br>- When will he have decorated the house?    | <b>Q.W. + will + obj. + have been + p.p. .... ?</b><br>- When will the house have been decorated?    |

### الاستخدامات Uses

١ التعبير عن حدث سوف يكون قد تم قبل أو بحلول وقت معين في المستقبل ، وعادة ما يُستخدم معه تعبيرات زمنية مستقبلية تبدأ بـ (by / before / this time / by the time) :

- My son Ahmed will have started school by next October.
- Before midnight tomorrow, Rokaya will have studied unit 16.
- This time next year, our company will have achieved great success.

٢ يمكن استخدام التعبيرات الزمنية الدالة على المستقبل بدون (by / before) بشرط استخدام :

for + period of time مدة زمنية

- In 2025, Mona will have lived in her house for ten years.
- Next Monday, I will have stayed in Aswan for a week.

٣ ويستخدم المستقبل التام أيضًا للتعبير عن حدث سوف يكون قد انتهى أو تم قبل وقوع حدث آخر في المستقبل، وهنا يتوقف استخدام المستقبل البسيط أو المستقبل التام على المعنى :

after/as soon as/ once / when /the moment

+

مضارع بسيط  
أو مضارع تام

+

مستقبل

- When you leave the office, I will have sent the emails.  
(سيكون الإرسال قد تم قبل مغادرتك للمكتب)
- When you leave the office, I will send the emails.  
(بعد مغادرتك للمكتب، سأقوم بالإرسال)

Before /  
By the time

+

مضارع بسيط  
أو مضارع تام

+

مستقبل (تام غالبًا)

- By the time I go home, I'll have visited two friends.



- This time (tomorrow/ next Monday / next week .... etc.)
- In (a year's / four months' / five weeks' / an hour's / ten minutes' /.....) time
- This time next Friday, I **will have moved** into my new flat.  
(سأكون قد انتقلت بالفعل)
- This time next Friday, I **will be moving** into my new flat.  
(سأكون مستمرا في نقل الأشياء)

- By the year 2030, we will be able to send text messages by the power of thought.
- By 2040, people will use renewable sources of energy.

- **expect to have + p.p. ...** (مبني للمعلوم)
  - We **expect to have built** Line 5 by the end of next year.
- **... am / is / are + expected to have been + p.p. ...** (مبني للمجهول)
  - Line 5 **is expected to have been built** by the end of next year.

## General Exercise On Language

### ● Apply

- ★ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

## 1 Getting started: Check what you have learnt

- 1 Don't phone Reda at 1:00 a.m. because he ..... (البحيرة ٢٠٢٣)  
a. sleep b. will have slept  
c. will be slept d. will be sleeping
2. By the end of this week, we hope all the thieves will ..... (بيللا ٢٠٢٣)  
a. have caught b. catch  
c. have been caught d. be catching
3. By 2050, most petrol-powered cars ..... disappeared. (العمرانية ٢٠٢٣)  
a. will have b. will be c. will have been d. have been
4. Before he gets home, his mother ..... lunch. (المحمودية ٢٠٢٣)  
a. was preparing b. will be prepared  
c. is preparing d. will have prepared
5. She ..... her studies before the age of 21. (ببا ٢٠٢٣)  
a. completes b. will be completed  
c. will be completing d. will have completed



6. .... ten o'clock tomorrow, I will have finished all my homework. (البداري ٢٠٢٣)

- a. At                      b. By                      c. In                      d. On

7. By 2030, the state ..... built a new hospital in our city. (رشيد ٢٠٢٣)  
a. will have              b. will                      c. would                      d. could

8. Everything is arranged for my travel next Saturday. It means I ..... next Saturday. (الرحمانية ٢٠٢٣)  
a. travel                      b. will travel              c. am travelling              d. was travelling

9. By 2030, this project ..... (النوبارية ٢٠٢٣)  
a. would have completed                      b. will complete  
c. will have been completed                      d. will be completing

10. In three days' time, we will ..... our flat. (شرق مدينة نصر ٢٠٢٣)  
a. have painted              b. be painted              c. being painted              d. have painting

11. When .....? (شرق مدينة نصر ٢٠٢٣)  
a. will your homework have been done  
b. your homework have been done  
c. will have been done your homework  
d. have your homework will been done

12. Look! This mobile is very nice. I ..... it. (شرق مدينة نصر ٢٠٢٣)  
a. going to buy              b. will buy                      c. am buying                      d. would buy

13. I hope wars ..... a thing of the past by 2025. (ساحل سليم ٢٠٢٣)  
a. will become                      b. become  
c. became                      d. will have become

14. We can't use classroom five tomorrow because they ..... the walls. (المرج ٢٠٢٣)  
a. will paint                      b. are painting              c. will have painted              d. paint

15. After I ..... all my jobs at the office, I will go home to have a nap. (أبو حمص ٢٠٢٣)  
a. had finished                      b. finish  
c. am going to finish                      d. will finish

16. Will you ..... the report by next week? (أبو المطامير ٢٠٢٣)  
a. be finished                      b. have finished  
c. be finishing                      d. have been finishing

## 2 Special cases

17. By 2030, they expect ..... three more lines of the Cairo Metro. (المعصرة ٢٠٢٣)  
a. to build                      b. will have built  
c. to have built                      d. will have been built



18. I can't meet you since I ..... my lessons all day. (الشيد ٢٠٢٣)

- a. will revise                      b. had revised  
c. will be revising                d. have revised

19. By this time next month, the prisoner ..... set free. (دار السلام ٢٠٢٣)

- a. had                      b. had been                      c. will have                      d. will have been

20. The guests are coming at 8 p.m. I ..... cooking by then.

(منشبة أبو عامر ٢٠٢٣)

- a. am finishing                      b. will be finished  
c. may be finished                d. will have finished

21. A new Egyptian solar-powered vehicle is expected to ..... soon.

(القرين ٢٠٢٣)

- a. show                      b. have being shown  
c. have been shown                d. have been showing

22. Experts think that Cairo ..... by more than half a million people next year.

(المرج ٢٠٢٣)

- a. will grow                      b. is growing                      c. is going to grow                      d. grows

23. Sorry, I can't see you later this evening. I ..... my homework.

(الواسطي ٢٠٢٣)

- a. did                      b. will be done                      c. am doing                      d. was doing

### 3 Check your understanding

24. Which sentence means "Before next week, I will no longer be here."?

(المعصرة ٢٠٢٣)

- a. Before next week, I will have left.  
b. Before next week, I will be leaving.  
c. Before next week, I will leave.  
d. Before next week, I have left.

25. "By 2030, the project will have been completed."

This means .....

- a. After 2030, the project will have been completed.  
b. During 2030, the project will have been completed.  
c. Before 2030, the project will have been completed.  
d. In 2030, the project will have been completed.





## PART I VOCABULARY

### 1 Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

|                               |                      |                   |                               |
|-------------------------------|----------------------|-------------------|-------------------------------|
| alternative (n - adj.)        | بديل - مختلف         | issue(n)          | قضية                          |
| argument(n)                   | برهان / حجة - جدال   | later (adj - adv) | متأخر عن - بعد ذلك / فيما بعد |
| consider(ed) (v)              | يفكر في - يعتبر      | on / in behalf of | بالتأييد عن - لمصلحة          |
| convenient(adj)               | ملائم - مناسب        | respond(ed) (v)   | يرد - يستجيب                  |
| current (adj - n)             | حالي / جاري - التيار | satisfactory(adj) | مُرضي - كافٍ                  |
| earlier (adj)                 | أبكر من - قبل (ذلك)  | significant(adj)  | هام - مؤثر - ذو مغزى          |
| earlier (adv)                 | قبل (ذلك) - من قبل   |                   | - ملحوظ                       |
| environmentally friendly(adj) | صديق للبيئة          |                   |                               |

### 2 Important Vocabulary المفردات الهامة

|                     |                         |                |                                  |
|---------------------|-------------------------|----------------|----------------------------------|
| appropriate(adj)    | ملائم / مناسب           | pause(d)(v-n)  | يتوقف - يصمت - وقفة              |
| conclusion(n)       | خاتمة                   |                | - لحظة صمت                       |
| crowded(adj)        | مزدحم - مكتظ            | playground(n)  | ملعب                             |
| cycle(d) (v)        | يركب دراجة              | point(n)       | نقطة - فكرة - رأي                |
| decrease(d) (n - v) | انخفاض - ينخفض - يُخفّض | popularity(n)  | شعبية - شهرة                     |
| disability(n)       | إعاقة                   | present(adj)   | حالي / حاضر                      |
| effect(n)           | أثر - تأثير             | provide(d) (v) | يوفر                             |
| flying vehicle      | مركبة طائرة             | region(n)      | منطقة - إقليم                    |
| further (adj-adv)   | أكثر - أبعد             | research(n)    | بَحْث                            |
| governorate(n)      | محافظة                  | solution(n)    | حل                               |
| grateful(adj)       | شاكر - ممتن             | speech(n)      | خطبة - كلمة                      |
| impossible(adj)     | مستحيل                  | stress(ed)(v)  | ضغط - يضغط / يؤثر علي            |
| inexpensive(adj)    | رخيص                    | style(n)       | نمط - أسلوب                      |
| lead to - led (v)   | يؤدي إلى                | wildlife(n)    | الحيوانات البرية / الحياة البرية |
| level(n)            | مستوى - نسبة            |                |                                  |

### 3 Definitions تعريفات

| Memorise                   | Understand   |
|----------------------------|--|
| alternative (adj - n) بديل | (describing) something you do or use instead of something else   |
| argument(n) برهان / حجة    | the reasons that you give to say why something is right or wrong |



|   |   |
|---|---|
| environmentally friendly(adj) صديق للبيئة | when something is not bad for nature  |
| significant(adj) هام - ملحوظ              | having an important effect or influence, especially on what will happen in the future |

## Exercise On Vocabulary

• Understand

★ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

### 1 Key vocabulary

- Hydroelectric energy is one of the best ..... sources of energy. (رشيد ٢٠٢٣)  
a. fossil      b. alternative      c. replaced      d. pollutant
- There was a big ..... about whether they should build the new factory near the park or not. (بيللا ٢٠٢٣)  
a. argument      b. replacement      c. involvement      d. alternative
- I need some time to ..... your offer before taking a decision. (المحمودية ٢٠٢٣)  
a. think      b. imagine      c. consider      d. believe
- Modern trains are ..... friendly. They don't cause pollution. (أبو المطامير ٢٠٢٣)  
a. environment      b. environmental      c. environmentalist      d. environmentally
- Pollution is a global ..... that needs more care from all governments. (المحمودية ٢٠٢٣)  
a. issue      b. tissue      c. ratio      d. solution
- I will talk in ..... of my classmates at the meeting. (دمياط ٢٠٢٣)  
a. half      b. halves      c. hoof      d. behalf
- A lot will depend on how the government ..... their desires. (غرب الزقازيق ٢٠٢٣)  
a. constructs      b. satisfies      c. expands      d. responds
- Fish is a ..... part of the diet of the inhabitants of coastal cities. (شربين ٢٠٢٣)  
a. brilliant      b. significant      c. participant      d. negligent
- Mr Ayman has not ..... to my request yet.  
a. connected      b. responded      c. transported      d. involved
- Please, leave me alone. Let's discuss the matter .....  
a. early      b. earlier      c. latter      d. later
- The secretary told me that the manager had left an hour .....  
a. cheaper      b. earlier      c. safer      d. further
- I don't think tomorrow is a/an ..... time for the meeting.  
a. inexpensive      b. driverless      c. earlier      d. convenient
- He enjoys his ..... job because it's profitable.  
a. public      b. affordable      c. current      d. grateful
- We are working on a/an ..... solution to the problem.  
a. crowded      b. imprecise      c. grateful      d. satisfactory



## 2 Important vocabulary

15. One of the advantages of the underground is that it is ..... to travel on.  
(أبو حمص ٢٠٢٣)
- a. inexpensive      b. inconvenient      c. local      d. expensive
16. Luxor is a small ..... which is popular with tourists.
- a. governorate      b. vehicle      c. speech      d. disability
17. She ..... for a moment before she continued singing.
- a. provided      b. decreased      c. paused      d. stressed
18. This suit is ..... for your job interview.
- a. present      b. appropriate      c. crowded      d. possible
19. Doing enough physical exercise ..... to getting fit.
- a. cycles      b. debates      c. creates      d. leads
20. I ..... to school. This way, I keep fit and, help the environment.
- a. cycle      b. debate      c. create      d. lead
21. I have no ..... comments. That's all.
- a. inexpensive      b. safe      c. along      d. further
22. I am giving a ..... at the meeting tomorrow.
- a. governorate      b. vehicle      c. speech      d. disability
23. When production ....., there are economic crises أزمات اقتصادية.
- a. provides      b. decreases      c. stresses      d. expects
24. I am really ..... to my mother. She did her best to educate me.
- a. public      b. affordable      c. current      d. grateful
25. Sama was not ..... at the meeting. I wonder why she didn't come.
- a. appropriate      b. present      c. crowded      d. possible
26. Do you think flying ..... will be popular in the future ?
- a. governorates      b. vehicles      c. speeches      d. disabilities
27. Too much work without breaks ..... me a lot.
- a. provides      b. decreases      c. stresses      d. pauses
28. You need to be very careful when you drive in a/an ..... street.
- a. present      b. appropriate      c. crowded      d. possible

## 3 Definitions

29. .... means not bad for nature.
- a. Environmentally friendly      b. High-tech  
c. Significant      d. Convenient
30. A/An ..... is the reasons that you give to say why something is right or wrong.
- a. argument      b. facility      c. alternative      d. network
31. Something you do or use instead of something else is called a/an .....
- a. agreement      b. facility      c. alternative      d. network
32. .... means having an important effect or influence, especially on what will happen in the future.
- a. Friendly      b. High-tech      c. Significant      d. Convenient



## PART II VOCABULARY STUDY

### 1 Verbal Collocations متلازمات لفظية

|           |               |                   |      |              |                       |
|-----------|---------------|-------------------|------|--------------|-----------------------|
| do        | some research | يُجرى بعض الأبحاث |      | ... better   | يُحسّن                |
| emphasise | a point       | يؤكد وجهة نظر     | make | a point      | يطرح وجهة نظر         |
| get       | paid          | يحصل علي أجر      |      | the argument | يُبرهن الحجة - يُبرهن |
| give      | a reason      | يُبرّر            | plan | a project    | يخطط لمشروع           |
| have      | an effect on  | له تأثير علي      |      |              |                       |

### 2 Synonyms مترادفات

| Word            | Synonym (=Meaning)                          |
|-----------------|---|
| convenient      | ملائم - مناسب                               |
| earlier         | قبل (ذلك)                                   |
| environmentally | صديق للبيئة                                 |
| friendly        | صديق  |
| on/in behalf of | بالنيابة عن                                 |
| respond         | يستجيب                                      |
| respond         | يُرد  |
| satisfactory    | مُرضي - كاف                                 |
| significant     | هام - ملحوظ - بارز                          |
| significant     | ذو مَغْزِي                                  |
|                 | suitable, appropriate, comfortable          |
|                 | before, before that time                    |
|                 | eco-friendly                                |
|                 | as a representative of                      |
|                 | react                                       |
|                 | answer, reply to, make a response           |
|                 | adequate, acceptable, sufficient            |
|                 | notable, remarkable, outstanding, important |
|                 | meaningful, purposeful                      |

### 3 Antonyms المتضادات

| Word         | Antonym (= Opposite)                     |
|--------------|--|
| convenient   | inconvenient, awkward                    |
| earlier      | later                                    |
| respond      | ask, inquire, wonder                     |
| respond      | ignore                                   |
| satisfactory | unsatisfactory, inadequate, unacceptable |
| significant  | insignificant                            |
| significant  | meaningless                              |
|              | غير ملائم                                |
|              | فيما بعد                                 |
|              | يسأل - يستفسر - يتساءل                   |
|              | يتجاهل                                   |
|              | غير مرضي - غير ملائم                     |
|              | غير هام - تافه                           |
|              | بلا معني                                 |



| alternative           |                                 |   |
|-----------------------|---------------------------------|---|
| alternative (n)       | بديل                            | - Electricity is a clean <b>alternative</b> to oil.   |
| alternative (adj)     | بديل - مختلف                    | - Electricity is <b>alternative</b> energy to oil.  |
| alternatively (adv)   | بدلاً من ذلك                    | - We should limit the use of oil. We need to use electricity <b>alternatively</b> .                           |
| argument              |                                 |   |
| argue (v)             | يتجادل - يدعم - يدافع عن        | - I could hear Sama and Rodayna <b>arguing</b> .<br>- He <b>argues</b> for human rights.                      |
| argument (n)          | جدال - خلاف - بُرهان / حُجّة    | - Rodayna had a big <b>argument</b> with Sama.<br>- He provided strong <b>arguments</b> to prove he is right. |
| argumentative (adj)   | مجادل - شديد الجدل              | - He quickly becomes <b>argumentative</b> when I disagree with him.   |
| convenient            |                                 |   |
| convenience (n)       | ملاءمة - مناسبة - مواءمة - راحة | - The bank provides seats for the <b>convenience</b> of its customers.  |
| convenient (adj)      | ملائم - مناسب                   | - I think tomorrow is a <b>convenient</b> time for the meeting.   |
| conveniently (adv)    | بشكل ملائم                      | - The club is <b>conveniently</b> located outside the city.   |
| environmentally       |                                 |   |
| environment (n)       | البيئة                          | - We all should protect the <b>environment</b> .  |
| environmental (adj)   | بيئي                            | - Pollution is an <b>environmental</b> issue.   |
| environmentally (adv) | من الناحية البيئية              | - This is an <b>environmentally</b> harmful project.  |
| friendly              |                                 |   |
| friend (n)            | صديق                            | - Mr Hossam is a good <b>friend</b> .   |
| friendly (adj)        | ودود - وديّ                     | - Our team won its first <b>friendly</b> match.   |
| friendliness (n)      | الود - المحبة                   | - They welcomed us with love and <b>friendliness</b> .  |
| friendship (n)        | الصداقة                         | - <b>Friendship</b> is a valuable relationship.   |



| respond             |                                     |  |
|---------------------|-------------------------------------|--|
| respond (v)         | يرد - يستجيب                        | - She responded to my offer positively.<br>- I hope my headache will respond to this medicine. |
| response (n)        | رَدّ - استجابة                      | - She gave a positive response to my offer.  |
| satisfactory        |                                     |  |
| satisfy (v)         | يُرْضِي - يُلْبِي احتياجات          | - Only winning our matches satisfies our fans.   |
| satisfaction (n)    | الرضا - الكفاية                     | - When I agreed, mum gave a smile of satisfaction.   |
| satisfactory (adj)  | مُرْضِي - كافٍ                      | - My teacher gave a satisfactory explanation to the lesson.                                    |
| significant         |                                     |  |
| signify (v)         | يعني - يعطي مَعْرَظِي               | - What does this reply signify?  |
| significance (n)    | أهمية - تأثير - مَعْرَظِي           | - Do you understand the significance of his comment?   |
| significant (adj)   | هام - مُؤَثِّر - ذو مَعْرَظِي ملحوظ | - He gave a significant reply.   |
| significantly (adv) | بشكل ملحوظ                          | - The number of internet users has increased significantly in the last ten years.              |

## 5 Expressions & Idioms تعبيرات و مصطلحات

|                                   |                       |                          |              |
|-----------------------------------|-----------------------|--------------------------|--------------|
| alternative to + n / (inf. + ing) | بديل لـ               | local issues             | مشكلات محلية |
| at least                          | على الأقل             | people with disabilities | ذوي الإعاقة  |
| be based on                       | قائم على              | point of view            | وجهة نظر     |
| children of all ages              | الأطفال من كل الأعمار | possible for             | ممكّن لـ     |
| decrease in                       | نقص / تقليل في        | significant decrease     | انخفاض ملحوظ |
| disagreeing strongly              | الرفض بشدة            | that is because          | ذلك لأن      |
| help out with                     | يُنقِل للمساعدة في    | using = by using         | باستخدام     |
| keep in mind                      | يضع في الاعتبار       | Yours faithfully         | الفُخْلِص    |

## 6 Verb + Preposition فعل + حرف جر

|                            |                     |                  |             |
|----------------------------|---------------------|------------------|-------------|
| lead to + n / (inf. + ing) | يؤدي إلى            | support ... with | يدعم ... بـ |
| respond to                 | يرد على - يستجيب لـ |                  |             |



## argument – disagreement – dispute – quarrel

- **argument (n)** جدال - خلاف (يتضمن التحدث بغضب)  
- The traffic stopped because of an **argument** between two drivers.
- **disagreement (n)** خلاف (لا يتضمن التحدث بغضب)  
- Mr Hassan left the room after a **disagreement** with the manager.
- **dispute (n)** نزاع - خلاف (عام أو قانوني وغالباً يستمر لفترة طويلة)  
- The long legal **dispute** between the two companies has finally been ended.
- **quarrel (n)** جدال - خلاف (يتضمن التحدث بغضب ويستمر لفترة طويلة)  
- The traffic stopped because of a **quarrel** between two drivers.

## Exercise On Vocabulary Study

## • ★ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. The word 'convenient' means the same as the word ..... (رشيد ٢٠٢٣)  
a. comfortable    b. difficult    c. complex    d. uncomfortable
2. To respond gives an antonymous meaning to ..... (جرجا ٢٠٢٣)  
a. require    b. inquire    c. tell    d. wander
3. "Your exam results are satisfactory, but you need to work harder next time." The synonym of "satisfactory" is ..... (المعصرة ٢٠٢٣)  
a. important    b. acceptable    c. reliable    d. variable
4. The manager is ill, so I'm speaking ..... his behalf. (العمرانية ٢٠٢٣)  
a. at    b. of    c. over    d. on
5. I need to ..... my points.  
a. emphasise    b. make    c. deal    d. a & b
6. "I expect him to respond to my complaint." Which of the following can replace 'respond' ?  
a. reply    b. repeat    c. ignore    d. ask
7. People ..... disabilities need special care.  
a. with    b. for    c. about    d. who's
8. Scientists are trying to find better alternatives to ..... harmful traditional petrol engines.  
a. use    b. uses    c. using    d. used
9. They are ..... some research into air pollution.  
a. saving    b. causing    c. making    d. doing



10. He is no volunteer. He ..... paid.  
a. builds      b. shows      c. takes      d. gets
11. I'd like to ..... the argument that we will all have stopped driving cars in fifty years' time.  
a. save      b. cause      c. make      d. do
12. "There's a significant difference between distance learning and face-to-face one." The adjective 'significant' in this context is the antonym of .....  
a. meaningful      b. insignificant      c. remarkable      d. a & c
13. "I expect him to respond to the injection الحَقْن." Which of the following gives the exact meaning of 'respond'?  
a. reply      b. reply to      c. ignore      d. react
14. How many ..... do you have?  
a. alternative      b. alternatives      c. an alternative      d. a & b
15. You have to write back in ..... to this email as soon as possible.  
a. argue      b. argument      c. respond      d. response
16. Every word in the poem has its .....  
a. signify      b. significance      c. significant      d. significantly

### PART III

## READING & LISTENING

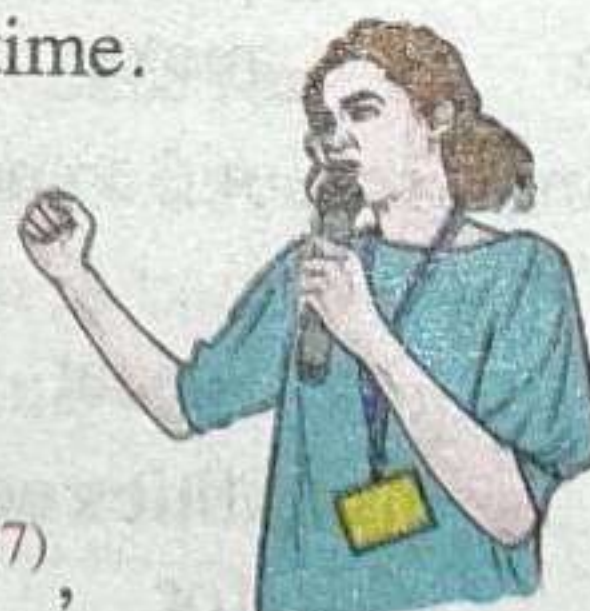
### 1 Reading Texts

#### A speech about :

(WB page 10)

#### The future of public transport

I'd like to **make the argument**<sup>(1)</sup> that we will all have stopped driving cars in fifty years' time. That is **because**<sup>(2)</sup> there will be lots of **inexpensive**<sup>(3)</sup> and **environmentally friendly**<sup>(4)</sup> **forms**<sup>(5)</sup> of public transport. Another **important**<sup>(6)</sup> point I'd like to make is that, because roads will be **safer**<sup>(7)</sup>, there will be **alternatives**<sup>(8)</sup> to using trains and buses, too. For example, more people will walk and **cycle**<sup>(9)</sup>. It's important to **keep in mind**<sup>(10)</sup> that these ways of travelling will **lead to**<sup>(11)</sup> a significant **decrease**<sup>(12)</sup> in **levels**<sup>(13)</sup> of **pollution**<sup>(14)</sup>.



- (1) يقدم برهان - يبرهن
- (2) لأن
- (3) رخيص
- (4) صديق للبيئة
- (5) أشكال - أنواع
- (6) هام - ملحوظ
- (7) أكثر أماناً
- (8) بدائل
- (9) يركب دراجة
- (10) يأخذ بعين الاعتبار
- (11) يؤدي إلى
- (12) انخفاض
- (13) مستويات
- (14) التلوث



## An email to the local governorate

(SB page 21)

Dear Sir or Madam,

I am writing **on behalf of**<sup>(1)</sup> myself and the other students in my class at school.

We would be very **grateful**<sup>(2)</sup> if the **governorate**<sup>(3)</sup> would **consider**<sup>(4)</sup> **organising**<sup>(5)</sup> the expansion to our town's public transport network. The **current**<sup>(6)</sup> network is not **satisfactory**<sup>(7)</sup> because there are not enough buses to take children to school early in the morning.

I have done some **research**<sup>(8)</sup> and some children arrive at school much later than they need to, and the buses are very **crowded**<sup>(9)</sup>.

I suggest that the City Council Office either **provide**<sup>(10)</sup> more buses at the time when students travel to school or it change the bus **timetable**<sup>(11)</sup> so that the buses arrive at our school twenty or thirty minutes **earlier**<sup>(12)</sup>.

I would be very happy to discuss this **issue**<sup>(13)</sup> **further**<sup>(14)</sup> at any time that would be **convenient**<sup>(15)</sup>. Then we could discuss which **solution(s)**<sup>(16)</sup> would be **possible**<sup>(17)</sup> for our city. Should you have any further questions about the public transport students need, please **respond**<sup>(18)</sup> to this email.

Yours faithfully,  
Sara Abdelaziz



- (1) بالنيابة عن
- (2) شاكر - ممتن
- (3) المحافظة
- (4) يفكر في
- (5) تنظيم
- (6) الحالي
- (7) مرضي - كاف
- (8) بحث
- (9) مزدحم
- (10) يوفر
- (11) جدول مواعيد
- (12) أبكر - قبل
- (13) قضية
- (14) أكثر
- (15) فلائم
- (16) حل (حلول)
- (17) ممكن
- (18) يرد - يجيب



## Join us to help your community!

(WB page 11)

We are a group of volunteers who are working on behalf of the **local**<sup>(1)</sup> government and we **help out with**<sup>(2)</sup> local issues. Would you consider working with us?

Our current project is improving the local **playgrounds**<sup>(3)</sup>. These are great places for local families, but some of the **equipment**<sup>(4)</sup> is not satisfactory.

Our volunteers are working hard to make sure that all the playground equipment is **safe**<sup>(5)</sup> and fun to use for children **of all ages**<sup>(6)</sup>.

We will be at the town **hall**<sup>(7)</sup> all day on Tuesday 6<sup>th</sup> July. Come and join us at a time that is convenient!



Like



Comment



- (1) محلي
- (2) يتنقل للمساعدة في
- (3) ملاعب
- (4) معدات / أدوات
- (5) آمن
- (6) من كل الأعمار
- (7) قاعة



## 2 Listening Text

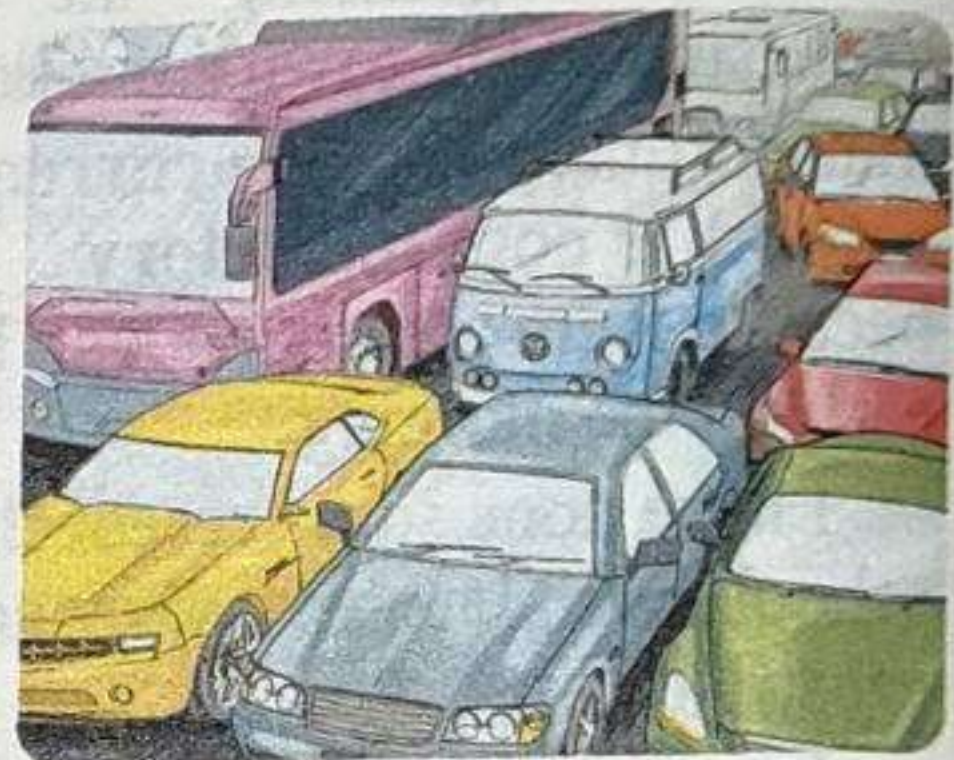
(SB page 20)

**Presenter :** I'm here today to talk to you about cars and tell you why we will not have stopped driving them by 2050.

The first argument I would like to make, and something we should never forget, is that cars are everywhere. Just look around! Most people drive their cars every day. It's hard-perhaps impossible-to **imagine**<sup>(1)</sup> that people will have changed the way they travel so much that by 2050, nobody will be driving.

Another very **significant point**<sup>(2)</sup> that I'd like to make is that it's hard to imagine

a good alternative to the car at the moment. Some people have suggested that we will have started using flying vehicles by 2030, but I **doubt**<sup>(3)</sup> that. Alternatives to the car are usually too expensive, too dangerous, and many of them might also damage the environment in the same way that some cars do. It's important to keep in mind that more and more of the cars that we're making today are environmentally-friendly. Just look at the **popularity**<sup>(4)</sup> of electric cars. They don't damage the environment when we drive them and so we can expect that, in a few years' time, they will have become even more popular.



(1) يتصور / يتخيل

(2) نقطة هامة

(3) يشك

(4) شعبية / شهرة

## PART IV LANGUAGE

راجع شرح القاعدة من الدرسين الأول والثاني.

تدوين

### General Exercise On Language

Apply

★ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1 Getting started: Check what you have learnt

1. By 2030, we ..... able to make cars that run on water.

a. will be not

b. will have been

c. will be being

d. will have

2. I'm sorry I can't go to your party. I ..... to dentist this afternoon.

a. am going

b. will go

c. will have gone

d. going

(بورسعيد ٢٠٢٣)



3. What ..... before next summer? (الواسطي ٢٠٢٣)  
 a. will have you done      b. you will have done  
 c. have you done      d. will you have done
4. By 21<sup>st</sup> May, I ..... all my final exams. (أبنوب ٢٠٢٣)  
 a. will have taken      b. take  
 c. will take      d. will have been taken
5. Five percent of the desert ..... by 2030. (أبو حمص ٢٠٢٣)  
 a. will have reclaimed      b. will reclaim  
 c. will have been reclaimed      d. would be reclaimed
6. By the time I finish this course, I ..... ten tests. (المرج ٢٠٢٣)  
 a. will have taken      b. will take      c. am taking      d. will be taking
7. I ..... read the book by the end of this week. (الزيتون ٢٠٢٣)  
 a. will have      b. will      c. am going to      d. can
8. By the age of 24, I will ..... (أسوان ٢٠٢٣)  
 a. have graduated      b. have been graduated  
 c. graduate      d. be graduated
9. My daughter ..... her exams until next weekend.  
 a. will be finishing      b. won't be finished  
 c. will have finished      d. won't have finished
10. I expect we ..... all the work by five o'clock this evening.  
 a. will have been done      b. will have done  
 c. will be done      d. will be doing
11. The clear sky is a sign that it ..... another sunny day.  
 a. will be      b. is being      c. is going to be      d. will have been
12. We ..... in Cairo for five years next month.  
 a. will have been      b. will be      c. are going to be      d. are being
13. You won't need to call them as they ..... by lunchtime.  
 a. arriving      b. going to arrive      c. will be arrived      d. will have arrived
14. They ..... dinner by the time we get there. There will be no food left.  
 a. will have      b. will be had      c. had had      d. will have had
15. You ..... done a lot of your work by the end of this month. You will be free then.  
 a. will have      b. will be      c. had      d. have
16. You ..... the book before the next class, won't you?  
 a. will have read      b. won't have read  
 c. have read      d. didn't read
17. By 2026, the population of Egypt ..... to about 120 million.  
 a. will have been grown      b. would grow  
 c. will be grown      d. will have grown
18. Many of these vegetables ..... become corrupt فاسدة before we cook them.  
 a. would have      b. will have been      c. will be      d. will have

## 2 Special cases

19. Ahmed's birthday ..... after two weeks, on 26<sup>th</sup> April.  
 a. will have been      b. is being      c. is going to be      d. will be



20. Mum won't visit grandma tomorrow as she ..... the houseworks all day.  
 a. will have done                      b. will be doing  
 c. will be done                      d. would be done
21. In 2026, the population of Egypt ..... to about 120 million.  
 a. will be grown    b. will grow    c. has grown    d. have grown
22. After I ..... all my jobs at the office, I will go home to have a nap.  
 a. finishes                      b. will finish  
 c. am going to finish                      d. have finished
23. I ..... with my aunt during my next two-week holiday in Alexandria. She has invited me.  
 a. am staying    b. shall stay    c. am going to    d. stay
24. Leave the baby here and I ..... after her.  
 a. will look                      b. will have looked  
 c. am going to look                      d. am looking
25. I ..... that book by the time you get here. It is very long.  
 a. will have read                      b. won't have read  
 c. won't have been read                      d. will be read
26. Our company ..... a delegation to the international economic conference.  
 a. is sending    b. will send    c. is sent    d. going to send

### 3 Check your understanding

27. "I expect to have finished the report by 11 o'clock tomorrow." This means .....  
 a. the report expects to have finished by 11 o'clock tomorrow  
 b. the report is expected to have finished by 11 o'clock tomorrow  
 c. the report is expected to have been finished by 11 o'clock tomorrow  
 d. b & c
28. "My car is expected to have been checked in half an hour." This means .....  
 a. I expect my car to have checked in half an hour  
 b. the mechanic will have checked my car in half an hour  
 c. the mechanic will have been checked my car in half an hour  
 d. my car is expected to have checked in half an hour
29. "I will have returned home by nine." The word 'by' here means .....  
 a. before                      b. after                      c. at                      d. exactly at
30. "I expect Dr Mustafa to have opened his clinic by 2025." What does this mean?  
 a. Dr Mustafa is expected to have opened his clinic by 2025.  
 b. Dr Mustafa's clinic is expected to have been opened by 2025.  
 c. Dr Mustafa will have opened his clinic by 2025.  
 d. a, b & c



## Should / If

- تُستخدم (Should) بدلا من (If) في الحالة الشرطية الاولى كالتالي:

- Should + subj. + inf. ..., + subj. + will / can / may + inf. ...

ex. - If Sama studies hard, she will get high marks.

= Should Sama study hard, she will get high marks.

- تُستخدم (Should) بدلا من (If) في الحالة الشرطية الثانية كالتالي:

Should + subj. + inf. ..., + subj. + would / could / might + inf. ...

ex. - If Ahmed had enough time, he'd help me.

= Should Ahmed have enough time, he'd help me.

## Present participle clauses (inf. + ing) عبارات اسم الفاعل

تبدأ هذه العبارات بـ (inf. + ing) وتستخدم في حالة المبني للمعلوم، ويمكن أن تُستخدم بدلا من الروابط التالية :

1 While / As بينما + جملة مبنيّة للمعلوم = (Inf. + ing)...

ex. - While I was walking in the street, I lost my keys.

= Walking in the street, I lost my keys.

2 When عندما + جملة مبنيّة للمعلوم = (Inf. + ing)...

ex. - When I opened the door of the room, I realised that Ahmed was asleep.

= Opening the door of the room, I realised that Ahmed was asleep.

3 After / As soon as / Once بمجرد أن + جملة مبنيّة للمعلوم = (Inf. + ing)...

ex. - As soon as Sama had arrived home, she turned on the lights.

= Arriving home, Sama turned on the lights.

4 Because لأن + جملة مبنيّة للمعلوم = (Inf. + ing)...

ex. - Because I was very ill, I didn't go to school.

= Being very ill, I didn't go to school.



**5** ..... by + (inf. + ing) / the + noun اسم + of = (inf. + ing)...

- ex.** - I kept warm in the cold weather by wearing a lot of clothes.  
 = I kept warm in the cold weather wearing a lot of clothes.  
 - I managed to open the door by the use of my sister's key.  
 = I managed to open the door using my sister's key.

**6** ... who / which / that + جملة وصل مبنية للمعلوم = (inf. + ing)...

- ex.** - The man who is wearing a black jacket is my uncle.  
 = The man wearing a black jacket is my uncle.  
 - The factory which produces a lot of pollution must be closed.  
 = The factory producing a lot of pollution must be closed.

**Compound Adjectives** الصفات المركبة

تتكون الصفة المركبة من كلمتين أو أكثر وبينهم (-):

| Expression                                 | Hyphenated Adjective             |
|--|----------------------------------|
| Tools which have worn out                  | worn-out tools                   |
| A girl who is five years old               | a five-year-old girl             |
| A pole which is two and a half metres long | a two-and-a-half-metre-long pole |
| A horse which is very friendly looking     | a friendly-looking horse         |
| A house which is ten years old             | a ten-year old house             |
| A ladder which is four metres long         | a four-metre-long ladder         |
| Rules which are easy to remember           | easy-to-remember rules           |

**stop**

- **stop + obj.** مفعول + **from + (inf. + ing) = stop + obj.** مفعول + (inf. + ing) ... من أن يمنع ....

- ex.** - We must stop people from polluting the river.  
 = We must stop people polluting the river.

- **stop + to + inf.**

يتوقف لكي يفعل شيئاً

- ex.** - On my way home, I stopped to buy some fruit.

- **stop + (inf. + ing)**

يتوقف عن فعل شيء

- ex.** - My uncle has stopped smoking and his health is better now.

**enjoy / love / consider + (inf. + ing)**

- ex.** - Ashraf enjoys drinking fresh juice.  
 - Nora loves writing poems.  
 - Salah considers playing for another club.

- تذكر أن الفعل (love) يأتي بعده (inf. + ing) أو (to + inf.) دون فرق في المعنى:

- ex.** - Mohamed loves meeting / to meet people from different countries.



## Ways to express reason التعبير عن السبب

(inf. + ing) + بفضل / بسبب because of / due to / owing to / thanks to + جملة مضارع  
جملة مضارع تام / مضارع تام مستمر + لأن because / since / as + جملة مضارع =

- ex.** - I'm very tired because of **working** very hard all day.  
- I'm very tired because I **have been working** very hard all day.  
- Because of **looking** at the computer screen for a long time, he **has** problems with his sight.  
- Because **he has been looking** at the computer screen for a long time, he has problems with his sight.

• **This / That is because** + جملة سبب وذلك لأن

- ex.** - I am very tired. **That's because** I have been working all day.  
- He has a problem with his sight. **This is because** he has been looking at the computer screen for a long time.

## equipment

كلمة (equipment) لا تُعد وتُعامل مُعاملة المفرد:

- ex.** - This equipment is very expensive. (**Not:** These equipments are ...)

## General Exercise On Language Hints

• ☆ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

- Can you tell me the reason ..... you broke the school rules?  
(دمياط ٢٠٢٣)  
a. for                      b. of                      c. why                      d. at
- Without ..... your parents, you will lose more.  
(ساحل سليم ٢٠٢٣)  
a. obeyed                      b. disobey                      c. obeying                      d. disobeying
- ..... up next to the sea, Amira learned to swim when she was very young.  
a. Growing                      b. Grow                      c. She grew                      d. Grew
- Picking up her pen, Samira ..... to write a letter to her friend in Italy.  
a. start                      b. had started                      c. started                      d. starting
- ..... along the street, my sister and I saw a famous athlete!  
a. To walk                      b. Walk                      c. Walked                      d. Walking
- Driving into town, we saw that the streets were full of people ..... their shopping.  
a. do                      b. did                      c. had done                      d. doing
- Tarek fell over, ..... over a table at the same time.  
a. knocking                      b. knock                      c. knocked                      d. to knock
- ..... she go now, she would catch the train.  
a. Should                      b. If                      c. Unless                      d. In case
- He was punished ..... the mistake he had made.  
a. that's because                      b. because                      c. due to                      d. a & b



10. He was punished ..... he had made a big mistake.  
 a. that's because    b. because    c. due to    d. a & b
11. The equipment of the classrooms ..... been delivered.  
 a. is    b. has    c. are    d. have
12. I started to change my mind about the new car. I consider .....  
 for my money back.  
 a. to ask    b. ask    c. to asking    d. asking
13. Sama stopped ..... fizzy drinks because they are unhealthy.  
 a. drinking    b. to drink    c. to drinking    d. drink
14. Yara stopped ..... some water because she was thirsty.  
 a. drinking    b. to drink    c. to drinking    d. drink
15. The policeman stopped me ..... my car in this 'No Parking' area.  
 a. parking    b. from parking    c. a & b    d. to park
16. Our flat has a ..... ceiling.  
 a. four metres high    b. four metre high  
 c. four-metres-high    d. four-metre-high
17. There was a ..... wind.  
 a. thirtieth-kilometre-an-hour    b. thirtieth kilometre an hour  
 c. thirty kilometre an hour    d. thirty-kilometre-an-hour

## PART II LANGUAGE SKILLS

### 1 Reading

★ Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

Organizations that build digital media products rely on multi-skilled teams and manage those teams with business processes designed to enhance their efficiency and effectiveness. For example, making a game requires storytellers, programmers, artists, data analysts, user experience designers, project managers and animators. **"Throwing things over the wall"** between separated groups of experts is not an effective way to manage things. You have to ensure that they understand each other, work together creatively, and collectively achieve a result that delivers a world-class experience. The skills required to manage these multi-skilled team members and the fast-paced nature of the industry means that digital media producers have to have communication and collaboration skills as well as a depth and breadth of knowledge that is unprecedented غير مسبوقه.

Team members are educated on these two aspects – working in multi-skilled teams and engaging with a wide range of modern, creative business processes – while making digital media products that deliver value for people. Programs are designed to help graduates develop several main abilities that will serve them well in their careers.

A program should cater well to members with an entrepreneurial vision. In addition to developing their business skills, they also improve their abilities to



pitch, seek the right partners and investors, and manage resources. It should offer specified project and 'venture internship' options to help members create and launch a new business with a new digital media product.

★ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d:

- The underlined phrase "Throwing things over the wall" in the passage means .....  
 a. living in separate rooms      b. learning how to shoot  
 c. increasing of good relationships      d. lack of good relationships
- According to the passage, a successful digital media production needs a/an ..... business.  
 a. teamwork      b. personally-skilled  
 c. individual      d. family
- The team should have ..... skills.  
 a. communication      b. happiness      c. carelessness      d. laziness
- Which of the following is the best title for the passage?  
 a. The Downsides of Digital Media      b. The Merits of Digital Media  
 c. Digital Media Teams      d. The Dangers of Digital Media
- The underlined pronoun "It" in the last paragraph refers to the .....  
 a. team member      b. partner      c. visitor      d. program
- The most important cause of success in a digital media team is .....  
 a. cooperation      b. designs      c. colours      d. skills
- How can a member do his role in a team ? .....  
 a. In isolation from others      b. Together with the other members  
 c. On his own      d. Better than the other members
- Digital production team members should have .....  
 a. fighting      b. bad skills  
 c. entertainments      d. venture internship

## 2. Email Writing كتابة رسالة البريد الإلكتروني

- هناك بعض التعبيرات الخاصة برسائل البريد الإلكتروني التي تختلف في اللغة العامية عن اللغة الدارجة مثل :

|    | Formal  | Informal  |
|----|---|---|
| 1. | Dear Sir or Madam      عزيزي السيد / السيدة                               | Hello / Hi      مرحباً                                  |
| 2. | We would be very grateful if ...<br>could ...      سنكون ممتنين لو أن ... | Please could you ...?<br>هل يمكن أن ... من فضلك؟        |
| 3. | The ... is not satisfactory ...<br>إن ... ليس مرضياً                      | The ... isn't good enough.<br>إن ... ليس جيداً بما يكفي |
| 4. | As a result,      لذلك  | Because of that      لهذا السبب                         |
| 5. | I would suggest that<br>أود أن أقترح أن ...                               | One idea is ...      أحد الأفكار هي أن                  |



|    |  |   |
|----|--|---|
| 6. | I would be very happy to ...<br>يُسعدني أن ...   | It would be no problem to ...<br>لا توجد مشكلة في أن ...                              |
| 7. | Should you have any further questions, please respond to this email.<br>إذا كان لديكم مزيد من الاستفسارات، يمكنكم الرد على هذه الرسالة | Write to me if you need to know anything else.<br>راسلني إذا أردت أن تعرف أي شيء آخر. |
| 8. | Yours faithfully<br>المُخلص  | Bye<br>إلى اللقاء   |

### Model Email

- ✪ Write an email of about (180) words to your friend Nadi(a) telling him / her about the advantages and disadvantages of smart phones. Your email is nabil(a)@student.com and your friend's email is nadi(a)@student.com

From : nabil.a@student.com

To : nadi.a@student.com

Subject : advantages and disadvantages of smartphones



Dear Nadi(a),

How are you, Nadia? I hope you and your family are your best. It gives me great pleasure to send this email to you. I want to tell you about my opinion of smartphones.

Like everything else, smartphones have advantages and disadvantages. On the one hand, they have made communication easier than before. You can call anybody anywhere at any time. You can also send text messages. They allow you to send and receive video calls. You can also log on the internet quickly. Smart phones have a lot of applications that allow you to know and follow everything through them. And, believe it or not, you can work and get money through smartphones.

On the other hand, mobile phones have some disadvantages. People have stopped visiting each other because it has become easier to phone them. Some young people use smartphones in bad ways. They can also cause some health problems.

Finally, I think that we have to use smartphones in a way that makes us benefit from them and, at the same time, avoid their downsides. Now, what do you think of smartphones? I'm waiting for your reply.

Yours,  
Nabil(a)



### 3 الترجمة Translation

#### 1 Choose the correct Arabic translation from a, b, c or d:

1. Scientists believe that work conditions will be completely different in the future. Artificial intelligence is one of the most important factors that will decrease the number of people working in different fields. (اطسا ٢٠٢٣)

a. يُعتَقَدُ العلماء أن ظروف العمل ستكون مختلفة تماماً في المستقبل. يُعَدُّ الذكاء الاصطناعي من أهم العوامل التي ستزيد من عدد العاملين في المجالات المتنوعة.

b. يُعتَقَدُ العلماء أن شروط العمل ستكون متشابهة تماماً في المستقبل. يُعَدُّ الذكاء الاصطناعي من أهم النتائج التي ستقلل من عدد العاملين في المجالات المختلفة.

c. يُعتَقَدُ العلماء أن ظروف العمل ستكون مختلفة تماماً في المستقبل. يُعَدُّ الذكاء الاصطناعي من أهم العوامل التي ستقلل من عدد العاملين في المجالات المختلفة.

d. يُعتَقَدُ العلماء أن شروط العمل ستكون مختلفة تماماً في المستقبل. يُعَدُّ الذكاء الاصطناعي من أهم النتائج التي ستقلل من عدد العاملين في المجالات المتنوعة.

2. The government tries to make use of all its potentials and resources so that it can increase national income and raise the standard of living. (دسوق ٢٠٢٣)

a. تحاول الحكومة الاستفادة من جميع صادراتها ومواردها، حتى تتمكن من زيادة الدخل القومي ورفع مستوى المعيشة.

b. تحاول الحكومة الاستفادة من جميع إمكانياتها ومواردها، حتى تتمكن من زيادة الدخل القومي ورفع مستوى المعيشة.

c. حاولت الحكومة الاستفادة من بعض إمكانياتها ومواردها، حتى تتمكن من زيادة الدخل القومي ورفع مستوى المعيشة.

d. تحاول الحكومة الاستفادة من جميع إمكانياتها ومواردها، حتى تتمكن من استثمار الدخل القومي ورفع مستوى المعيشة.

#### 2 Choose the correct English translation from a, b, c or d:

١. دائماً تبدأ الاختراعات بفكرة ثم تتطور لتصبح شيئاً يخدم الإنسانية، وتتطور الاختراعات كثيراً باستخدام التقنيات الأكثر تقدماً. (الزهوة ٢٠٢٣)

a. Inventions always start with an idea then develop to be something that helps humanity. Inventions develop a lot by using advanced technology.

b. Inventors always start with an ideal then develop to be something that helps humanity. Inventions develop a lot by using advanced technology.

c. Inventions rarely start with an idea then develop to be something that helps humanity. Inventions develop a lot by using advanced technology.



- d. Inventors always start with an idea then develop to be nothing that helps humanity. Inventions develop a lot by using advanced technology.

أ. من المؤكد أن التكنولوجيا الحديثة لن تتوقف عن تقديم الحلول الأفضل في مجال النقل والمواصلات، وذلك لمواجهة التوسع المستمر للمدن والزيادة المستمرة في عدد السكان. (المعنى ٢٠٢٣)

- a. Certainly, technology will not stop proving the best solutions in the field of transportation, in order to meet the continuous expansion of cities and the continuous increase in population
- b. Certainly, technology will stop supplying the best solutions in the field of transportation, in order to meet the continuous expansion of cities and the continuous increase in population.
- c. Certainly, technology will not stop offering the best solutions in the field of transportation, in order to meet the continuous expansion of cities and the continuous increase in pollution.
- d. Certainly, technology will not stop providing the best solutions in the field of transportation, in order to meet the continuous expansion of cities and the continuous increase in population.

### PART III JUST FOR ADVANCED LEVEL

للفائقين فقط

#### alternative

##### • alternative (adj)

بديل (صفة تأتي فقط قبل الاسم)

- The boss said that he has a plan which is **alternative**. (X)
- The boss said that he has an **alternative** plan. (✓)

##### • alternative (adj)

مُخْتَلِف - مُغَايِر (صفة تأتي غالباً قبل الاسم)

- In modern cities, people have an **alternative** lifestyle.

##### • alternative (n)

بديل - اختيار آخر

- I had no **alternative** but to report him to the police.

##### • alternative to + n / (inf. + ing)

بديل - اختيار آخر لـ

- I had no **alternative to reporting** him to the police.

لاحظ التعبيرات التالية:

- have no alternative
- leave somebody with no alternative
- a practical / safe alternative

ليس لديه اختيار بديل

لا يترك له مجال للاختيار - يفرض عليه

بديل عملي / آمن



## argument

- **argue (with) (v)** يجادل - يتنازع (مع)  
- The teacher was angry because Soha continued to **argue with** her friend during the lesson.
- **argue about / over (v)** يجادل - يتنازع (علي / بشأن)  
- These two girls **argue over** everything.
- **argue (for / against) (v)** يترافع - يحاجج (مع / ضد)  
- My mother **argued for** ايدت keeping our old car.  
- My mother **argued against** عارضت selling our old car.
- **argue + شخص + into + (inf. + ing)** يقنع ... أن يقوم بـ ...  
- I **argued** my mother **into** selling our old car.
- **arguable = debatable (adj)** مشكوك فيه - قابل للجدل والمناقشة  
- His skills as a teacher are **arguable**.
- **argumentative (adj)** مُحب للجدل  
- My daughter is **argumentative**. She is never persuaded easily.
- **argument (with / over / about) (n)** خلاف - نزاع (مع / بشأن)  
- He felt sorry after his **argument with** his wife.
- **argument (for / against) (n)** حجة - دليل - مرافعة (مع / ضد)  
- He made a good **argument against** child labour عمل.

### لاحظ التعبيرات التالية:

- for the sake of argument لمجرد النقاش - فلنفترض جدلاً
- do something without argument يفعل ... دون نقاش
- argument in favour of حجج في صالح
- bitter / furious / fierce / violent argument نقاش حاد

## connection

- **connect (to / with) (v)** يربط - يُوصل  
- The new road **connects** our village **to** the nearest town.
- **connect (with) (v)** يرتبط - يكون علي علاقة بـ  
- He finds it easy to **connect with** other people.
- **connected (to / with / by) (adj)** متصل بـ / مرتبط - علي علاقة بـ  
- Our school is **connected to** the internet.
- **connection (to / with / between) = link (n)** اتصال - ارتباط - علاقة  
- I can't understand **the connection between** these two people.

### لاحظ المتلازمات اللفظية التالية:

- have a connection to / with علي علاقة بـ - متصل بـ
- see a connection between ... and ... يربط بين ... و ...
- make a connection يُوجد علاقة - يربط بين
- stop a connection ينهي العلاقة - يفصل



## expansion

- **expand (v)** يتزايد - يتوسّع - يتمدد  $\neq$  **contract** ينكمش / يتقلص - يقلّ

- Metals expand when they are heated.

- **expand (v)**

- Our company has expanded its business by adding new products.

- **expandable (adj)**

- This tablet has an expandable memory.

- **expansion (of / in) = growth (n)**

- The expansion in student numbers makes it necessary to build new schools.

لاحظ التعبيرات التالية:

- a big / huge / great / massive expansion
- a major / significant expansion
- urban expansion
- expansion plan / programme

توسّع هائل

زيادة ملحوظة

التوسّع في المدن

برنامج / خطة التوسّع أو الزيادة

## facilities

- **facilities (n)**

- Sharm has a lot of tourist facilities.

تسهيلات - مرافق - امكانيات (دائماً جمع)

- **facility (n)**

- The club has a large facility for indoor sports.

منشأة / مركز (لغرض معيّن)

- **facility (n)**

- Rokaya has a clear facility for drawing.

موهبة / ملكة

- **facilitate(d) (v)**

- The internet has facilitated getting information.

يُيسّر - يُسهّل

- **facilitation (n)**

- The facilitation of getting information was one of the advantages of the internet.

التيسير - التسهيل

- **facilitator (n)**

- A teacher sometimes acts as a facilitator.

ميسّر

## public

- **publicise(d) / publicize(d) (v)**

- The government publicised the new employment law.

ينشر - يشيع - يروج لـ

- **publicity (n)**

- Smoking has received bad publicity over the last years.

دُيوع - شعبية - شهرة

- **publicity (n)**

- Good publicity increases the sales.

الدعاية

- bad / negative / adverse publicity

- get / receive / gain publicity

- the glare of publicity

لاحظ التعبيرات التالية:

الدعاية أو الشهرة السلبية

ينال شهرة أو دعاية

الشهرة الشديدة - ضريبة الشهرة



• **public (adj)**

عامي - شعبي (يخص عامة الشعب)

- Social Media attract **public** attention.

• **public (adj)** خاص / شخصي **private** ≠ عام (متاح للجميع) - حكومي

لاحظ أن كلمة (**public**) بالمعنى السابق تُستخدم قبل الاسم فقط:

- It is better if we use transport which is **public**. (X)
- It is better if we use **public** transport. (✓)

• **public (adj)**

معروف - ظاهر

- The governor **public** figure.

• **the public (n)**

الجمهور - العامة - الملاء (يتبعها فعل مفرد أو جمع)

- **The public** don't / doesn't support the new law.

• **in public**

علي الملاء

- Don't talk about this plan **in public**. It is secret.

لاحظ التعبيرات التالية:

- go **public** on / with
- **public** property

يعلن عن / يكشف النقاب عن  
ملكية عامة

**respond**

• **respond (to / that) (v)**

يجيب (علي) - يرد (علي)

- Omar didn't **respond** to my last email.
- She **responded** that she didn't want to come with us.

• **respond (to / with / by) = react (v)**

يستجيب (ل) - يتجاوب (مع)

- The manager **responded** to the complaint and increased my salary.

• **respond (to) (v)**

يتحسن (نتيجة ل)

- Mum didn't **respond** to this medicine.

• **responsive (to) (adj)** غير مستجيب ل **unresponsive (to)** مستجيب ل - متجاوب مع

- The pain was **responsive** to this painkiller. مُسكّن

• **response (to) (n)**

استجابة (ل) - رد (علي)

- Her **response** to my suggestion was disappointing. مخيب للآمال
- I am waiting for your **response** to my offer.

لاحظ التعبيرات التالية:

- in response to رداً علي - استجابة ل
- get / receive a response يتلقى رد - يلقي استجابة
- a positive response رد سلبي negative response - استحسان - رد إيجابي

**transport**

• **transport (v)**

ينقل - يوصل

- This truck **transports** oxygen cylinders to hospitals.

• **transport (v)**

ينفي (يُبعد شخص إلى دولة بعيدة كنوع من العقاب)

- In our history lesson, we knew that Ahmed Oraby **was transported** to Sri Lanka.



• **Transport = transportation (n)**

النقل - التوصيل (كلمة لا تُعد بهذا المعنى)

- Public transports help protect the environment. (X)
- Public transport helps protect the environment. (✓)

لاحظ التعبيرات التالية:

- road transport النقل البري
- rail transport النقل بالسكك الحديدية
- air transport النقل الجوي
- public transport النقل العام
- private transport سيارة خاصة (ملاكي)
- a means / form / mode of transport وسيلة نقل أو مواصلات

**Advanced Exercise on Vocabulary**

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

• ☆ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. I don't know how you could ..... him into accepting the offer. He refused it at first.  
a. transport      b. publicise      c. facilitate      d. argue
2. Amira is a real artist. She has got an amazing ..... for drawing.  
a. publicity      b. facility      c. transportation      d. expansion
3. The public ..... waiting for the important match.  
a. am      b. is      c. are      d. b & c
4. A secretary is supposed to have the ability to ..... with all staff members.  
a. practise      b. pronounce      c. connect      d. salute
5. My cold ..... well to this antibiotic.  
a. damaged      b. spread      c. responded      d. sneezed

**Advanced Exercise on Language**

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

• ☆ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. By 2030, he ..... a house in Cairo. He has got a promise that his father will do so.  
a. will have bought      b. will have been bought  
c. will be bought      d. will be buying
2. I am sure that tomorrow you ..... all about these rules. You will break them again.  
a. will be forgotten      b. won't forget  
c. won't have forgotten      d. will have forgotten
3. Before you leave home, your belongings .....  
a. will have been collected      b. will have collected  
c. will collect      d. will be collecting
4. Next year, he ..... a farmer for 20 years.  
a. will have been      b. will be      c. is going to be      d. is being
5. By the time I'm a father, students ..... much better schools.  
a. will attend      b. will have attended  
c. will be attended      d. will have been attended



# Test on Unit 8

● Understand

● Apply

● Create

تدوين

التقييمات  
الشهرية في  
نهاية الكتاب



اختبار إلكتروني

## 1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. There are plans for an ..... of the Cairo underground network in Cairo. (الدلنجات ٢٠٢٣)  
a. expansion      b. export      c. injection      d. infection
2. The hotel has special ..... for disabled people. (ميت سلسيل ٢٠٢٣)  
a. facilities      b. faculties      c. colours      d. music
3. Using ..... transport reduces pollution but it is slow and crowded. (دار السلام ٢٠٢٣)  
a. special      b. private      c. public      d. republic
4. Egypt is building a modern ..... of roads and flyovers.  
a. alternative      b. argument      c. authority      d. network
5. The ..... runs in tunnel under cities.  
a. facility      b. Underground      c. construction      d. schedule
6. Oil will dry up in the future, so all the world countries look for suitable..... (ادفو ٢٠٢٣)  
a. alternatives      b. petrol      c. alteration      d. allocation
7. Ali ..... sixteen next week. (ساحل سليم ٢٠٢٣)  
a. is      b. is going to be      c. will be      d. will have been
8. They ..... one million fruit trees in Egypt by the end of next year. (الدلنجات ٢٠٢٣)  
a. have planted      b. plants  
c. will have planted      d. planted
9. By 2050, English language will ..... by millions of people. (ادفو ٢٠٢٣)  
a. have been speaking      b. have spoken  
c. be spoken      d. speak
10. Our guests are expected to ..... by 4 o'clock this afternoon. (الفتح ٢٠٢٣)  
a. be arrived      b. will arrive  
c. have been arrived      d. have arrived
11. In five years' time, we ..... from university. (العاشر من رمضان ٢٠٢٣)  
a. will graduate      b. will be graduating  
c. had graduated      d. will have graduated
12. By the time we ....., the kids will have gone to bed. (بيا ٢٠٢٣)  
a. arrive      b. will arrive  
c. will be arriving      d. will have arrived
13. How much ..... done on your project in two months' time? (غرب الزقازيق ٢٠٢٣)  
a. you will have      b. will you have been  
c. will you have      d. you will have been
14. By 2030, the types of transport ..... will have changed in Egypt. (غرب الزقازيق ٢٠٢٣)  
a. will be available      b. are available  
c. available      d. are being available



15. I ..... my uncle next week. I've arranged it.

- a. visiting      b. will visit      c. am visiting      d. visit

(الميلاد ٢٠٢٣)

2. Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

(ملوف ٢٠٢٣)

The inventors of the first aircraft were not scientists. They did not even finish high school. They were just ordinary brothers with a big dream- a dream of flying.

Wilbur and Orville Wright grew up in Indiana in a large family. Their father, Milton Wright, was a religious man. Neither child finished high school. Instead of sitting in class and reading, they wanted to work and make things. When they were 18 and 22, they started up their own printing press and bicycle shop.

One day Wilbur read an interesting story in the newspaper about a man trying to fly in a glider. The man died, but the story gave Wilbur an idea. He decided to teach himself about flying in order to make the perfect glider. Together, Orville and Wilbur successfully tested their new glider on the beach. Then they decided to make it into a flying machine. They put an engine and propeller on the glider and called their new machine the «Wright Flyer». It broke down in its first test, but the young men didn't give up.

With a little more hard work, the Wright Flyer made a successful flight. On December 1903 ,17, the Wright brothers made history by flying the Wright Flyer over the beach at Kitty Hawk, North Carolina. It was then that the first airplane was born.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. The brothers learn about planes through .....  
a. learning at school      b. their father's teaching  
c. working in a glider shop      d. self-learning
2. The invention of the first airplane was in .....  
a. India, in the 21<sup>st</sup> century  
b. North Carolina, in the early 20<sup>th</sup> century  
c. Germany in the last decade      d. America in the last century
3. If the Wilbur brothers hadn't invented the first airplane, .....  
a. people wouldn't have flown anywhere  
b. America would have been more developed  
c. flying would have been possible  
d. the world would have been one village
4. The Wright brothers succeeded in building the first plane because they .....  
a. quickly gave up      b. were good students  
c. never gave up      d. spent a lot of money
5. The central idea of the passage is .....  
a. Two Brothers' Dream      b. Gliders vs. Planes  
c. The First Glider      d. American Invention



6. The Wright Flyer was different from a glider as it ..... .  
a. failed its first test                      b. could fly for longer hours  
c. had an engine and propeller          d. had a printing press
7. The moral lesson of this story is that ..... .  
a. Dreams can make you rich              b. If you don't succeed, keep trying  
c. The airplane is important  
d. Flying is too difficult for ordinary people
8. The underlined pronoun "it" refers to the ..... .  
a. glider                      b. airplane                      c. bicycle shop    d. beach

We all know that scientific progress can lead to a better life if it is used for the sake of humanity, and it can lead to destruction if we misuse it. (المعنى ٢٠-٢٣)

b. نعرف جميعاً أن التقدم العلمي ربما يؤدي لحياة أفضل لو تم استخدامه لمصلحة البشرية، ومن الممكن أن يؤدي للدمار لو تم استخدامه بشكل سيء.

d. جميعنا يعرف أن التقدم العلمي قد لا يؤدي لحياة أفضل لو تم استخدامه لمصلحة البشرية، ومن الممكن أن يؤدي للدمار لو تم استخدامه بشكل سيء.

مهما كان طموحك للمستقبل، عليك أن تعمل بجد وصبر لكي تتمكن من تحقيقه، وعليك أن تتذكر دوماً أن التخطيط الجيد والعزيمة هما مفاتيح النجاح.

b. However your ambition for the future is, you have to work hardly and patiently to be able to achieve it. You should always remember that good planning and determination are the key to success.

d. Whatever your ambition for the future is, you have to work hardly and patiently to be able to score it. You should always remember that good planning and deterioration are the keys to success.

1. If you were Edgar, would you reveal your true identity to your father, Gloucester, to comfort him ? Why/Why not ?

3. What do you think of Albany?

### How would life be like without modern means of transport ?



## Mini-Test on Unit 8 for Al-Azhar Students

إختبار مصغر لطلاب الأزهر الشريف

### 1. Finish the following dialogue :

A guest is talking to a receptionist at a hotel.

**Guest** : Good morning, are there any messages for me ?

**Receptionist** : No, sir. I hope you're pleased with your room.

**Guest** : Actually no. I wanted (1) .....

**Receptionist** : But the garden view is lovely, too.

**Guest** : Couldn't you (2) .....

**Receptionist** : One will be free this afternoon. It overlooks the sea but (3) .....

**Guest** : I don't mind paying more money. (4) .....

**Receptionist** : \$ 20 more, sir.

**Guest** : Great. Book me this room when it is free.

**Receptionist** : Okay, sir. I'll do that.

### 2. Write an e-mail of (60) words to your friend, Ali telling him about electric cars.

Your name is Tarek and your email address is tarek@gmail.com.

Your friend's email address is ali@gmail.com.

.....

.....

.....

### 3. A. Translate into Arabic :

Scientists think that we could use electricity in all our cars in the future.

.....

.....

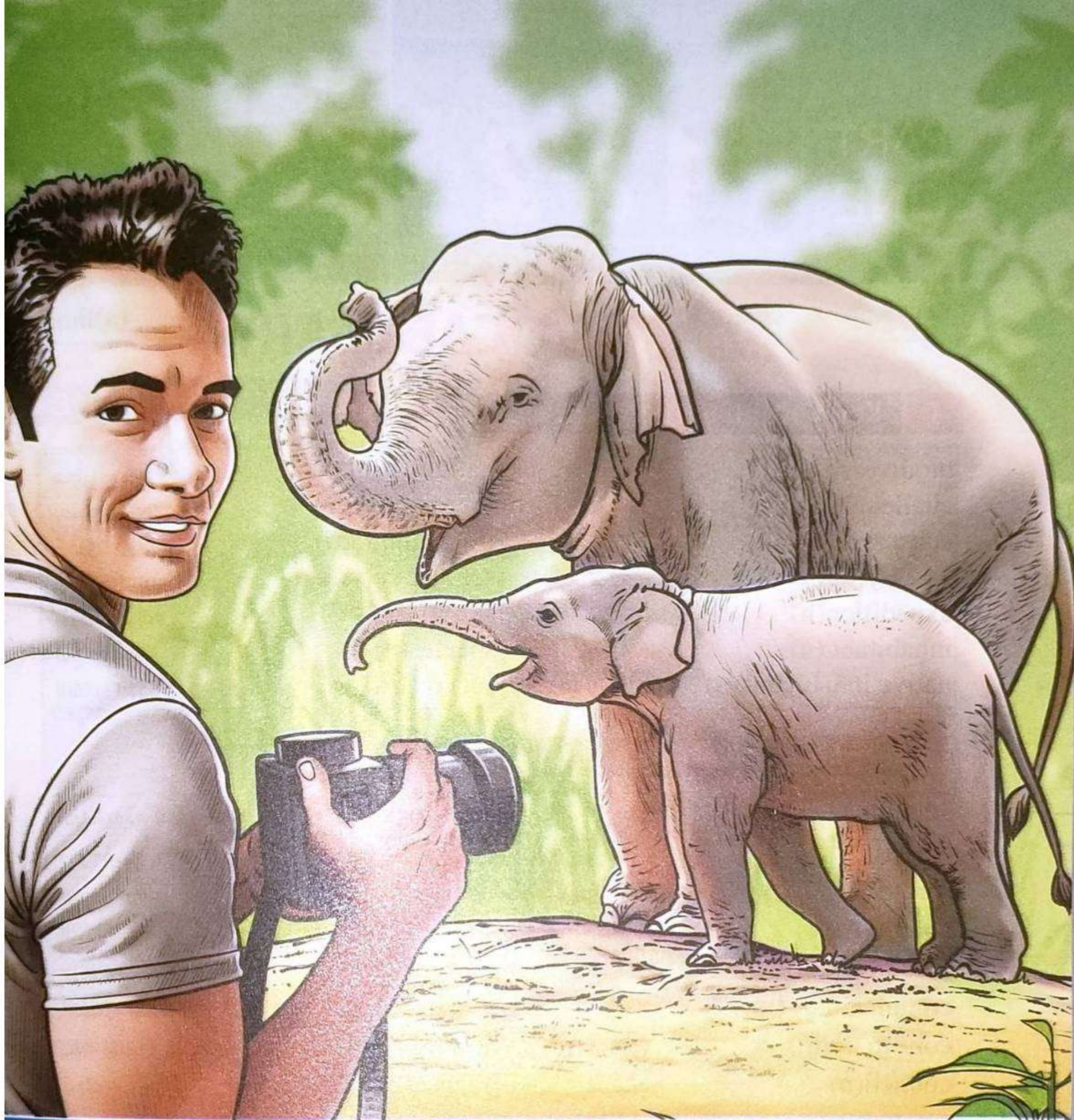
### B. Translate into English :

يجب أن ننسى خلافاتنا ونزاعاتنا ونتحد من أجل مصر.

.....

.....





## UNIT

# 9

## Conservation

SB pages 26 : 35

WB pages 14 : 19

### Objectives :

#### 🕒 Reading :

An online advertisement for volunteer conservation trips

#### ✍️ Writing :

An email on the best solution to a local problem;  
An opinion essay about the benefits of volunteering

#### 👂 Listening :

A news report about the protection of the environment

#### 🗣️ Speaking :

Discussing the benefits of volunteering;  
Discussing problems and choosing the best solution

#### 🗣️ Language :

Comparative phrases; Used to / didn't use to

#### 🧠 Life skills :

Problem-solving; Negotiation and decision-making;  
Collaboration





## PART I VOCABULARY

### 1 Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

|                       |                    |                 |                 |
|-----------------------|--------------------|-----------------|-----------------|
| biodiversity(n)       | التنوع البيولوجي   | native(adj)     | محلي            |
| challenging(adj)      | تنطوي على تحدي     | preserve(d) (v) | يصون - يحمي     |
| conservation(n)       | حماية البيئة - حفظ | rewarding(adj)  | مُجزي           |
| exactly(adv)          | تماماً - بالضبط    | scholarship(n)  | منحة دراسية     |
| expedition(n)         | بعثة استكشافية     | slightly(adv)   | بدرجة طفيفة     |
| inhabitant (n)        | أحد سُكَّان - قاطن | species(n)      | نوع - أنواع     |
| native inhabitants(n) | السكان المحليين    | survival(n)     | البقاء - النجاة |

### 2 Important Vocabulary المفردات الهامة

|                   |                         |                      |                     |
|-------------------|-------------------------|----------------------|---------------------|
| advert(n)         | إعلان                   | livestock(n)         | الماشية             |
| bay(n)            | خليج                    | male(n - adj.)       | ذكر - مُذكر         |
| caring (adj)      | مُهتم / مُراعي          | monitor(ed) (v)      | يرصد - يراقب        |
| colony(n)         | مستعمرة                 | original(adj)        | أصلي - أساسي        |
| colourful(adj)    | زاهي الألوان            | partly(adj)          | جزئياً              |
| complain(ed) (v)  | يشكو                    | progress(ed) (n - v) | التَّقدُّم - يتقدم  |
| coral(n - adj.)   | المرجان - مرجاني        | rainforest(n)        | غابة مطيرة          |
| council(n)        | مجلس - قنصلية           | realise(d) (v)       | يُدرك               |
| creature(n)       | مخلوق - كائن            | recognise(d) (v)     | يتعرف علي           |
| crop(n)           | محصول                   | recycling(n)         | تدوير - إعادة تصنيع |
| digital(adj)      | رقمي                    | reef(n)              | خُبد - شُعب مرجاني  |
| diver(n)          | غواص                    | rides(n)             | جولات               |
| economy(n)        | الاقتصاد                | sports field(n)      | ملعب رياضي          |
| endangered(adj)   | مُعرَّض للخطر - مُهدَّد | starfish(n)          | نجم البحر           |
| ensure(d) (v)     | يضمن / يتأكد            | state(n)             | حالة - ولاية - دولة |
| exotic(adj.)      | أجنبي - غريب - مثير     | support(ed) (v - n)  | يدعم - دعم          |
| face(d) (v)       | يواجه                   | task(n)              | مهمة                |
| female (n - adj.) | أنثى - مؤنث             | threat(n)            | تهديد               |
| fight - fought(v) | يقاتل - يتقاتل          | tusk(n)              | سِنُّ الفيل         |
| forest(n)         | الغابة                  | typical(adj)         | أصلي - نموذجي       |



|               |                  |                  |                      |
|---------------|------------------|------------------|----------------------|
| generation(n) | جيل              | unique(adj)      | فريد - متميز         |
| industry(n)   | صناعة - نشاط     | variety(n)       | التنوع - التعددية    |
| involved(adj) | مشارك - مشغول    | waste(d) (n - v) | نفايات - يبدد / يهدر |
| keep - kept   | يحافظ على - يوفر | well-known(adj)  | مشهور                |
| limit(n)      | حد               | wildlife(n)      | الحياة البرية        |

### 3 Definitions تعريفات

| Memorise                                   | Understand  |
|--|---|
| biodiversity(n)<br>التنوع البيولوجي        | the variety of plants and animals in a particular محدد place  |
| challenging(adj)<br>تنطوي علي تحدي         | interesting but difficult to do   |
| expedition(n)<br>بعثة استكشافية            | - a long and carefully organized journey to an unfamiliar place<br>- the people that make a long, difficult journey to study or know about wildlife       |
| native inhabitants(n)<br>السكان المحليين   | the people who first lived in the country   |
| preserve(d) (v)<br>يصون - يحمي - يحفظ طعام | - to save something or someone from being harmed or destroyed<br>- to store food for a long time after treating معالجة it so that it will not decay يتحلل |
| scholarship(n)<br>منحة دراسية              | an amount of money that is given to someone by an educational organization to help pay for their education  |
| species(n)<br>نوع - أنواع                  | a group of animals or plants whose members are similar and can breed يتزاوج together to produce young animals or plants                                   |

### Exercise On Vocabulary

#### • Understand

- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

#### 1 Key vocabulary

- If we want to keep natural balance in forests, we need to protect ..... there.

(حلوان ٢٠٢٣)

a. conservation    b. biodiversity    c. challenges    d. preservation



2. I think it's a ..... to cross that wide canal swimming. (الواسطي ٢٠٢٣)  
 a. challenging    b. challenges    c. challenge    d. challenged
3. Energy ..... reduces your fuel bills and helps the environment. (المحفودية ٢٠٢٣)  
 a. conversation    b. conservation    c. construction    d. consumption
4. Aya's answers are ..... the same as Mona's. (ميت سلسيل ٢٠٢٣)  
 a. exactly    b. far    c. very    d. a lot
5. The men made..... to Spain, Greece and Asia to find fossils. (بورسعيد ٢٠٢٣)  
 a. duties    b. picnics    c. tasks    d. expeditions
6. Hong Kong's native ..... originally came from China. (شمال بورسعيد ٢٠٢٣)  
 a. pioneers    b. inhabitants    c. players    d. discoverers
7. When a job makes you happy and satisfied, we say it is a ..... job. (جرجا ٢٠٢٣)  
 a. suitable    b. specific    c. challenging    d. rewarding
8. I have good news! My sister has won a ..... to California University. (سوهاج ٢٠٢٣)  
 a. scholarship    b. leadership    c. hardship    d. starship
9. English is ..... easier than German. (البحيرة ٢٠٢٣)  
 a. slightly    b. more    c. many    d. few
10. This ..... of bird now exists only in Africa. (غرب الزقازيق ٢٠٢٣)  
 a. special    b. species    c. spice    d. spices
11. Living things need food, water and sometimes oxygen for .....  
 a. species    b. conservation    c. biodiversity    d. survival
12. Forests must be ..... as they are the main source of the oxygen we breathe.  
 a. preserved    b. resulted    c. challenged    d. cared
13. As an astronaut, my first mission مهمة in space was really a ..... one. It was difficult but interesting.  
 a. suitable    b. specific    c. challenging    d. rewarding
14. I am Egyptian. I am a ..... Arabic speaker.  
 a. native    b. foreigner    c. second    d. a & b

## 2

## Important vocabulary

15. I don't like this remake; I prefer the ..... film. (دمياط ٢٠٢٣)  
 a. origin    b. fake    c. false    d. original



16. My parents always ..... that I waste much time chatting with my friends online. (ربلا ٢٠٢٣)

- a. complain      b. explain      c. greet      d. salute

17. There is always a ..... gap between parents and their children.

- a. birth      b. genre      c. livestock      d. generation (أبو المطامير ٢٠٢٣)

18. After 20 years, it wasn't easy to ..... our old friend when we last met. (العاشر من رمضان ٢٠٢٣)

- a. meet      b. see      c. recognise      d. remind

19. Mohamed Salah is ..... for his voluntary work.

- a. satisfied      b. well-known      c. dissatisfied      d. mysterious (امتحان الكتروني ٢٠٢٢ - الفترة المسائية)

20. The bright sunshine is ..... of Aswan's weather in winter.

- a. typical      b. exotic      c. original      d. male

21. The local ..... has decided to renew the asphalt of the streets.

- a. barrier      b. council      c. economy      d. livestock

22. I ..... what happens in the shop through cameras.

- a. develop      b. pay      c. benefit      d. monitor

23. Tourists come from all over the world to see our ..... monuments. آثار

- a. suitable      b. valueless      c. unique      d. a & c

24. A ..... is a part of the sea that is partly enclosed by a curve in the land.

- a. progress      b. state      c. bay      d. colony

25. I like those ..... birds you see near the river in summer.

- a. exotic      b. typed      c. coral      d. male

26. If a type of animals is ....., this means it may die out ينقرض soon.

- a. dangerous      b. endangered      c. strong      d. strange

27. The rabbit is a nice .....

- a. generation      b. variety      c. creature      d. opportunity

28. Parents work hard to ..... that their children get enough care.

- a. inspire      b. ensure      c. reward      d. face

29. Tunisia was a French .....

- a. progress      b. state      c. bay      d. colony

30. Wars affect the world's ..... badly. Businesses make great losses.

- a. barrier      b. council      c. economy      d. livestock

31. .... plastic and glass is possible.

- a. Recycling      b. Rewarding      c. Arising      d. Threatening



32. The development of education will help the young .....  
 a. generations      b. variety      c. creatures      d. opportunities
33. Pollution is a real ..... to mankind البشرية.  
 a. recycling      b. male      c. female      d. threat
34. He is a member of the team ..... in supporting the charity.  
 a. involved      b. caring      c. psychological      d. coral
35. My students have made reasonable ..... recently.  
 a. progress      b. colony      c. bay      d. state
36. Keeping ..... is an important source of income to farmers.  
 a. barrier      b. council      c. economy      d. livestock
37. This restaurant offers a/an ..... of sea dishes.  
 a. generation      b. variety      c. creature      d. opportunity

### 3 Definitions

38. .... inhabitants are the people who first lived in a country. (الشبيد ٢٠٢٣)  
 a. Native      b. International      c. Foreign      d. Aliens
39. .... is the variety of plants and animals in a particular place.  
 (شرق مدينة نصر ٢٠٢٣)  
 a. Inhabitants      b. Biodiversity      c. Expedition      d. Scholarship
40. To ..... is to save something or someone from being harmed or destroyed.  
 a. run      b. endanger      c. ensure      d. preserve
41. A/An ..... is an amount of money that is given to someone by an educational organization to help pay for their education.  
 a. species      b. scholarship      c. biodiversity      d. expedition
42. A/An ..... is a group of animals or plants whose members are similar and can breed together to produce young animals or plants.  
 a. species      b. scholarship      c. biodiversity      d. expedition

## PART II

## VOCABULARY STUDY

### 1

### Verbal Collocations متلازمات لفظية

|       |            |                 |      |            |                |
|-------|------------|-----------------|------|------------|----------------|
| face  | a problem  | يواجه مشكلة     | have | a bath     | يستحم          |
| fight | pollution  | يكافح التلوث    | make | a decision | يتخذ قرار      |
| keep  | clean      | يبقى ... نظيفاً | stay | space for  | يفسح المجال لـ |
|       | facilities | يوفر تسهيلات    |      | calm       | يبقى هادئاً    |



## 2 Synonyms مترادفات

| Word        |              | Synonym (=Meaning)               |
|-------------|--------------|----------------------------------|
| native(adj) | محليّ - أصلي | original                         |
| native(n)   | مواطن        | citizen                          |
| preserve    | يصون - يحمي  | conserve, protect                |
| rewarding   | مُجزي        | satisfying, pleasing, worthwhile |

## 3 Antonyms المتضادات

| Word        |                 | Antonym (= Opposite) |               |
|-------------|-----------------|----------------------|---------------|
| challenging | تنطوي على تحديّ | easy, uninspiring    | سهل           |
| male        | ذكر             | female               | أنثي          |
| native(adj) | محليّ - أصلي    | immigrant            | مهاجر         |
| native(n)   | مواطن           | foreigner, outsider  | أجنبيّ / وافد |
| rewarding   | مُجزي           | unrewarding          | غير مُجزي     |

## 4 Derivatives of key vocabulary مشتقات المفردات الرئيسية

| challenge           |                    |  |
|---------------------|--------------------|--|
| challenge (v)       | يتحدى              | - He accepted to challenge me to a tennis game.        |
| challenge (n)       | تحديّ              | - He accepted my challenge to a tennis game.           |
| challenging (adj)   | تنطوي على تحديّ    | - I enjoy challenging tasks.                           |
| conservation        |                    |  |
| conserve (v)        | يصون - يحافظ علي   | - It is our duty واجب to conserve the environment.     |
| conservation (n)    | حماية البيئة - حفظ | - The conservation of the environment is our duty.     |
| conservationist (n) | مُحافظ علي البيئة  | - Conservationists try to protect the environment.     |
| conservative (adj)  | مُحافظ             | - Mr Mohammed is a conservative person.                |
| inhabitant          |                    |  |
| inhabit (v)         | يسكن - يقطن        | - The pharaohs inhabited Egypt thousands of years ago. |
| inhabitant (n)      | ساكن / قاطن        | - The inhabitants of this island speak Spanish.        |
| inhabited (adj)     | مسكون / مأهول      | - This island is inhabited, not deserted مهجور.        |



## preserve

|                  |               |  |
|------------------|---------------|--|
| preserve (v)     | يصون - يحمي   | - Salt is used to preserve some foods.             |
| preservative (n) | مادة حافظة    | - Salt is a preservative for some foods.           |
| preservation (n) | حماية / صيانة | - Salt is used for the preservation of some foods. |
| preserved (adj)  | محفوظ         | - Some preserved foods are harmful.                |

## 5 Expressions &amp; Idioms تعبيرات و مصطلحات

|                 |                      |                     |                         |
|-----------------|----------------------|---------------------|-------------------------|
| coloured coral  | المرجان الملون       | ready for           | مستعد لـ                |
| coral reefs     | الشعاب المرجانية     | Red Sea Coast       | ساحل البحر الأحمر       |
| go on a trip    | يذهب في رحلة         | tourist industry    | التنشاط السياحي         |
| in digital form | بصيغة رقمية          | unique biodiversity | التنوع البيولوجي الفريد |
| interested in   | مهتم بـ              | well-known for      | مشهور بـ                |
| involved in     | مُنشغل بـ - متورط في | what is more,       | بالإضافة لذلك           |
| land animals    | الحيوانات البرية     | work on a farm      | العمل في مزرعة          |
| original state  | الحالة الأصلية       |                     |                         |

## 6 Verb + Preposition فعل + حرف جر

|            |                      |                                   |              |
|------------|----------------------|-----------------------------------|--------------|
| apply for  | يتقدم بطلب لـ        | love + (to + inf.) / (inf. + ing) | يحب أن       |
| care for   | يرعى - يهتم بـ       | play with                         | يلعب بـ / مع |
| fight for  | يكافح / يقاتل من أجل | stop ... from                     | يمنع ... من  |
| look after | يرعى - يعتني بـ      |                                   |              |

## 7 Clear the confusion لاحظ الفرق

## well-known + as / for / to

- **well-known as** + (وظيفة / مهنة / ميزة مشهور بها) مشهور كـ / معروف كـ
  - Mohammed Salah is well-known as a footballer.
  - Egypt is well-known as a peace-loving country.
- **well-known for** + اسم يدل على سبب الشهرة مشهور بـ
  - Mohammed Salah is well-known for his skills.
  - Aswan is well-known for its warm weather in winter.
- **well-known to** + شخص / اشخاص مشهور لدي
  - Mohammed Salah is well-known to football fans all over the world.
  - Aswan is well-known to tourists.



### dangerous - endangered

- **dangerous**

خطير

- COVID- 19 is a dangerous disease.
- He was in a dangerous situation.

- **danger (n)**

الخطر

- Keep children away from danger.

- **endanger(ed) (v)**

يُعرّض للخطر

- Don't endanger children.

- **endangered (adj)**

مُعرّض للخطر - في موقف خطير

- Lions are endangered. They might die out soon.
- The people who live in this old house are endangered.

- **endangerment (n)**

التعرض للخطر

- He was arrested for child endangerment.

### schooling - scholarship

- **schooling**

التعليم المدرسي

- My mother had only three years of schooling.

- **scholarship**

منحة دراسية

- Sama won a scholarship to the German University.

### diversity - biodiversity

- **diversity = variety**

التعددية / التنوع

- Modern societies have to respect cultural diversity.

- **biodiversity**

التنوع النباتي والحيواني (التنوع البيولوجي)

- We must protect the biodiversity of the forests.

لاحظ أن البادئة (bio) تعني (متعلق بالكائنات الحية - عضوي)

- **bio-** = relating to or using living things

- biology علم الأحياء      - biochemistry الكيمياء العضوية

### Exercise On Vocabulary study

- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. Salt is used as a ..... for some foods.

(أجا ٢٠٢٣)

- a. preserved      b. preservative      c. preserve      d. preservation

2. We must care ..... the unique and beautiful creatures.

(دار السلام ٢٠٢٣)

- a. of      b. off      c. for      d. at

3. You need to make .....

- a. calm      b. clean      c. a decision      d. problems



4. "It is our duty to preserve our environment." In this sentence, 'preserve' can be replaced by .....  
 a. conserve      b. protect      c. affect      d. a & b
5. Something that is 'rewarding' is .....  
 a. unrewarding      b. native      c. satisfying      d. uninspiring
6. "He is not a native of Egypt." He is a .....  
 a. strong      b. foreigner      c. patriot      d. citizen
7. I love ..... my daughter Rody, not Rodayna.  
 a. calling      b. to be called      c. to call      d. a & c
8. The best solution is to ..... this problem.  
 a. face      b. cause      c. have      d. stay
9. All world countries have to unite to ..... pollution.  
 a. fight      b. go      c. provide      d. give
10. The Pharaohs ..... Egypt and had a great civilization thousands of years ago.  
 a. inhabited      b. inhabitants      c. preserved      d. preservation
11. He loves nature and he is an active .....  
 a. conserve      b. conservative      c. conservationist      d. conservation
12. Ahmed Zaki is well-known ..... his great films.  
 a. as      b. for      c. to      d. about
13. Ahmed Zaki is well-known ..... a great actor.  
 a. as      b. for      c. to      d. about
14. Ahmed Zaki is well-known ..... most Egyptian people.  
 a. as      b. for      c. to      d. about

## PART III

## READING &amp; LISTENING

## 1 Reading Texts

## Book your conservation volunteer trip today!

(SB page 27)

Are you interested in conservation<sup>(1)</sup>? Are you ready for a new challenge<sup>(2)</sup>?

If your answer to both of these questions is 'yes', we have some excellent volunteer<sup>(3)</sup> programmes for you.



(1) حماية البيئة

(2) تحدي

(3) تطوعي



## A – New Zealand

Come to New Zealand and help us **preserve**<sup>(4)</sup> the country's **unique**<sup>(5)</sup> **biodiversity**<sup>(6)</sup>. You'll **plant**<sup>(7)</sup> trees so that **endangered**<sup>(8)</sup> birds have a far better environment to live in. You'll also help us to **monitor**<sup>(9)</sup> changes in a **variety**<sup>(10)</sup> of plant **species**<sup>(11)</sup> in different areas. Another **slightly**<sup>(12)</sup> more **challenging**<sup>(13)</sup> **task**<sup>(14)</sup> is cleaning beaches and helping to **run**<sup>(15)</sup> **recycling**<sup>(16)</sup> centres where **local**<sup>(17)</sup> people can bring their **waste**<sup>(18)</sup>.

Twenty-one days / Prices with flights from \$3,799

## B – Thailand

Here in Thailand, we're **involved**<sup>(19)</sup> in **caring**<sup>(20)</sup> for elephants that used to take tourists on **rides**<sup>(21)</sup> around big cities. You'll monitor these elephants' **progress**<sup>(22)</sup> as they start their new lives in the **forest**<sup>(23)</sup> to make sure that they're healthy and happy. These unique and beautiful **creatures**<sup>(24)</sup> love to play with our **volunteers**<sup>(25)</sup> almost as much as they love having a bath in the river with them!

Fourteen days / Prices with flights from \$2,599

## C – Brazil

Brazil is **well-known**<sup>(26)</sup> for its amazing biodiversity. However, the native **inhabitants**<sup>(27)</sup> of the Amazon **face**<sup>(28)</sup> exactly the same **threat**<sup>(29)</sup> as the rainforests – they are also **fighting**<sup>(30)</sup> for their **survival**<sup>(31)</sup>.

You can help the native inhabitants to preserve their languages in **digital**<sup>(32)</sup> form for future **generations**<sup>(33)</sup>.

What is more, you can apply for a **scholarship**<sup>(34)</sup> for the **costs**<sup>(35)</sup> of this **rewarding**<sup>(36)</sup> trip.

Sixteen days / Prices with flights from \$2,599

(4) يحمي - يصون

(5) فريد

(6) التنوع البيولوجي

(7) يزرع

(8) مُعرّض للخطر

(9) يرصد - يراقب

(10) تنوع

(11) نوع - أنواع

(12) بدرجة طفيفة

(13) تنطوي على تحدي

(14) مهمة

(15) يدير

(16) تدوير - إعادة تصنيع

(17) محلي

(18) نفايات

(19) مشغول بـ

(20) رعاية

(21) جولات

(22) تقدّم

(23) الغابة

(24) مخلوقات

(25) متطوعين

(26) مشهور

(27) سُكّان

(28) يواجه

(29) تهديد

(30) يكافح

(31) البقاء

(32) رقمي

(33) أجيال

(34) منحة دراسية

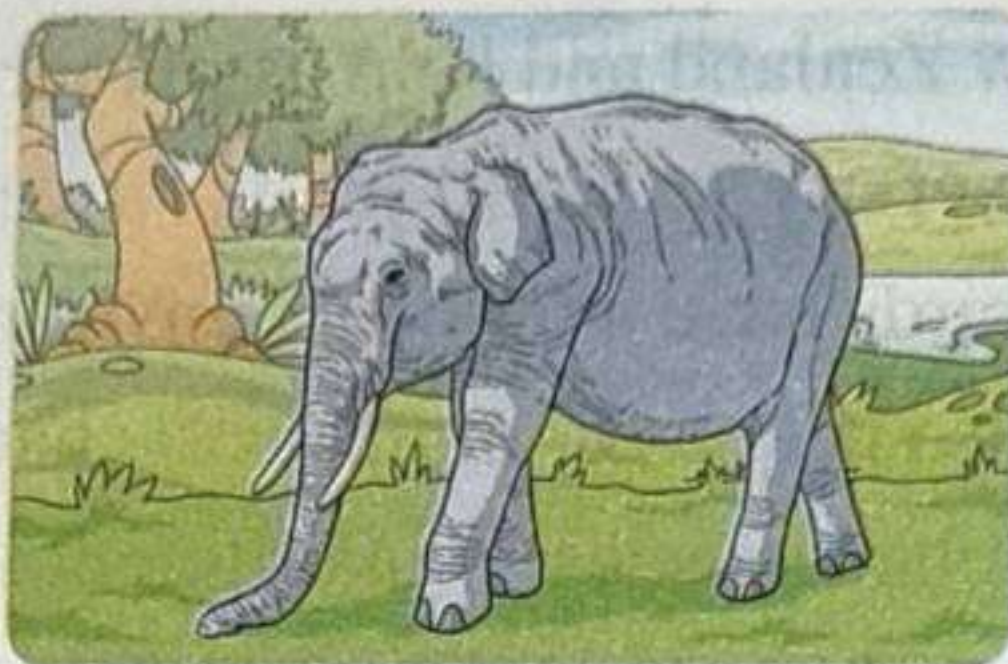
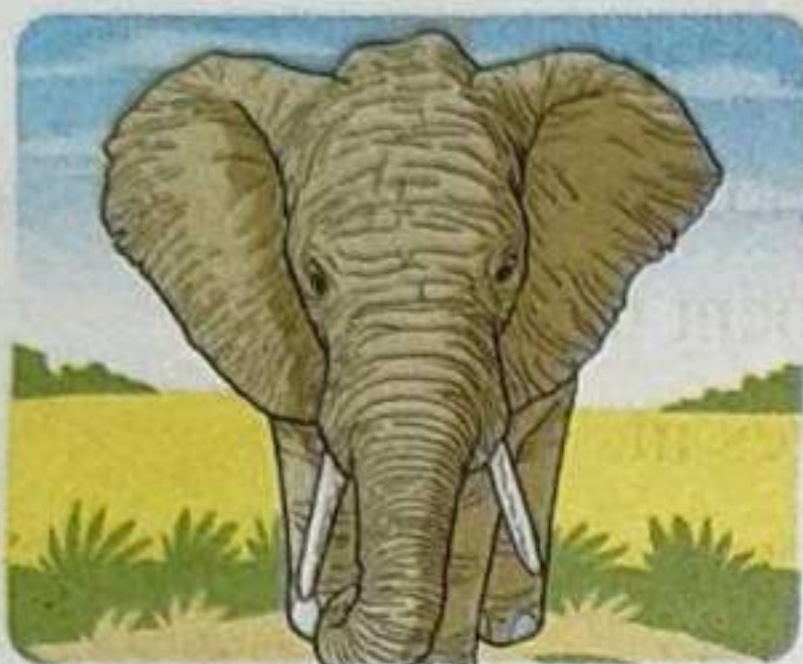
(35) تكاليف

(36) مُجزّ



## Asian and African elephants

(WB page 14)



- (1) تماماً - بالضبط  
(2) بعضهم البعض  
(3) ذكر  
(4) ناب الفيل  
(5) أنثى

Did you know that elephants live in both Africa and Asia? When you first see elephants from these two places, you might think that they are **exactly**<sup>(1)</sup> the same as **each other**<sup>(2)</sup>, but they are not. African elephants are slightly larger than Asian elephants, while African elephant's ears are usually far bigger than Asian elephant's. Only **male**<sup>(3)</sup> Asian elephants have **tusks**<sup>(4)</sup> (those big teeth!). However, **female**<sup>(5)</sup> African elephants have tusks, too, and they are almost as big as the male elephants'.

## 2 Listening Texts

(SB page 28)



Naama Bay near  
Sharm el-Sheikh, 1983



Naama Bay today

- (1) ساحل البحر الأحمر  
(2) سياحة  
(3) البيئة المحلية  
(4) مراكز الغطس  
(5) يضع حدًا  
(6) حاجز مرجاني  
(7) المجلس المحلي  
(8) يتخذ إجراء

**Speaker** : My name's Mohamed Mansour and I'm reporting from a small town on the **Red Sea coast**<sup>(1)</sup> in Egypt. It's an area that has been popular with tourists from all the over world for a long time, but a few years ago it became clear that **tourism**<sup>(2)</sup> was causing damage to the **local environment**<sup>(3)</sup>.

The biggest problem was that too many tourists would visit **diving centres**<sup>(4)</sup> at the same time. Local companies didn't use to **put a limit**<sup>(5)</sup> on how many people could dive. During the summer, they used to take ten divers at a time to explore one **reef**<sup>(6)</sup>. That's just too many.

However, things have changed since the **local council**<sup>(7)</sup> decided to **take action**<sup>(8)</sup>. There are now rules about how many divers can be in one area at the same time.



Divers also have to pay a small amount of money which goes towards projects which help to protect the local environment.

Another problem that the local people had in the past was that hotel companies would buy the best land in the town, remove any buildings already on it and build hotels instead.

In places where there used to be **facilities**<sup>(9)</sup> for local people like **sports fields**<sup>(10)</sup>, cafés and a cinema there are now hotels. Fortunately, the council now has new rules for how much land hotel companies can buy. Local people used to complain about tourists in their town, but now they're a lot happier to see them.

This should help tourists to enjoy their visit even more and they will then return to the area more often, helping to **support**<sup>(11)</sup> the local **economy**<sup>(12)</sup> in the future.

(9) تسهيلات / مرافق

(10) ملاعب رياضية

(11) يساعد / يساعده

(12) اقتصاد

(WB page 15)

**Presenter :** Welcome to programme. Today, I'm reporting from the **Great Barrier Reef**<sup>(1)</sup> in Australia and I'm going to be talking about the problems this beautiful place is facing.

**Presenter :** The Great Barrier Reef is an area of coral which lives under the sea in an area that is 2,600 kilometres long. People love visiting the reef because there are so many **colourful**<sup>(2)</sup> fish that live here.

**Presenter :** In the past, all of the reef used to have beautifully coloured coral. Today, things are changing and much of the coral is white. Why is this ?

**Interviewee :** Well, it's **partly**<sup>(3)</sup> because the sea didn't use to be as warm as it is today. **Global warming**<sup>(4)</sup> is starting to kill the coral, which turns white when it dies. Another problem is star fish. In the past, there used to be many **species**<sup>(5)</sup> of fish that ate the star fish. But people have caught so many of these fish that they have disappeared. There is nothing to eat the star fish, so today, the star fish **actually**<sup>(6)</sup> eat the coral.

**Interviewee :** Another problem, I'm afraid, is people! The area did not use to have so many tourists visiting the Barrier Reef. Now, about two million people visit every year. Boats damage the reef and pollution is not good for the coral, either.

**Presenter :** So, life is difficult for the coral here. In next week's programme, we will be looking at what we can do about this problem.

(1) الحاجز المرجاني الكبير

(2) ملون

(3) جزئياً

(4) الاحتراس الحراري

(5) فصيلة / نوع

(6) فى الواقع





## PART IV LANGUAGE

## 1

## Comparative Expressions

## عبارات المقارنة

## Remember تذكر

تستخدم صفات المقارنة لتقارن بين طرفين في صفة مشتركة بينهما:

- ex. - Rodayna is older than Ahmed. - A car is fast, but a plane is faster.  
- Films are more exciting than plays. - Bread is less expensive than meat.

تكوين صفات المقارنة من الصفات القصيرة (التي تتكون من مقطع واحد):

1 يُضاف المقطع (-er) لنهاية الصفة:

- ex. - quiet → quieter - cheap → cheaper - narrow → narrower

2 إذا كانت الصفة القصيرة تنتهي بحرف (e) قبلها حرف ساكن يُضاف لها حرف (r) فقط:

- ex. - wide → wider - nice → nicer  
- large → larger - simple → simpler

3 إذا انتهت الصفة القصيرة بحرف متحرك واحد يليه ساكن واحد نضاعف الحرف الأخير قبل إضافة (er):

- ex. - hot → hotter - fat → fatter - thin → thinner

4 الصفات التي تنتهي بـ (y) مسبوق بحرف ساكن تتحول (y) إلى (ier):

- ex. - lucky → luckier - healthy → healthier - easy → easier

تكوين صفة المقارنة من الصفات الطويلة:

more / less + adj. أكثر / أقل

- ex. - more / less expensive than - more / less terrifying than  
- more / less exciting than - more / less dangerous than

## Comparative Phrases! عبارات المقارنة

1 No difference لا يوجد اختلاف Exactly the same as يشبه ... تماماً

وتستخدم هذه العبارة عند التعبير عن التطابق (عدم وجود اختلاف) بين طرفين:

- ex. - This car is exactly the same as my car.  
- Your bag is exactly the same as Aya's bag.

في حالة وجود مفعول فإنه يوضع بين (the same ... as) كالتالي:

- ex. - Omar is exactly the same age as Ali.  
- My father does exactly the same job as your father.

2 A small difference اختلاف بسيط almost as + صفة + as يشبه ... إلى حد كبير  
slightly + صفة مقارنة + than قليلاً عن / من ...

تستخدم (almost as ... as) أو (slightly ... than) في حالة وجود اختلاف بسيط بين طرفين:

- ex. - Mariam is almost as tall as her father.  
- My car is almost as expensive as your car.



- Our flat is slightly larger than your flat.
- This match is slightly more exciting than the last match.

### 3 A big difference      اختلاف كبير      كثيرًا من / عن ... **far +** صفة مقارنة **+ than**

تستخدم (far ... than) في حالة وجود اختلاف كبير بين طرفين:

- ex. - Mariam is far taller than her mother.  
- Playing football is far more exciting than watching it.

## Important Notes ملاحظات هامة

### ١ يأتي اسم بعد أو بين (the same ... as):

- He looks exactly the same as his brother.
- She has exactly the same green eyes as her mother.

### ٢ يأتي بين (as ... as) صفة عادية (وليست صفة مقارنة):

- Omar is as tall as his father. (Not: as taller as)
- Rokaya's story is as interesting as Leen's story.  
(Not: as more interesting as)

### ٣ يأتي بين (slightly / far ... than) صفة مقارنة (وليست صفة عادية):

- Omar is slightly taller than his sister. (Not: slightly tall than)
- Rokaya's story is far more interesting than Aya's story.  
(Not: slightly interesting than)

### ٤ يمكن استخدام (a little / a bit) بدلاً من (slightly) قبل صفات المقارنة للتعبير عن وجود اختلاف بسيط بين طرفين:

- Noha is a bit shorter than Malak.
- My mother is a little younger than my uncle.

### ٥ لا تُستخدم (very) قبل صفات المقارنة، لكن يمكن استخدام (much / a lot / even) بدلاً من (far) للتعبير عن وجود اختلاف كبير بين طرفين:

- Mr Hossam is much better than me at tennis. (Not: very better)
- My father is a lot older than my uncle. (Not: very older)

### ٦ لا تُستخدم (quite) قبل صفات المقارنة إلا في التعبير (quite better) بمعنى (تعافي من مرض إلى حد ما):

- My grandfather was very ill, but he is quite better now.
- Sama is slightly more intelligent than Hala. (Not: quite more intelligent)

### ٧ لا تُستخدم (any / no / a bit / a lot) قبل صفات المقارنة التي يتبعها اسم:

- This is a far larger flat than your flat. (Not: a lot larger flat)

### ٨ هناك أكثر من طريقة للتعبير عن تشابه أو تساوي طرفين في صفة معينة، ومن أهم هذه الطرق:

الطرف الثاني + as + الصفة + as + be + الطرف الأول

- Rodayna is as tall as Mariam.



- الطرف الثاني + **as** + الاسم من الصفة + **have + the same** + الطرف الاول
- Rodayna **has the same height as** Mariam.
- الاسم من الصفة + **have + the same** + الطرف الثاني + **and** + الطرف الاول
- Rodayna and Mariam **have the same height.**
- الاسم من الصفة + **be + of the same** + الطرف الثاني + **and** + الطرف الاول
- Rodayna and Mariam **are of the same height.**

٩ لاحظ الاسم الذي يمكن استخدامه بعد أو بين (**the same + ...+as**) من الصفات الآتية:

| الاسم Noun | الصفة Adjective | الاسم Noun | الصفة Adjective  |
|------------|-----------------|------------|------------------|
| length     | long            | size       | big / small      |
| age        | old / young     | depth      | deep             |
| strength   | strong          | price      | expensive/ cheap |
| width      | wide            | distance   | far / near       |
|            |                 | height     | high / tall      |

- This house is as **high** as yours. = This house is the same **height** as yours.
- The green blouse is as **expensive** as the red blouse.
- = The green blouse is the same **price** as the red blouse.

## 2

## Past Habits

## عادات الماضي

### Used to اعتاد أن + inf.

١ تستخدم (**used to + inf.**) بمعنى «اعتاد أن» للتعبير عن عادة كانت موجودة في الماضي ولم تعد موجودة الآن:

.... المصدر **inf.** + اعتاد ان **used to** + الفاعل **Subj.**

- ex.** - I **used to** eat a lot of sweets when I was a child.
- Omar **used to** read novels in his free time.

٢ نستخدم (**didn't use to + inf.**) في حالة النفي:

.... **inf.** + اعتاد ان **didn't use to** + الفاعل **Subj.**

- ex.** - I **didn't use to** eat a lot of sweets when I was a child.
- Omar **didn't use to** read novels in his free time.

**ex.** - He **never used to** listen carefully. كما يمكن استخدام (**never used to**) للنفي.

٢ للسؤال بـ «هل» نبدأ بـ (**Did**) ثم الفاعل ثم (**use to + inf.**):

**Did + subj.** + الفاعل + **use to + inf.** ....?

- ex.** - **Did you use to** eat a lot of sweets when you were a child?
- **Did Omar use to** read novels in his free time?



٤ للسؤال بـ «أداة استفهام» تتبع الصيغة التالية:

Q.W. **did + subj. + use to + inf. ....?** أداة استفهام

- ex. - What did you use to read when you were a child?  
- Who used to read novels in his free time?

٥ وتبني هذه الصيغة للمجهول كالتالي: **used to + be + p.p. ....** المفعول

- ex. - A lot of sweets used to be eaten by me when I was a child.  
- Novels used to be read by Omar in his free time.

### Important Notes ملاحظات هامة

١ تُعبر (**used to + inf.**) عن عادة كانت موجودة في الماضي و هذه العادة توقفت ولم تعد تحدث في الحاضر:

- My uncle **used to be** a heavy smoker. (Now he doesn't smoke.)

٢ تُعبر (**used to + inf.**) أيضاً عن أشياء كانت مختلفة في الماضي عن الحاضر:

- Tawfik **used to** work in tourism. Now he has a taxi.

٣ العادة تستمر ويتكرر حدوثها فترة طويلة ، لذلك لا يجوز استخدام تعبيرات زمنية تحصر العادة في مدي زمني قصير مثل:

yesterday / last Friday / last week / this morning .... etc.

- He **used to** go to the cinema last week. (X)  
- He **went to** the cinema last week. (✓)

٤ للتعبير عن أن شيء ما كان عادياً أو مألوفاً نستخدم:

**Subject + was / were + used to + noun / (inf.+ing) ....**

- Amira **was used to** easy life. Now she is a wife, a mother and a teacher.  
- We **were used to** working on farms.

لاحظ أن (**be used to**) يمكن أن تأتي بمعنى «يستخدم لكي» بجمل مبنية للمجهول ويليه المصدر:

- Wood **is used to** make furniture. (Note: used to making)  
- Milk **is used to** make cheese and butter.

٥ للتعبير عن التعود على عمل شيء في الماضي نستخدم:

**Subject + got / became / grew + used to + noun / (inf.+ing) ....**

- Rokaya **got used to** (living) in her new flat.

٦ لاحظ الصيغة التالية:

- **There used to be .... / There didn't use to be ....**  
- There **used to be** a cinema in our street. Now it is a big restaurant.  
- There **didn't use to be** an airport in Aswan in 1900.





## Check your understanding

١ لاحظ استخدام الصيغ التالية بدلاً من (used to + inf.) والعكس:

1 Subj. + no longer لم يعد + inf. / (inf. + s / es / ies)

- Ali used to smoke.

= Ali no longer smokes.

2 Subj. + don't / doesn't + inf. .... anymore / any longer لم يعد

- Noha used to live in Aswan.

= Noha doesn't live in Aswan anymore / any longer.

3 It was + someone's / صفة ملكية + habit عادة + to + inf. ....

- Sherry used to play computer games.

= It was Sherry's habit to play computer games.

4 Subj. + was / were + in the habit of + n / (inf. + ing) ....

- Malik used to go to school by bike.

= Malik was in the habit of going to school by bike.

5 Subj. + s.c. التصريف الثاني .... as a habit.

- Omnia used to visit her aunt once a week.

= Omnia visited her aunt once a week as a habit.

٢ لاحظ استخدام (accustomed) بدلاً من (used) في الصيغة التالية:

- Subject + got / became / grew + used to + noun / (inf. + ing) ....

= Subject + was / were / got / became + accustomed to + noun / (inf. + ing) ....

- I got used to working as a teacher.

= I got accustomed to working as a teacher.

٣ للتعبير عن عادة في المضارع يمكن ان نستخدم:

Subj. + am/is/are + used to + n / (inf. + ing).....

- I am used to going to school on time.

## would + inf.

لاحظ أوجه التشابه والاختلاف في استخدام كل من (used to + inf.) و (would + inf.):

١ تُستخدم كل من (used to + inf.) أو (would + inf.) للتعبير عن العادات المتكررة في الماضي:

- When I was a little girl, I used to cry easily when someone shouted at me.

= When I was a little girl, I would cry easily when someone shouted at me.



٢ تُستخدم (used to + inf.) وليس (would + inf.) لوصف حالة في الماضي - أي لا يمكن استخدام (would + inf.) إذا كان الفعل الأساسي أحد الأفعال التقريرية ، ومن أمثلة هذه الأفعال:

- be / have=possess = own / love / like / dislike / enjoy / hate / want / wish / weigh / hear / cost / deserve يستحق / understand / feel ...

- I used to have a small bike when I was a child. (✓)
- I would have a small bike when I was a child. (X)
- When my father was 25, he used to be strong. (✓)
- When my father was 25, he would be strong. (X)

٣ تشير (used to + inf.) بشكل واضح إلى عادات الماضي، لكن (would + inf.) لا تشير بالضرورة إلى الماضي، لذلك من الأفضل أن يسبقها ظرف زمان أو تعبير يدل على الماضي :

- Sama used to get up early.
- When she was a student, Sama would get up early.

٤ يمكن أن تُستخدم ظروف التكرار مثل (always, usually, sometimes ...) قبل أو بعد (used):

- When I was younger, I always used to help my mother with the housework.
- When I was younger, I used always to help my mother with the housework.

٥ تُستخدم ظروف التكرار مثل (always, usually, sometimes ...) بعد (would):

- When I was younger, I would always help my mother with the housework.

٦ عند النفي أو الاستفهام لا تستخدم (would) فقط تستخدم (used to):

- She wouldn't read much when she was young. (X)
- She didn't use to read much when she was young. (✓)

## General Exercise On Language

● Apply

● ✱ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. Our hotel room was exactly ..... as the photos they sent to us.

(المعصرة ٢٠٢٣)

- a. similar      b. very      c. same      d. the same

2. Female African elephants are ..... as big as the male ones. (الدلتجات ٢٠٢٣)

- a. almost      b. similar  
c. exactly the same      d. the same

3. My car is ..... more expensive than yours. (حلوان ٢٠٢٣)

- a. slight      b. slightly      c. many      d. very

4. He has exactly the same ..... his parents have. (بيا ٢٠٢٣)

- a. intelligent      b. intelligence  
c. intelligently      d. more intelligent

5. Mona is much ..... her classmates. (أبو المطامير ٢٠٢٣)

- a. the tallest      b. tall      c. the taller      d. taller than



6. What food did he ..... when he was ten? (الدلجات ٢٠٢٣)  
 a. used to like    b. use to like    c. uses to like    d. liked
7. When I was younger, I ..... enjoy swimming, but now I really love it! (الرحمانية ٢٠٢٣)  
 a. used to    b. didn't use to    c. wasn't    d. hadn't
8. Did you ..... to the beach when you were young? (حلوان ٢٠٢٣)  
 a. used to go    b. went    c. would go    d. use to go
9. My brother ..... like sweets when he was a child. (دمياط ٢٠٢٣)  
 a. used    b. used to    c. would    d. b & c
10. A: ..... come on time? B: Yes, he is always punctual. (الواسطي ٢٠٢٣)  
 a. Is Adel used to    b. Did Adel use to  
 c. Does Adel    d. Had Adel
11. Fortunately, I am not used to ..... a large number of students. (ساحل سليم ٢٠٢٣)  
 a. teaching    b. teach    c. taught    d. teaches
12. It's ..... to learn a language in a country where it is spoken. (الرحمانية ٢٠٢٣)  
 a. more easier    b. as easy    c. much easier    d. almost easiest
13. Your house is ..... more beautiful than mine. (ادكو ٢٠٢٣)  
 a. bit    b. far    c. little    d. almost
14. Jessica is much ..... with kids than you. (شرق مدينة نصر ٢٠٢٣)  
 a. a lot patient    b. patient    c. more patient    d. as patient
15. Your bag is ..... my bag. It is the same colour, size and price. (الواسطي ٢٠٢٣)  
 a. greatly different from    b. almost as expensive as  
 c. exactly the same as    d. not similar to
16. He found the English exam so ....., so he succeeded and got high marks. (ساقلة ٢٠٢٣)  
 a. easy    b. easily    c. easier    d. at ease
17. "Mr Ahmed is always late to his meetings." "Late" here is ..... (البداري ٢٠٢٣)  
 a. an adjective    b. an adverb    c. a noun    d. a verb
18. Since his money isn't sufficient, he bought a ..... car. (القرين ٢٠٢٣)  
 a. used    b. using    c. used to    d. uses
19. Manar used to be fat but now she ..... (الرحمانية ٢٠٢٣)  
 a. does    b. doesn't    c. didn't    d. isn't



20. He didn't use to eat fish, but now he ..... (النوبارية ٢٠٢٣)  
 a. is                      b. isn't                      c. does                      d. doesn't
21. On holidays, my mother ..... us a big breakfast. (شرق مدينة نصر ٢٠٢٣)  
 a. had made                      b. was making  
 c. is making                      d. would always make
22. He doesn't like that small town, but he'll ..... to it. (ميت سلسيل ٢٠٢٣)  
 a. became used    b. get used    c. never used    d. would use
23. A: .....to going by train? - B: Yes, I do travel by train every day. (العمرانية ٢٠٢٣)  
 a. Have you used                      b. Did you use  
 c. Do you use                      d. Are you used
24. The European ..... cold weather. (البحيرة ٢٠٢٣)  
 a. has used to    b. are used to    c. used to    d. didn't use to
25. There used to be a cinema in our street. Now, ..... a cinema in our street. (أبو حمص ٢٠٢٣)  
 a. there's                      b. we never had    c. we have                      d. we don't have
26. Speaking English is difficult but I am sure I ..... to it. (طعا ٢٠٢٣)  
 a. will get used    b. will get use    c. will use                      d. used
27. No longer ..... he smoke as he used to. (القرين ٢٠٢٣)  
 a. is                      b. does                      c. did                      d. will
28. Yara has the same height as Rana. This exactly means ..... (أبو حمص ٢٠٢٣)  
 a. Both Yara and Rana are high    b. Yara isn't so tall as Rana  
 c. Neither Yara nor Rana is high    d. Yara is as tall as Rana
29. One of the following sentences is correct in structure. Which one is it? (المطرية ٢٠٢٣)  
 a. I would be fat, but now I am thin.  
 b. I used to be fat, but now I am thin.  
 c. I was used to be fat but now I am thin.  
 d. I was in the habit of be fat, but now I am thin.
30. I used to like koshari. This means I ..... (البداري ٢٠٢٣)  
 a. still like koshari                      b. never liked koshari  
 c. didn't like koshari at all                      d. don't like koshari any more





## PART I VOCABULARY

### 1 Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

| Formal                                   | Less formal        |
|--|--------------------|
| arise(from) - arose -<br>arisen (phr. v) | come from (phr. v) |
| consequently(conj)                       | as a result        |
| however                                  | but                |
| in order to                              | so that            |
| lead to (phr. v)                         | result in (phr. v) |
| not only ... but also                    | ... as well as ... |

### 2 Important Vocabulary المفردات الهامة

|                     |                         |                        |
|---------------------|-------------------------|------------------------|
| benefit(ed) (n - v) | paid(adj)               | مدفوع الأجر            |
| career(n)           | pros (n)                | مميزات - مزايا         |
| certain(adj)        | psychological(adj)      | نفسي                   |
| charity(n)          | purpose(n)              | غرض                    |
| community(n)        | related(adj)            | مرتبط/متعلق            |
| conclusion (n)      | repair(ed) (v)          | يصلح                   |
| cons (n)            | reward(ed) (v - n)      | يكافئ - مكافأة         |
| contacts(n)         | rise - rose - risen (v) | يرتفع / يزداد / تشرق   |
| contrast(n)         | run - ran - run (v)     | يدور                   |
| costs(n)            | sign(ed) (n - v)        | لافتة - يوقع/يمضي      |
| enjoyable(adj)      | skateboard(n)           | لوح التزلج             |
| eventually(adv)     | skatepark(n)            | متنزه للتزلج           |
| exist(ed) (v)       | specific(adj)           | محدد                   |
| expression(n)       | suitable(adj)           | مناسب                  |
| formal(adj)         | sunshade(n)             | شمسية - مظلة           |
| gain(ed) (v)        | valuable(adj)           | قيم                    |
| inspire(d) (v)      | visible(adj)            | مرئي                   |
| leader(n)           | voluntary(adj)          | تطوعي                  |
| majority(n)         | volunteer (n)           | مُتطوع                 |
| mental health(n)    | volunteer(ed) (v)       | يتطوع                  |
| necessary(adj)      | volunteering(n)         | العمل التطوعي - التطوع |
| opportunity(n)      | youth(n)                | الشباب                 |



## Exercise On Vocabulary

### • Understand

- ☆ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

#### 1 Key vocabulary

1. Many benefits ..... from volunteering. (غرب الزقازيق ٢٠٢٣)  
a. arise                      b. arouse                      c. raise                      d. rise
2. Smoking ..... to a lot of diseases. (القوصية ٢٠٢٣)  
a. leads                      b. lives                      c. leaves                      d. levels
3. 'In order to' is the formal synonym of '.....'.  
a. so that                      b. however                      c. as a result                      d. consequently
4. "Hard work and time planning lead to success. In a less formal style, we can replace 'lead to' in this sentence with .....  
a. arise from                      b. exist                      c. result in                      d. result from
5. "Many health problems come from overweight." In a formal style, '.....' can replace 'come from' in this context.  
a. arise from                      b. look for                      c. result in                      d. lead to
6. I was very ill. ...., I helped my mother with the housework.  
a. Consequently                      b. However                      c. As a result                      d. So that
7. The ..... work we do for charities is a good thing for the whole society.  
a. involved                      b. coral                      c. paid                      d. voluntary
8. "I have so little free time. Consequently, I don't have enough time for fun." In an informal style, we can use '.....' instead of 'consequently'.  
a. but                      b. as a result                      c. however                      d. so that

#### 2 Important vocabulary

9. Used-car sales have ..... because of the increased cost of new cars. (ديروط ٢٠٢٣)  
a. risen                      b. raised                      c. aroused                      d. arisen
10. During his long ..... in business, my uncle achieved a lot of profits. (شرق مدينة نصر ٢٠٢٣)  
a. task                      b. career                      c. job                      d. mission
11. More than half the people means the ..... of people. (الغنايم ٢٠٢٣)  
a. trend                      b. minority                      c. crew                      d. majority
12. A/An ..... is someone who does a job willingly without being paid. (المطرية ٢٠٢٣)  
a. volunteer                      b. professional                      c. minister                      d. engineer



13. "When mum is tired, I volunteer to do the cooking." The word 'volunteer' here is a/an .....  
 a. verb                      b. adverb                      c. noun                      d. adjective
14. Sleep disorders اضطرابات are sometimes the result of ..... problems.  
 a. involved                      b. positive                      c. psychological                      d. coral
15. This is a ..... service. It is not free.  
 a. voluntary                      b. paid                      c. positive                      d. negative
16. In ....., I can say that protecting biodiversity is very important.  
 a. conclusion                      b. conservation                      c. preservation                      d. expedition
17. She was dressed in black, which is a ..... colour for funerals.  
 a. private                      b. valuable                      c. suitable                      d. visible
18. The good ..... he has with important people help him a lot.  
 a. creatures                      b. contacts                      c. costs                      d. pros
19. Eating too much leads to ..... weight.  
 a. having                      b. gaining                      c. fighting                      d. recycling
20. Finding a good job is the main ..... of joining a language course.  
 a. contrast                      b. purpose                      c. community                      d. majority
21. Stress الضغط for a long time may affect ..... health badly.  
 a. well-known                      b. local                      c. native                      d. mental
22. He told me about the pros and ..... of the new plan.  
 a. advantages                      b. upsides                      c. cons                      d. a & b
23. I ..... a lot from my grandfather's experience.  
 a. paid                      b. ran                      c. benefitted                      d. fought
24. He was ..... for the great efforts الجهود he has exerted بذلها.  
 a. inspired                      b. ensured                      c. rewarded                      d. faced
25. The museum contains very ..... antiquities.  
 a. specific                      b. valuable                      c. suitable                      d. visible
26. Sama doesn't like reading. In ....., Rodayna is a bookworm.  
 a. contrast                      b. purpose                      c. community                      d. majority
27. Intelligent people make use of يُحسِن استغلال the ..... offered to them.  
 a. generations                      b. variety                      c. creatures                      d. opportunities
28. The government plans to ..... a new factory to recycle waste from the city.  
 a. pay                      b. run                      c. benefit                      d. fight
29. Your success has ..... us all. You have showed us that nothing is impossible.  
 a. inspired                      b. recycled                      c. awarded                      d. faced



30. The teachers' ..... must have a better position in society.  
 a. contrast      b. purpose      c. community      d. majority
31. During daytime, the sun makes other stars not ..... to us.  
 a. specific      b. valuable      c. suitable      d. visible

## PART II VOCABULARY STUDY

### 1 Verbal Collocations متلازمات لفظية

|                |                                      |                |  |
|----------------|--------------------------------------|----------------|--|
| <b>achieve</b> | a specific goal يحقق هدفاً محدداً    | <b>go</b>      | diving يذهب للغوص                          |
| <b>bring</b>   | benefits يجلب منافع                  | <b>make</b>    | useful contacts يقيم علاقات / صداقات مفيدة |
| <b>cover</b>   | the costs يغطي تكاليف                |                | a rule يضع قاعدة                           |
| <b>develop</b> | useful skills ينمّي مهارات مفيدة     | <b>offer</b>   | ... opportunities يتيح لـ ... فرص          |
|                | valuable experience ينمّي خبرة قيّمة |                |  |
| <b>gain</b>    | weight يزداد في الوزن                | <b>prove</b>   | extremely useful يثبت أنه مفيد للغاية      |
| <b>give</b>    | ... the opportunity يعطي ... الفرصة  | <b>provide</b> | the opportunity يمنح الفرصة                |
|                | the result يعطي النتيجة              | <b>take</b>    | turns يتبادل الأدوار                       |

### 2 Synonyms مترادفات

| Word         | Synonym (=Meaning)               |
|--------------|----------------------------------|
| arise from   | ينتج عن - ينشأ من                |
| consequently | بالتالي - لذلك                   |
| pros         | مميزات - مزايا                   |
| voluntary    | تطوعي                            |
|              | arise out of, come from, come up |
|              | so, that's why, as a result      |
|              | advantages, merits, upsides      |
|              | unpaid, for free, free of charge |

### 3 Antonyms المتضادات

| Word       | Antonym (= Opposite)                     |
|------------|--|
| arise from | يؤدي إلى - ينتج عنه                      |
| majority   | الأقلية                                  |
| pros       | عيوب - مساوئ                             |
| voluntary  | مدفوع الأجر                              |
|            | lead to, result in                       |
|            | minority                                 |
|            | cons, disadvantages, demerits, downsides |
|            | paid                                     |
|            | ينتج عن - ينشأ من                        |
|            | الأغلبية                                 |
|            | مميزات - مزايا                           |
|            | تطوعي                                    |



## 4 Derivatives of key vocabulary مشتقات المفردات الرئيسية

| consequently       |                |   |
|--------------------|----------------|---|
| consequence (n)    | نتيجة / أثر    | - Smoking has bad consequences.   |
| consequent (adj)   | تابع / ناتج    | - Do you realise the consequent effects of this decision ?              |
| consequently (adv) | بالتالي - لذلك | - He is rich. Consequently, he has no financial problems. مشكلات مالية. |
| lead               |                |   |
| lead (v)           | يؤدي - يقود    | - Smoking leads to health problems.<br>- Who leads this group?          |
| leader (n)         | قائد           | - Who is the leader of this group.                                      |
| leading (adj)      | بارز - قيادي   | - My parents have played a leading role in my life.                     |

## 5 Expressions &amp; Idioms تعبيرات و مصطلحات

|                        |                        |                           |                          |
|------------------------|------------------------|---------------------------|--------------------------|
| as I explained above   | كما أوضحت أعلاه        | possible solutions        | طول ممكنة                |
| different to / from    | مختلف عن               | put ... into contact with | يساعد ... علي التواصل مع |
| feel good about        | يشعر بالرضا عن         | put up signs              | بضع لافتات               |
| get to know            | يعرف بالصدفة           | research studies          | دراسات بحثية             |
| in conclusion          | الخلاصة                | take ... on rides         | بأخذ ... في جولات        |
| in different languages | بلغات مختلفة           | visible places            | أماكن مرئية              |
| many reasons why/that  | أسباب كثيرة لـ         | volunteer job             | عمل تطوعي                |
| paid work              | عمل بأجر               | volunteer programme       | برنامج تطوعي             |
| people of any age      | الناس من مختلف الأعمار |                           |                          |

## 6 Verb + Preposition فعل + حرف جر

|                   |              |         |              |
|-------------------|--------------|---------|--------------|
| benefit from      | يستفيد من    | pay for | يدفع ثمن     |
| download ... from | يُنزل ... من | pick up | يلتقط - يجمع |
| find out          | يكشف - يعرف  |         |              |

## 7 Clear the confusion لاحظ الفرق

## raise - rise - arise - arouse

- **raise (d) + مفعول** يربي / يجمع مال / يرفع
  - His uncle **raises** cattle and sheep. يربي
  - He **raised** a lot of money abroad. يجمع مال
  - **Raise** your hand if you want to answer. يرفع
- **rise - rose - risen** (بدون مفعول) يرتفع / تشرق / ينهض ليحيى شخص / يستيقظ
  - Gold prices have **risen**. يرتفع
  - The sun **rises** in the east. تشرق



- When the teacher entered, all students **rose**. ينهض
- I **rise** at 6.00 in the morning. يستيقظ
- **arise - arose - arisen = come up** (بدون مفعول) ينشأ / ينتج
- A lot of problems **arise** because of misunderstanding.
- **arouse - aroused** + مفعول يثير / يوقظ
- His behaviour **aroused** the suspicion of the police.
- Don't **arouse** the baby.

### other than - rather than

- **other than = apart from** بخلاف / غير
- There are so many sources of protein **other than** meat.
- **rather than = instead of** بدلاً من
- I will go to bed early **rather than** watch this boring film.

### award - reward

- **award(ed) (v)** يمنح (جائزة - شهادة ...)
- Dr Zewail was **awarded** the Nobel Prize in 1999.
- **award (n)** منحة - جائزة - شهادة
- Naguib Mahfouz won a lot of **awards**.
- **reward(ed) (v)** يكافئ
- The officer **rewarded** the soldier for his honesty أمانة.
- **reward (n)** مكافأة (مقابل سلوك حسن أو عمل جيد) أو تقديم خدمة
- My father gives us chocolate as a **reward** when we do well.

## Exercise On Vocabulary study

- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. Researchers think that a lot of problems arise ..... unemployment.  
(المطرية ٢٠٢٣)  
a. in                      b. from                      c. at                      d. for
2. Turkey's damaging earthquake resulted ..... great number of deaths.  
(الواسطي ٢٠٢٣)  
a. from                      b. of                      c. in                      d. by
3. Egypt is a/an ..... country in the Middle East area.  
(ساحل سليم ٢٠٢٣)  
a. exciting                      b. public                      c. leading                      d. bored
4. "Several health problems arise from obesity." البيمنة Which of the following choices is antonymous with 'arise from'?  
a. come from                      b. happen because of  
c. are a result of                      d. result in
5. "Charities need young people to do voluntary work." The word 'voluntary' in this context can be replaced by .....  
a. paid                      b. unpaid                      c. free-of-charge                      d. b & c



6. The manager doesn't like me. He will accept any opinion ..... mine.  
 a. rather than      b. other than      c. thanks to      d. as well as
7. Volunteering ..... the opportunity for volunteers to find out if working in a certain area would be enjoyable and suitable.  
 a. fights      b. goes      c. provides      d. rewards
8. When I was in Sharm, I ..... diving very often.  
 a. fought      b. went      c. provided      d. gave
9. I think that your monthly income دخل will ..... the costs of living in a new city.  
 a. gain      b. keep      c. make      d. cover
10. The leader of the group ..... them on rides through the countryside.  
 a. made      b. had      c. did      d. took
11. While I was talking to the English tourist, I ..... to know that his father is Egyptian.  
 a. got      b. did      c. had      d. ought
12. She ..... to look after the baby.  
 a. volunteer      b. voluntary      c. volunteering      d. volunteered
13. I will join a charity ..... waste my time playing computer games.  
 a. rather than      b. other than      c. apart from      d. b & c
14. He was ..... the Nobel Prize.  
 a. rewarded      b. reward      c. award      d. awarded

### PART III

## READING & LISTENING

### 1 Reading Texts

#### Problem Solving :

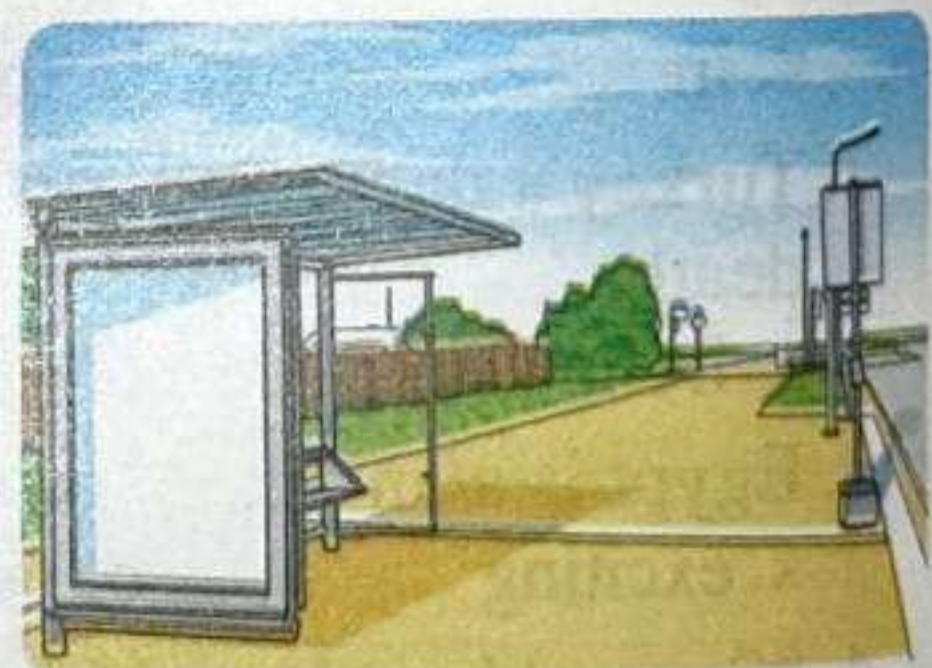
(WB page 16)

#### The problem

Many students at your school take the bus home at the end of each day. The problem is that the bus stop is always very sunny. It is very hot waiting for the bus and some children don't feel well if the bus is late.

#### Possible solutions

1. Give **sun shades**<sup>(1)</sup> to all the students so that they can **stay out of**<sup>(2)</sup> the sun. You can also advise them to wear hats.
2. Plant trees around the bus stop, so that students can stay out of the sun while they are waiting.
3. Move the bus stop next to a building, so that students can stay out of the sun while they are waiting.
4. Tell the students to wait inside the school until they can see the bus arriving.



(1) شمسبينة - مظلة  
 (2) يفي بعيداً عن



## Can volunteering benefit young people today?

(SB page 31)

Several<sup>(1)</sup> research studies<sup>(2)</sup> have proved<sup>(3)</sup> that significant<sup>(4)</sup> psychological<sup>(5)</sup> benefits<sup>(6)</sup> can arise from<sup>(7)</sup> volunteering<sup>(8)</sup>, for people of any age. For young people<sup>(9)</sup> though, there are many reasons why volunteering would benefit them.



In my opinion, the most important benefit is that it simply makes them feel good about themselves.

I believe that a further<sup>(10)</sup> important benefit is that young people can develop<sup>(11)</sup> useful skills and valuable<sup>(12)</sup> experience<sup>(13)</sup>. These can prove extremely useful not only at school, but also in their careers<sup>(14)</sup>. For example, a volunteer job with an organisation may lead to<sup>(15)</sup> paid<sup>(16)</sup> work. Volunteering could also provide<sup>(17)</sup> the opportunity<sup>(18)</sup> to find out<sup>(19)</sup> if working in a certain<sup>(20)</sup> area would be enjoyable and suitable<sup>(21)</sup>.

The third and final benefit of volunteering is that it gives young people the opportunity to make useful contacts<sup>(22)</sup>. A majority<sup>(23)</sup> of volunteers work together in order to<sup>(24)</sup> achieve a specific<sup>(25)</sup> goal. Consequently<sup>(26)</sup>, they often get to know each other very well and team leaders<sup>(27)</sup> may then put volunteers into contact with people who can offer them other interesting opportunities.

In conclusion<sup>(28)</sup>, it is clear that volunteering brings<sup>(29)</sup> several important benefits for the volunteers involved<sup>(30)</sup>. However<sup>(31)</sup>, as I explained<sup>(32)</sup> above, the most important benefit is the positive<sup>(33)</sup> effect<sup>(34)</sup> that volunteering has on the volunteers' mental health<sup>(35)</sup>.

- (1) عديد
- (2) دراسات بحثية
- (3) يثبت
- (4) بارز - هام
- (5) نفسي
- (6) فوائد
- (7) تنتج عن
- (8) العمل التطوعي
- (9) الشباب
- (10) أكثر
- (11) ينمي
- (12) قيم
- (13) تجربة - خبرة
- (14) الحياة المهنية
- (15) يؤدي إلى
- (16) مدفوع الأجر
- (17) يوفر
- (18) فرصة
- (19) يكتشف
- (20) محدد
- (21) مناسب
- (22) علاقات
- (23) الأغلبية
- (24) لكي
- (25) مُحدّد
- (26) لذلك
- (27) قادة
- (28) الخلاصة
- (29) يجلب
- (30) مُشارك
- (31) ومع ذلك
- (32) يوضح
- (33) إيجابي
- (34) أثر
- (35) الصحة النفسية



## We should reward all volunteers

(WB page 17)

Some people **argue**<sup>(1)</sup> that we should **reward**<sup>(2)</sup> volunteers by giving them some money for their work. However, I believe that this is not **necessary**<sup>(3)</sup>. Why is this?



The **definition**<sup>(4)</sup> of to volunteer is to work or help someone without being paid. Many **charities**<sup>(5)</sup> need volunteers in order to help people who have problems or who are very poor. In my opinion, the charities need all the money they receive to help these people.

Consequently, they do not have enough money to **pay**<sup>(6)</sup> volunteers.

So why should volunteers work **for no money**<sup>(7)</sup>? Not only do volunteers **gain**<sup>(8)</sup> valuable experience from volunteering, but they also teach them skills that they can use in their careers. I believe that **voluntary**<sup>(9)</sup> work can **eventually**<sup>(10)</sup> lead to a volunteer getting a good job.

In conclusion, I would say that there are many benefits that arise from volunteering **rather than**<sup>(11)</sup> being paid.

(1) يزعم

(2) يكافئ

(3) ضروري

(4) تعريف

(5) جمعيات خيرية

(6) يدفع مال

(7) دون مقابل

(8) يكتسب

(9) تطوعي

(10) في النهاية

(11) بدلاً من

## 2 Listening Texts

(SB page 30)

**Student 1** : So, we're trying to find a solution for a problem that a lot of young people are having in our town at the moment.

(1) حديقة تزلج

(2) رياضة التزلج

**Student 2** : Yes, there aren't enough facilities for young people in our town. When you're not at school or doing your homework, the only things you can do you can go for a walk, go shopping or go swimming.

**Student 1** : Yes, I think we should have a far wider range of facilities for young people here.

**Student 2** : We could ask the local council to build a **skatepark**<sup>(1)</sup>. That wouldn't cost very much money and it wouldn't take up very much space either.

**Student 1** : That's true but not all young people like **skateboarding**<sup>(2)</sup>, and what if there's a storm or it's too hot outside?



**Student 2 :** That's a good point. Do you have any other **suggestions**<sup>(3)</sup>?

**Student 1 :** Well, what about starting a **youth club**<sup>(4)</sup> in a building that's already there? The council wouldn't have to build anything new and the youth club could offer lots of different activities, so there's something for everyone.

**Student 2 :** Well, the council would still need to pay some people to **organize**<sup>(5)</sup> the youth club, so it wouldn't be completely free.

**Student 1 :** OK, but it might not cost a lot and they could ask for volunteers.

**Student 2 :** OK, but what activities could we do at the youth club? Playing games and drawing isn't very interesting for older **kids**<sup>(6)</sup>.

**Student 2 :** OK, so we have two possible solutions so far. It seems like we need to find something that doesn't cost very much money, but which is interesting and a lot of young people will find interesting ?

(3) اقتراحات

(4) نادي للشباب

(5) ينظم

(6) أطفال

(WB page 16)

**Narrator :** In today's programme, we listen to your computer problems, then ask three **experts**<sup>(1)</sup> to suggest a solution. First, we have Ola. What's your problem, Ola?

**Ola :** Hi. I have an old laptop which used to be really good. At school, we did a project for homework about sea life. All my friends could **download**<sup>(2)</sup> photos and information from the internet, but now my laptop won't do this. What should I do ?

**Presenter :** OK, let's ask our first expert. First, what do you think Ola should do, Amal ?

**Amal :** Well, it sounds like your computer is very old. Why don't you buy a new one ? Then I think your problem will be solved.

**Presenter :** Thanks. Do you agree, Dina ?

**Dina :** No, because new computers are expensive! Even an old laptop should be able to download photos, so perhaps there is a problem with it. I think you should take it to a shop. I'm sure they can repair it.



(1) خبراء

(2) يحمل (من الإنترنت)



**Presenter :** OK. What about you Manal? What advice do you have?

**Manal :** I think you can solve the problem yourself. You probably just need a new **operating system**<sup>(3)</sup>.  
This is a program you can download from the internet. I think this will solve your problem.

(3) نظام تشغيل

## PART IV LANGUAGE

راجع شرح القاعدة من الدرسين الأول والثاني.

تنويه

### General Exercise On Language

Apply

★ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

#### 1 Getting started: Check what you have learnt

1. A kilo of cotton is exactly the same weight ..... a kilo of meat.  
(الفنايم ٢٠٢٣)  
a. from                      b. as                      c. than                      d. to
2. Today is ..... hotter than yesterday so I can't bear these heavy clothes.  
(المعصرة ٢٠٢٣)  
a. more                      b. bit                      c. much                      d. less
3. Her illness was ..... than we thought at first.  
(الشيد ٢٠٢٣)  
a. serious enough                      b. as serious  
c. far more serious                      d. slightly serious
4. I am ..... as tall as my friend. He is only two centimetres taller.  
(دار السلام ٢٠٢٣)  
a. exactly                      b. slightly                      c. almost                      d. far
5. This book is brilliant; it's ..... than the last book he wrote!  
(أسوان ٢٠٢٣)  
a. far better                      b. slightly worse  
c. almost better                      d. not better
6. Students ..... rubbish in the school ground, but now they keep the school grounds clean.  
(ادكو ٢٠٢٣)  
a. were leaving                      b. leave  
c. used to leave                      d. didn't use to leave
7. When I was young, I ..... have strong muscles, but now I don't.  
(المعصرة ٢٠٢٣)  
a. used to                      b. didn't use to                      c. would                      d. wouldn't



8. In the past, my ancestors ..... a lot of cows and sheep on their farmland. (شرق مدينة نصر ٢٠٢٣)  
 a. use to have                      b. used to have  
 c. are used to have                d. used to be having
9. She used to live in Cairo, but now she ..... in Aswan. (أسوان ٢٠٢٣)  
 a. is living                      b. lives                      c. lived                      d. live
10. When he was five years old, my brother ..... watch all the children's TV programmes.  
 a. used to                      b. used                      c. uses                      d. use
11. Sometimes, my father ..... bring me presents without saying why.  
 a. used                      b. used to                      c. was used to                      d. b & c
12. When I was young, I used to ..... swimming every weekend.  
 a. had gone                      b. gone                      c. go                      d. went
13. Rokaya is ..... Leen.  
 a. tall                      b. height                      c. taller                      d. taller than
14. Did he ..... to do anything else as well as writing?  
 a. using                      b. use                      c. used to                      d. b & c
15. .... to go to bed early when you were young?  
 a. Do you used                      b. Do you use                      c. Did you use                      d. Did you using
16. He used to ..... by his friends' unkind remarks ملاحظات.  
 a. annoy                      b. annoying                      c. annoys                      d. be annoyed
17. Aya is 60 kg. Leila is 60 kg, too. Noha is 59.5 Kg. Noha is ..... Aya and Leila.  
 a. far lighter than                      b. almost as heavy as  
 c. slightly heavier than                      d. exactly the same weight as
18. Aya is 60 kg. Leila is 60 kg, too. Noha is 59.5 Kg. Aya is ..... Leila.  
 a. far lighter than                      b. almost as heavy as  
 c. slightly heavier than                      d. exactly the same weight as

## 2 Special cases

19. When we were young, our mother ..... delicious meals every day. (شربين ٢٠٢٣)  
 a. would cook                      b. uses to cook  
 c. is used to cooking                      d. got used to cook
20. Don't worry! You will soon ..... used to living here. (غرب الزقازيق ٢٠٢٣)  
 a. grow                      b. plant                      c. became                      d. got



21. He used to be a driver, but now he .....  
 a. does                      b. doesn't                      c. is                      d. isn't
22. Leen is tall, but Rokaya is .....  
 a. tall                      b. height                      c. taller                      d. taller than
23. A month ago, I ..... three weddings.  
 a. used to attend                      b. got used to attend  
 c. was used to attend                      d. attended
24. This spray is used ..... mosquitos.  
 a. to kill                      b. kill                      c. to killing                      d. killing
25. He ..... used to his first school after only three days.  
 a. get                      b. is                      c. became                      d. become
26. .... used to be a large villa here.  
 a. Those                      b. Their                      c. There's                      d. There
27. I ..... to the club every day last week.  
 a. used to go                      b. didn't use to go  
 c. went                      d. had gone
28. I don't smoke ..... more.  
 a. too                      b. any                      c. no                      d. not
29. It was ..... habit to stay up late at night.  
 a. Ali                      b. he                      c. his                      d. himself
30. .... a fixed habit, I used to visit my grandparents once a week before their death.  
 a. As                      b. For                      c. To                      d. By
31. This bike and that one have the same .....  
 a. quality                      b. good                      c. bad                      d. b & c
32. Before she got married, she ..... have a lot of free time.  
 a. used                      b. used to                      c. would                      d. b & c
33. Cars ..... cost far less money in the past.  
 a. would                      b. would have                      c. used to                      d. used to have
34. Whenever I saw her, she ..... be smiling.  
 a. used to                      b. was used to                      c. would                      d. would always
35. Youssef is ..... more intelligent than Karim.  
 a. very                      b. far                      c. much                      d. b & c
36. Mr Munir ..... smoke and that destroyed his health.  
 a. used to                      b. would                      c. a & b                      d. never



37. While I was a secretary, I got used to ..... in my spare time.  
 a. wrote                      b. be written                      c. writing                      d. write
38. He ..... eating out as he doesn't enjoy cooking at home.  
 a. no longer                      b. is used for                      c. was used                      d. is used to
39. My mother is used to ..... up early every day.  
 a. gets                      b. got                      c. getting                      d. get

### 3 Check your understanding

40. He has made a new mistake although he ..... mistakes. (الفتح ٢٠٢٣)  
 a. is not used to making                      b. does not use to make  
 c. did not use to making                      d. used to make
41. Mr Helmi no longer smokes. To Mr Helmi, smoking is .....  
 a. a habit                      b. a present habit  
 c. a past habit                      d. a lifelong habit
42. Omar is no longer kind to me. He .....  
 a. used to be kind to me                      b. got used to being kind to me  
 c. is getting used to be kind to me                      d. was never kind to me
43. There didn't use to be a bus stop here. This means .....  
 a. there was a bus stop here                      b. there is a bus stop here  
 c. a bus stop used to be here                      d. a bus stop never used to be here
44. Sama doesn't hide her father's shoes any longer. What does this mean?  
 a. She stopped hiding them.                      b. She didn't stop hiding them.  
 c. She doesn't stop hiding them.                      d. She still hides them.

**A week is enough**

مراجعة المنهج  
 والتمكن منه في اسبوع واحد فقط







PART I LANGUAGE HINTS

Linking Words and Expressions: Formal & Informal

استخدام الروابط والتعبيرات في اللغة الرسمية واللغة الدارجة

Contrast التناقض

Formal → However جملة + ومع ذلك / لكن

ex. - I was angry. However, I didn't say anything wrong.

Informal → but جملة + ومع ذلك / لكن

ex. - I was angry but I didn't say anything wrong.

Result النتيجة

Formal → Consequently جملة + ولذلك / ونتيجة لذلك

ex. - The flat is in a noisy street. Consequently, I won't buy it.

Informal → As a result جملة + ولذلك / ونتيجة لذلك

ex. - The flat is in a noisy street. As a result, I won't buy it.

Purpose الغرض

Formal → to – in order to – so as to لكي + inf. ...

ex. - We get up early to catch the school bus.

- Ahmed will help me so as to solve my problems.

- Sama studies hard in order to pass the exam.



جملة + لكي / حتى → so that - in order that - in the hope that  
Informal

لاحظ أن الفعل في الجملة بعد (so that - in order that - in the hope that) يكون كالتالي:  
١- في المضارع أو المستقبل نستخدم (can / will / may + inf.):

- ex. - We get up early so that we can catch the school bus.  
- Ahmed will help me in order that I will be able to solve my problems.

٢- في الماضي نستخدم (could / would / might + inf.):

- ex. - Sama studied hard in the hope that she could pass the exam.

ليس فقط ... لكن أيضا not only ... but also

١. تأتي (not only) قبل الفعل الأساسي أو بعد الفعل المساعد في الجملة الأولى:

... (also) الفاعل + but ..., فعل + not only + فاعل

- ex. - We did not only go to the market, but we also went to the zoo.

٢. يمكن أن تأتي (also) بعد (but) مباشرة:

- ex. - We did not only go to the market, but also we went to the zoo.

٣. يمكن استخدام (as well - too) في نهاية الجملة بمعنى أيضاً بدلاً من (also):

- ex. - She not only arrived late, but she also forgot her books.

= She not only arrived late, but she forgot her books as well.

٤. عند استخدام (Not only) في بداية الجملة لابد أن يُستخدم فعل مساعد قبل الفاعل:

Not only + فاعل + فعل مساعد + but ....., فعل

- ex. - Not only did we go to the market, but we also went to the zoo.

٥. إذا ربطت (Not only... but also) فاعلين مختلفين فإن الفعل يتبع الفاعل الثاني من ناحية المفرد والجمع:

- ex. - Not only Tom but also his brothers are doctors.

يلشأ من arise from - come from

Formal → arise from + n / (inf. + ing)

- ex. - A lot of health problems arise from gaining weight.



Informal



come from + n / (inf. + ing)

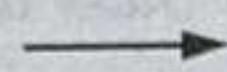
ex. - A lot of health problems come from gaining weight.

لاحظ : يمكن أن يأتي المفعول بين (inf. + ing) و (arise from / come from)

ex. - Most social problems arise from people not getting a good education.

يؤدي إلى lead to - result in

Formal



lead to + n / (inf. + ing)

ex. - Pollution leads to suffering from health problems.

Informal



result in + n / (inf. + ing)

ex. - Pollution results in suffering from health problems.

لاحظ : يمكن أن يأتي المفعول بين (inf. + ing) و (lead to / result in)

ex. - Voluntary work can eventually lead to a volunteer getting a good job.

## General Exercise On Language Hints

● ★ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. Not only..... well but he also scored a fantastic goal.

(دمياط ٢٠٢٣)

a. he played      b. played      c. did he play      d. he did play

2. He doesn't learn from his mistakes. ...., the manager fired him. فصله

a. As a result      b. To      c. In order that      d. Not only

3. He has ..... played well, but he has also scored two goals.

a. as a result      b. to      c. in order that      d. not only

4. He looks for a second job ..... earn more money.

a. as a result      b. to      c. in order that      d. not only

5. He looks for a second job ..... he can earn more money.

a. as a result      b. to      c. in order that      d. not only

6. I offered to reduce the price. ...., the customer refused to buy the jacket.

a. Consequently      b. However      c. So that      d. In order to



7. I offered to reduce the price. ...., the customer agreed to buy the jacket.  
 a. Consequently    b. However    c. So that    d. In order to
8. I offered to reduce the price ..... make the customer buy the jacket.  
 a. consequently    b. however    c. so that    d. in order to
9. I offered to reduce the price ..... the customer might buy the jacket.  
 a. consequently    b. however    c. so that    d. in order to
10. Not only ..... well as a coach, but he is also a good team manager.  
 a. he does    b. does he do    c. he doesn't    d. doesn't he do
11. Car accidents usually arise from careless drivers ..... very fast.  
 a. drive    b. drives    c. driving    d. to drive
12. Eating too much leads ..... on much weight.  
 a. put    b. puts    c. to put    d. to putting

## PART II

## LANGUAGE SKILLS

### 1 Reading

★ Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

No matter how much we strive to make our domestic environment as safe as possible, accidents at home can still happen - even in the most carefulness of households. When it comes to the health of our families, especially for those with young children, it makes sense to know exactly what to do if these common scenarios do occur.

An example of the most common accidents that can happen in the home is falling objects. When children start to move around on their own, there is an increased danger of them pulling objects down on top of themselves. Being conscious of your kid's health means making sure any trailing electrical leads, table cloth edges and dish towels are out of reach in order to help prevent accidents happening.

Another example is trips and falls. A fall can affect people of all ages, but they are most common among the very young and the very old. Often, falling over as a child will only hurt their pride and a few soothing words is all what's needed. However, if the person who has fallen subsequently becomes **drowsy**, vomits or loses consciousness, it is important to seek medical advice.

★ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. The word "**drowsy**" is the opposite of the word .....  
 a. alert    b. intelligent    c. sleepy    d. fainting



2. What is the main idea of the last paragraph?
  - a. What happens when a person falls ?
  - b. What happens when a person goes on a trip ?
  - c. Trips and falls are examples of home accidents.
  - d. The danger of falling and how to react to it.
3. The word(s) ..... in the second paragraph can be replaced by the word "alone".
  - a. on their own      b. conscious      c. dish towels      d. accidents
4. .... are likely to have more accidents at home.
  - a. Parents      b. Children      c. Babies      d. Adults
5. Which of the following is the best title for the passage ?
  - a. How to double home accidents.      b. How to help stop home accidents.
  - c. The effects of home accidents.      d. How to stop children falling.
6. Our houses are now ..... in the past.
  - a. safer than      b. as safe as
  - c. more dangerous than      d. as dangerous as
7. .... can be one of the dangerous accidents that may occur at home.
  - a. Sleeping      b. Falling      c. Training      d. Planting
8. We should give ..... advice for people in emergency.
  - a. medical      b. educational      c. economical      d. social

## 2 Essay Writing كتابة المقال

### Model essay

Write an essay of about **ONE HUNDRED and EIGHTY words (180)** on :

#### How can volunteers benefit from volunteering

Volunteering is one of the most important duties واجبات that young people can have. The benefits of volunteering can be enormous. Volunteering offers necessary help to people in need. The benefits of volunteering can be even greater for volunteers themselves. So, how can volunteers benefit from volunteering?

One of the best benefits of volunteering is the impact اثر on the community. Unpaid work helps in enhancing services in community. Volunteering allows you to connect to your community and make it a better place. Dedicating تكريس your time as a volunteer helps you make new friends and improve your social skills.

There are a lot of volunteering opportunities you can choose from according to your free time. Other than charity organizations, you can serve in worship places أماكن العبادة such as mosques and churches. Senior centers are always need volunteers to accompany the elders to go for short walks or talk to them.



Volunteering is good for your health at any age. Studies have found that those who volunteer have a lower mortality rate **معدّل وفيات** than those who do not. Volunteering has also been shown to lessen **يقلل** symptoms of heart disease.

To conclude, volunteering is a two-way street: It can benefit you and your family as well as the community.

### 3 الترجمة Translation

#### 1 Choose the correct Arabic translation from a, b, c or d:

1. Planting trees helps the environment. They provide shade in summer and absorb carbon dioxide. (السويس ٢٠٢٣)

- a. إن غرس الأشجار يساعد البيئة، فهي توفر الظل في الصيف وتمتص ثاني أكسيد الكربون.
- b. إن غرس الأشجار قد يساعد البيئة، فهي توفر الظل في الصيف وتمتص ثاني أكسيد الكربون.
- c. إن غرس الأشجار يساعد البيئة، فهي تخفف الظل في الصيف وتمتص ثاني أكسيد الكربون.
- d. إن غرس الأشجار يساعد البيئة، فهي توفر الظل في الصيف وتنتج ثاني أكسيد الكربون.

2. Pollution and global warming represent a real threat to our existence on earth. Therefore, we should exert more efforts to limit its impact on our environment. (سنورس ٢٠٢٣)

- a. يُعتبر كل من التلوث والاحتباس الحراري تهديدان حقيقيان لوجودنا على سطح الأرض، ولذلك ينبغي أن نبذل جهوداً أكبر للحد من تأثيرهما على البيئة.
- b. يُعتبر كل من التلوث والاحتباس الحراري تهديدان حقيقيان لوجودنا على سطح الأرض، ومع ذلك ينبغي أن نبذل جهوداً أكبر للحد من ضعف تأثيرهما على البيئة.
- c. يُعتبر كل من التلوث والاحتباس الحراري تهديدان حقيقيان لوجودنا على سطح الأرض، ولذلك ينبغي أن نبذل جهوداً أكبر للحد من تأثيرهما على البيئة.
- d. يُعتبر كل من التلوث والاحتباس الحراري تهديدان حقيقيان لوجودنا على سطح الأرض، ولذلك ينبغي أن نبذل جهوداً أكبر لتحديد تأثيرهما على البيئة.

#### 2 Choose the correct English translation from a, b, c or d:

تمثل التغيرات المناخية أحد أخطر المشكلات التي يواجهها العالم في الفترة الأخيرة، وذلك نظراً لتزايدها بشدة في العشرين سنة الأخيرة وتأثيرها على الإنسان والنبات والحيوان. (قطور ٢٠٢٣)

- a. Climate changes are one of the most dangerous problems that face the world recently because of their great increase in the last twenty years and their effect on men, planets and animals
- b. Climate changes are one of the most dangerous problems that face the world recently because of their greatly increase in the next twenty years and their effect on man, plants and animals
- c. Climate changes are one of the most dangerous problems that faced the world recently because of their great decrease in the last twenty years and their effect on man, planes and animals.
- d. Climate changes are one of the most dangerous problems that face the world recently because of their great increase in the last twenty years and their effect on man, plants and animals.



## challenge

## • challenge (n)

تَحَدِّي

- Passing the final exam is a real challenge. I must study hard.

## • challenge(d) (v)

يتحدى

- Don't try to challenge him at chess. He is very intelligent.

## • challenging (adj)

ينطوي علي تحدي / صعب لكن مثير

- I am sure you will enjoy this challenging job.

## • unchallenged (adj)

مقبول - متعارف عليه - مُتَّفَق عليه

- He is a wise حكيم person whose opinions are usually unchallenged.

## • unchallengeable (adj)

مُطْلَق / راسخ / ثابت / غير قابل للنقاش

- We have unchallengeable love for our homeland.

لاحظ استخدم الصفة (challenged) عند الحديث عن ذوي الإحتياجات الخاصة بمعنى (ذو إعاقة):

visually challenged - physically challenged - mentally challenged

- Braille is a special writing for people who are visually challenged.

= Braille is a special writing for blind people.

## conserve

## • conserve (d) = preserve(d) (v)

يحفظ / يصون / يحمي

- It is very important to conserve the natural environment.

## • conserve (d) (v)

يُرَشِّد / يقتصد في

- We must conserve water.

## • conserve = jam (n)

مربي

- She had a conserve sandwich for breakfast.

## • conservation = preservation (n)

حماية أو صيانة (البيئة الطبيعية)

- The conservation of biodiversity is a must. ضرورة



• **conservation (n)**

ترشيد / تقليل

- Energy conservation is something important.

ولاحظ التعبيرات التالية:

- nature conservation
- wildlife conservation
- conservation groups

حماية الطبيعة  
حماية الحياة البرية  
جماعات حماية الطبيعة

• **conservationist (n)**

شخص محافظ علي أو صديق للبيئة

- Conservationists are people who work hard to protect the environment.

**species**

• **species (n)**

نوع - أنواع (يأتي بعدها فعل مفرد أو جمع حسب المعني المقصود)

- This species of animals is rare.
- These species of animals are rare.

ولاحظ التعبيرات التالية:

- endangered species
- protected species
- extinct species

نوع نادر (مهدد بالانقراض)  
نوع محمي (في محمية طبيعية)  
نوع منقرض

**unique**

• **unique (adj)**

فريد من نوعه

- Coral reefs have unique beauty.

• **unique (adj)**

مُفَيِّز / خاص

- They spent a unique time in the Maldives . جُزُر المالديف.

لاحظ: لا تُستخدم الصفة (**unique**) في صيغ المقارنة والتفضيل:

- This scene is more unique than that one. (X)

لاحظ التعبير التالي:

• **be unique to**

يتفرد به / لا يوجد إلا في

- This type of fish is unique to the Red Sea. It exists nowhere else.

**volunteer**

• **volunteer (n)**

شخص متطوع (يقوم بعمل دون أجر)

- A team of volunteers are helping to keep the natural environment clean.

• **volunteer(ed) (to / for) (v)**

يتطوع - يعرض القيام بعمل دون أجر

- He volunteered for looking after the plants in the garden.

• **volunteering (n)**

التطوع (للقيام بعمل دون أجر)

- Volunteering benefits both societies and volunteers themselves.

• **voluntary (adj)**

تطوعي (دون أجر)

- Omar did some voluntary work for a charity.



## Advanced Exercise on Vocabulary

UNIT

9

- ★ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

- Mr Omar ..... his services as a lawyer for the victims.  
a. volunteered      b. arouse      c. lead      d. preserved
- There are so many ancient tourist sites unique ..... Luxor and Aswan.  
a. for      b. from      c. to      d. with
- The deaf, the blind and the dumb are examples of people who are .....  
a. challenge      b. challenged      c. challenging      d. unchallenged
- The price of this jacket can't go ..... ; it is too expensive.  
a. challenge      b. challenged      c. challenging      d. unchallenged
- The lion is a/an ..... species of animals. That is, it is about to die out.  
a. dangerous      b. endangered      c. a & b      d. conservative

## Advanced Exercise on Language

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

- ★ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

- Did he ..... to eating yoghurt?  
a. got used      b. become used      c. use      d. using
- Roaa used to have short hair, but now she .....  
a. couldn't      b. wasn't      c. doesn't      d. isn't
- She no longer ..... glasses, but she used to do that when she was young.  
a. wore      b. is wearing      c. wears      d. wear
- He is used to playing tennis every weekend, but many years ago he .....  
a. wasn't      b. didn't      c. doesn't      d. isn't
- She ..... here any more.  
a. doesn't work      b. didn't work  
c. is used to working      d. used to work



# Test on Unit 9

● Understand

● Apply

● Create

تنويه

التقييمات  
الشهرية في  
نهاية الكتاب



اختبار إلكتروني

## 1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. Conservationists try to protect the ..... of animals and plants.

(دار السلام ٢٠٢٣)

- a. scholarship      b. biodiversity      c. expedition      d. monitor

2. Your bag is ..... the same as mine, so there is no difference. (الزيتون ٢٠٢٣)

- a. almost      b. exactly      c. far      d. lightly

3. Native ..... are people who first live in the country. (أبنوب ٢٠٢٣)

- a. habits      b. inhibits      c. inhabitants      d. exhibits

4. Every nation has the right to ..... its identity and culture. (ساقلة ٢٠٢٣)

- a. damage      b. reserve      c. preserve      d. serve

5. I came first and won a ..... to study medicine in England. (حلوان ٢٠٢٣)

- a. reward      b. variety      c. scholarship      d. starfish

6. There's only a small difference. This phone is ..... bigger than that one. (بورسعيد ٢٠٢٣)

- a. as      b. far      c. slightly      d. more

7. Soha isn't ..... tall as her elder sister. (القرين ٢٠٢٣)

- a. like      b. so      c. than      d. that

8. I think pollution in large cities is ..... worse than it used to be. (ادفو ٢٠٢٣)

- a. exactly      b. as      c. far      d. most

9. You run ..... me. (غرب الزقازيق ٢٠٢٣)

- a. almost as quick      b. almost as quickly as  
c. much quicker      d. slightly quicker

10. I am ..... as tall as my brother so there is small difference. (الزيتون ٢٠٢٣)

- a. exactly      b. almost      c. far      d. more

11. English is ..... more difficult than French. (سوهاج ٢٠٢٣)

- a. more      b. many      c. much      d. few

12. In the past, people ..... to work long hours. (ادفو ٢٠٢٣)

- a. used      b. doesn't use      c. isn't used      d. don't use

13. There ..... a lot of tourists visiting this place a long time ago. (المحمودية ٢٠٢٣)

- a. was      b. are      c. used to be      d. would be

14. He used to be a driver, but now he ..... (المرج ٢٠٢٣)

- a. isn't      b. doesn't      c. hasn't      d. is



15. .... in a bank when he was younger?

- a. Did he use to work                      b. Is he working  
c. Did he get used to work                d. Does he work

**2. Read the following passage, then answer the questions :**

(المنزلة ٢٠٢٣)

Statistics show that the rapid **growth** in population creates problems for developing countries. So, why don't people have fewer children? It has been found that only when people's education and living standards begin to rise, birth rates begin to fall. Now, poor countries can't afford social services and old age pensions, and people's incomes are so low that **they** have nothing to spare for savings. So, people need their children to provide them with security in their old age. Having a large family can be a form of insurance even when they are still young.

Improvements in public services and medical care have assured that many more babies survive infancy and grow up. It has also helped the parents to live longer. No wonder populations are being added to both ends. These people have to be convinced that with smaller families, there will be more food and schools. This means changes in attitudes.

**Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d:**

1. We have to convince people to .....  
a. build houses                                      b. go to school  
c. have smaller families                              d. work on farms
2. The underlined word "**they**" refers to.....  
a. people    b. social services  
c. children    d. people's income
3. .... decreases the number of deaths among babies.  
a. Education    b. Birth control  
c. The standard of living                                      d. Medical care
4. Rapid growth in population creates .....  
a. happiness                      b. problems                      c. money                      d. care
5. Pensions means money you get after you .....  
a. work hard    b. go abroad  
c. retire from work    d. have free time
6. Why did people like to have many children in the past?  
a. To help the parents live longer.  
b. To afford social services.  
c. To provide them with security.  
d. To convince them to plan the family.



7. The passage is talking about family .....

- a. planning      b. food      c. vehicles      d. clothes

8. The noun '**growth**' in the first line is antonymous in meaning with ".....".

- a. increase      b. decrease      c. double      d. rise

3. a. Choose the correct Arabic translation from a, b, c or d:

Do you think we can keep our culture, customs and traditions safe in this multicultural world? For me, the answer depends on our youth. (قطور ٢٠٢٣)

a. هل تعتقد أننا نستطيع الحفاظ على تراثنا وعاداتنا وقيمنا في هذا العالم المتعدد التراث؟ بالنسبة لي الإجابة تتوقف على شبابنا.

b. هل تعتقد أننا نستطيع الحفاظ على ثقافتنا وتقاليدنا وأخلاقنا في هذا العالم المتعدد الثقافات؟ بالنسبة لي الإجابة تتوقف على شبابنا.

c. هل تفكر في أننا نستطيع الحفاظ على تقاليدنا وتراثنا وقيمنا في هذا العالم المتعدد الثقافات؟ بالنسبة لي الإجابة تتوقف على شبابنا.

d. هل تعتقد أننا نستطيع الحفاظ على ثقافتنا وعاداتنا وتقاليدنا في هذا العالم المتعدد الثقافات؟ بالنسبة لي الإجابة تتوقف على شبابنا.

b. Choose the correct English translation from a, b, c or d:

لابد من زيادة الإنتاج وتقليل الاستهلاك، فهذا سوف يخفض الأسعار ويساعد في حل المشكلة الاقتصادية التي يعاني منها العالم في الوقت الحالي. (الفيوم ٢٠٢٣)

a. It's necessary to increase production and deduce consumption. In this way prices will be lowered, and the economical issue the world faces nowadays will be resolved.

b. It's necessary to increase production and reduce consumption; this will bring the prices down and contribute to solving the economic problem the world faces nowadays.

c. It's necessary to increase producing and indicate consuming. This will bring the prices down and solve the economic problem the world faces nowadays.

d. It's necessary to increase production and induce waste. This may bring the prices down and solve the economic problem the world faces nowadays.

4. Answer the following questions :

1. Of the three daughters of King Lear, only Corfelia loved him. How do you know? Give two clues.

2. Why do you think Lear went mad ?

3. Why do you think Gloucester wanted to commit suicide ?

5. Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED and EIGHTY (180) words on the following topic :

"Fighting pollution is the responsibility of both governments and individuals"



## Mini-Test on Unit 9 for Al-Azhar Students

إختبار مصغر لطلاب الأزهر الشريف

### 1. Finish the following dialogue :

**Ramy and Emad are planning for the weekend.**

**Ramy :** What are you going to do at the weekend ?

**Emad :** I am not sure. (1) .....

**Ramy :** I am thinking of taking a drive to the beach.

**Emad :** (2) .....

**Ramy :** Would you be interested in joining me ?

**Emad :** Sure, I would love to go with you, (3) .....

**Ramy :** I think that we can leave at 7 o'clock on Friday morning.

**Emad :** Do you know that a lot of our friends will be there ?

**Ramy :** (4) ..... . Joining them is a part of my plan.

### 2. Write a paragraph of (80) words on :

“Voluntary work”

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

### 3. A. Translate into Arabic :

Good words have a good effect on both man and society as they spread hope, optimism, happiness and pleasure.

.....

.....

### B. Translate into English :

لقد أصبحت مواقع التواصل الاجتماعي وخاصة الفيس بوك جزء من حياتنا اليومية.

.....

.....



# Revision 3

Based On Units 7, 8 & 9

SB pages 36 : 41 WB pages 20 : 23

## PART I VOCABULARY

### 1 Important Vocabulary

|                   |                 |                 |                 |
|-------------------|-----------------|-----------------|-----------------|
| beneficial(adj)   | مفيد            | life-long(adj)  | مدي الحياة      |
| complicated(adj)  | مُعقَّد         | locate(d) (v)   | يضع / يحدد موضع |
| eco-systems(n)    | الأنظمة البيئية | official(adj)   | رسمي            |
| head(ed) (v)      | يتوجه           | persuade(d) (v) | يُقْنِع         |
| importance(n)     | أهمية           | practical(adj)  | عملي - تطبيقي   |
| impressive(adj)   | مُبْهَر         | teamwork(n)     | عمل جماعي       |
| increasingly(adv) | بشكل متزايد     | tent(n)         | خيمة            |
| incredible(adj)   | خُرَافِي - رائع |                 |                 |

### 2 Extra Vocabulary

|                |          |                 |                 |
|----------------|----------|-----------------|-----------------|
| activity(n)    | نشاط     | indeed(adv)     | بالفعل          |
| adults(n)      | البالغين | interest(n)     | اهتمام          |
| castle(n)      | قلعة     | positive(adj)   | إيجابي          |
| currently(adv) | حالياً   | protect(ed) (v) | يحمي            |
| cute(adj)      | جذاب     | Spanish(n)      | اللغة الإسبانية |
| dried(adj)     | مُجَفَّف | teenagers(n)    | مراهقين         |
| gain(ed) (v)   | يكتسب    | temperatures(n) | درجات الحرارة   |
| global(adj)    | عالمي    | together(adv)   | معاً - سوياً    |
| guide(n)       | مُرْشِد  |                 |                 |

## PART II VOCABULARY STUDY

### 1 Verbal Collocations متلازمات لفظية

|         |                      |                    |      |                      |                   |
|---------|----------------------|--------------------|------|----------------------|-------------------|
| develop | useful skills        | يكتسب مهارات مفيدة | get  | started              | يبدأ              |
|         | practical skills     | يكتسب مهارات عملية |      | involved             | يشارك             |
|         | a life-long interest | يكتسب اهتمام دائم  | have | a positive effect on | له أثر إيجابي علي |
| do      | activities           | يمارس أنشطة        | make | a bandage on         | يضع ضمادة علي     |
| gain    | useful knowledge     | يكتسب معارف مفيدة  |      |                      |                   |



## 2 Expressions & Idioms تعبيرات و مصطلحات

|                   |                     |                                 |                      |
|-------------------|---------------------|---------------------------------|----------------------|
| at a young age    | في سن صغير          | in conclusion                   | الخلاصة              |
| be known for      | مشهور بـ            | keep up                         | يساير - يواكب        |
| by the end of     | قبل نهاية           | move to                         | ينتقل إلي            |
| continue to rise  | يستمر في الارتفاع   | persuade ... to                 | يُقنع ... أن         |
| each other        | بعضهم البعض         | seem like                       | يبدو كما لو أن       |
| even less         | أقل بكثير           | talk to                         | يتحدث مع             |
| far easier        | أسهل بكثير          | teach ... about                 | يُدرس لـ ... عن      |
| far more          | أكثر بكثير          | teamwork skills                 | مهارات العمل الجماعي |
| find it difficult | يعاني - يواجه صعوبة | the country's official language | اللغة الرسمية للدولة |
| go on a tour      | يذهب في جولة        | young people                    | الشباب               |
| head out into     | يتوجه إلي داخل      |                                 |                      |

## PART III

## READING & LISTENING

### 1 Reading Texts

#### Costa Rica Expedition: Day 1

(SB page 36)

Hi! My name's Amira. And I'm **currently**<sup>(1)</sup> in Costa Rica where I'm going on a tour for young people. Today is only my second day here, but by the end of my time here, I will have visited every **corner**<sup>(2)</sup> of this **amazing**<sup>(3)</sup> country, seen a lot of its **incredible**<sup>(4)</sup> **biodiversity**<sup>(5)</sup> and spent some time staying with a family of native **inhabitants**<sup>(6)</sup> in the **rainforest**<sup>(7)</sup>. I'm so excited to get started!



Costa Rica **is located**<sup>(8)</sup> in Central America and I had to fly for about 24 hours to get here. When I arrived at the airport, I was so pleased to see that Emilia, our **guide**<sup>(9)</sup>, had come to **pick me up**<sup>(10)</sup> and take me to the hotel. We travelled by **public transport**<sup>(11)</sup> to the hotel together. Emilia said it would be far quicker than driving because there was so much traffic on the roads. Everyone speaks **Spanish**<sup>(12)</sup> here because it's the country's **official**<sup>(13)</sup> language. I'm finding it a bit difficult

(1) حالياً

(2) ركن

(3) مذهل

(4) خرافي - رائع

(5) التنوع البيولوجي

(6) السكان المحليين

(7) غابة مطيرة

(8) تقع

(9) مرشد

(10) يُقْبَل - يُوْضَل

(11) المواصلات العامة

(12) اللغة الإسبانية

(13) رسمي



to understand the type of Spanish they speak here because it's different to the Spanish I've learned, but I'm sure I'll **get used to**<sup>(14)</sup> it.

Tomorrow we're going **to head**<sup>(15)</sup> out into the rainforest for the first time. We don't have any **high-tech**<sup>(16)</sup> equipment with us – just our walking boots, **tents**<sup>(17)</sup> and sleeping bags and, of course, water bottles and **dried**<sup>(18)</sup> food. Costa Rica isn't a country that tourists come to in order to see **impressive**<sup>(19)</sup> **castles**<sup>(20)</sup> or ancient pyramids. **Instead**<sup>(21)</sup>, it's known for its **exotic**<sup>(22)</sup> birds and it's almost as famous for the **cute**<sup>(23)</sup> monkeys that sometimes come to see what the tourists on the beach are doing!

(14) يعتاد علي

(15) يتوجه

(16) ذو تقنية عالية

(17) خيام

(18) مجفف

(19) مبهر

(20) قلاع

(21) بدلاً من ذلك

(22) نادر - مذهل

(23) جذاب

### Letters to an online problem page from young people:

(SB page 38)

**A**

I'm really **struggling**<sup>(1)</sup> to understand everything in our maths lessons at the moment. I didn't use to have any problems, but for the last few weeks we've been doing far more **complicated**<sup>(2)</sup> things and I can't **keep up**<sup>(3)</sup>. Everyone else in the class seems to understand everything the teacher says, so I feel like I'm the only one who's finding it difficult. I know that telling my teacher about the problem would help, but there never seems to be enough time to ask questions at the end of the lesson, because we all have to leave quickly to get to our next lesson in time. Can you help me?



(1) يكافح - يناضل

(2) مُعقّد

(3) يساير - يواكب

(4) ينتقل إلى

(5) بعضهم البعض

(6) مهتم بـ

**B**

I **moved to**<sup>(4)</sup> a new town three months ago and I'm finding it really hard to make new friends. When I'm at school, it seems like everyone already knows **each other**<sup>(5)</sup> and nobody is **interested in**<sup>(6)</sup> making new friends. I have started going swimming in the evenings because I hoped



that I would meet other people, but nobody wants to talk to me there **either**<sup>(7)</sup>. I used to have lots of friends in the town where I used to live and I would go to see them almost every day after school, but now I spend most of my time at home. What can I do to make new friends?

(7) أيضاً

**'Schools should spend more time teaching students about conservation.' – Do you agree or disagree?**

(SB page 39)

In my opinion, schools should spend more time teaching students about the **importance**<sup>(1)</sup> of **conservation**<sup>(2)</sup>. It is far easier to **persuade**<sup>(3)</sup> people to get **involved in**<sup>(4)</sup> new projects when they are children and **teenagers**<sup>(5)</sup> than when they are **adults**<sup>(6)</sup>.

Learning about conservation at a young age may **lead to**<sup>(7)</sup> a **life-long**<sup>(8)</sup> **interest**<sup>(9)</sup> in it which will be very **beneficial**<sup>(10)</sup> for the environment.

A **further**<sup>(11)</sup> important **benefit**<sup>(12)</sup> of spending a **significant**<sup>(13)</sup> amount of time on the topic conservation in schools is that it shows students that their teachers and their school see conservation as an important **activity**<sup>(14)</sup>. **Indeed**<sup>(15)</sup>, conservation will become **increasingly**<sup>(16)</sup> important in the future as **global**<sup>(17)</sup> **temperatures**<sup>(18)</sup> continue to rise and there is even less of the **rainforest**<sup>(19)</sup> left on Earth.

The third and final benefit of teaching students about conservation is that they can **develop**<sup>(20)</sup> useful skills and **gain**<sup>(21)</sup> useful **knowledge**<sup>(22)</sup> while they are doing this. They can not only learn about the **biology**<sup>(23)</sup> of **eco-systems**<sup>(24)</sup>, for example, but they can also develop **practical**<sup>(25)</sup> skills for growing fruit and vegetables in an **environmentally-friendly**<sup>(26)</sup> way and **teamwork**<sup>(27)</sup> skills by doing these activities **together**<sup>(28)</sup>.

In **conclusion**<sup>(29)</sup>, it is clear that teaching students about conservation can have a very **positive effect**<sup>(30)</sup> on them. However, as I **explained**<sup>(31)</sup> above, the most important benefit is that it will help students to develop a life-long interest in conservation and give them the skills to **protect**<sup>(32)</sup> the environment.

(1) أهمية

(2) حفاظ - صيانة

(3) يُقنع

(4) يشارك في

(5) مرافقين

(6) البالغين

(7) يؤدي إلى

(8) مدي الحياة

(9) اهتمام

(10) مفيد

(11) أكثر

(12) فائدة

(13) هام - مؤثر

(14) نشاط

(15) بالفعل

(16) بشكل متزايد

(17) عالمي

(18) درجات الحرارة

(19) الغابات المطيرة

(20) يكتسب - يطور

(21) يكتسب

(22) معرفة

(23) علم الأحياء

(24) الأنظمة البيئية

(25) عملي - تطبيقي

(26) صديق للبيئة

(27) عمل جماعي

(28) معاً - سوياً

(29) خلاصة - خاتمة

(30) أثر إيجابي

(31) يوضح

(32) يحمي



## 2 Listening Text

**Friend :** So, you've just **got married**<sup>(1)</sup> and now you're living (SB page 37) away from home in a different city. How are you enjoying your new life so far ?

**Ali :** Well, the first week was far more difficult than I expected ...

**Friend :** Why do you think that was?

**Ali :** I don't know. When I was living at home, my parents used to wash my clothes, cook my meals and **tidy up**<sup>(2)</sup> after me. But now, my wife and I have to do all the housework ourselves!



- (1) يتزوج
- (2) يرتب / ينظم
- (3) يلاحظ
- (4) موطن
- (5) شبكة
- (6) متطور جدًا
- (7) مُحير / مُربك
- (8) يتجول
- (9) كلية / معهد

**Friend :** Those are things that are useful to learn how to do though, aren't they?

**Ali :** Definitely. Sometimes we struggle to do all the housework and we often order a pizza because we don't want to cook. But, all in all, I've got better at doing the housework since I left home. I think living away from home is really good because it teaches you how to be independent.



**Friend :** So, you used to live in a small town and now you're living in a big city. What's the biggest difference that you've **noticed**<sup>(3)</sup> ?

**Ali :** Probably, how people travel around. When I lived in my **hometown**<sup>(4)</sup>, I would ride my bike to school and back every day. There wasn't very much traffic on the roads, so it was fine. But here, there are far more cars on the road and I don't feel safe riding my bike, so I take public transport instead. There's a **network**<sup>(5)</sup> of local trains and it's very **high-tech**<sup>(6)</sup>. I found it a bit **confusing**<sup>(7)</sup> at first, but now I can **get around**<sup>(8)</sup> OK.

**Friend :** Sounds like you're really getting used to life in the big city now! Have you and your wife found it easy to make friends?

**Ali :** Well, we've only been here for a few weeks. I don't think we really talked to any new people for the first week that we were here, but then I met a couple of nice people who are doing the same **college**<sup>(9)</sup> course as me. Now we spend time together at the weekend; go out to a café or play video games together. It's great to meet new people.

**Friend :** Great! Well, let me wish you and your wife the best of luck with living away from home. It sounds like you're doing well.

**Ali :** Thank you.



# General Exercises on Units 7, 8 & 9

Collected from SB & WB

تدريبات مجمعة من كتاب الطالب وكتاب التدريبات

## • Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. Young children are not very ..... and need a lot of help and support.  
a. independent    b. well-know    c. deceived    d. ruined
2. Hi, Mum, the bus is late, could you ..... me up from the park ?  
a. take    b. put    c. give    d. pick
3. People in Scotland speak English, but you might ..... to understand them sometimes as their English sounds different.  
a. defend    b. struggle    c. resist    d. insist
4. There has been a big ..... in the number of people using mobile phones in recent years.  
a. determination    b. extension    c. expansion    d. decrease
5. The new hotel has lots of modern ....., including a gym and swimming pool.  
a. facilities    b. inventors    c. discoverers    d. innovators
6. Seoul in South Korea has one of the longest underground rail ..... in the world.  
a. paths    b. nets    c. works    d. networks
7. My grandmother often puts fruit in jars with lots of sugar to ..... them.  
a. reserve    b. preserve    c. deserve    d. serve
8. Judy hopes to get a ..... so that she can study at a really good university.  
a. scholarship    b. money    c. help    d. price
9. The train ..... at six o'clock, so we'd better go to the station now.  
a. left    b. leaves    c. has left    d. will have left
10. When Tarek was younger he ..... that he lived in a house by the sea !  
a. uses to wish    b. wishes    c. will wish    d. used to wish
11. .... in a bank when he was younger ?  
a. Is he working    b. Did he use to work  
c. Has he worked    d. Is he used to working
12. Dina's sister is ..... the same height as her !  
a. very    b. far    c. exactly    d. more
13. When the next season starts, a thousand tourists ..... the museum !  
a. will have visited    b. will be visited  
c. are going to visit    d. visit
14. My brother ..... when I do my homework and it makes me angry !  
a. is always singing    b. always sang  
c. is singing    d. used to sing





# UNIT 10

## The news

SB pages 42 : 51

WB pages 24 : 29

### Objectives :

- ✦ Reading:  
Online news stories
- ✦ Writing:  
A news report
- ✦ Listening:  
News stories
- ✦ Speaking:  
Presenting news stories

- ✦ Language:  
Past perfect and past perfect passive
- ✦ Life skills:  
Critical thinking: recognising facts and opinions ; Self-management: weighing up situations and taking the appropriate actions





## PART I VOCABULARY

### 1 Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

|                    |                       |                  |                    |
|--------------------|-----------------------|------------------|--------------------|
| broadcast -        | يذيع - إذاعة          | journalist(n)    | صحفي               |
| broadcast (v - n)  |                       | matter(ed) (v)   | يهم - يحدث تأثيراً |
| channel(n)         | قناة - قنال           | news channel     | قناة إخبارية       |
| correspondent(n)   | مراسل                 | newsreader(n)    | قارئ الأخبار       |
| deliberately (adv) | عمداً / عن قصد        | photographer(n)  | مصور فوتوغرافي     |
| digital nomad(n)   | رجالة رقمي            | programme(n)     | برنامج             |
| editor(n)          | رئيس التحرير          | question(ed) (v) | يتشكك في - يتحقق   |
| fact checker(n)    | مُتحقق حقائق          |                  | من مصداقية         |
| foreign            | مراسل أجنبي           | reporter(n)      | مراسل - صحفي       |
| correspondent      |                       | scene(n)         | مشهد - مكان        |
| headline(n)        | عنوان رئيسي (مأشبهت)  | search engine    | محرك البحث         |
| interview(ed) (v)  | يُحاور - يُجري مقابلة | source (n)       | مصدر - منشأ        |
| investigator(n)    | مُحقق                 |                  |                    |

### 2 Important Vocabulary المفردات الهامة

|                  |                     |                      |                     |
|------------------|---------------------|----------------------|---------------------|
| accurate(adj)    | دقيق                | on board (adj - adv) | على فئ              |
| admit(ted) (v)   | يُقر - يعترف بأن    | origin(n)            | أصل - منشأ          |
| alarm(n)         | إنذار - تنبيه       | originally(adv)      | أصلاً - في الأساس   |
| bomb(n)          | قنبلة               | perfect(adj)         | تام - نموذجي        |
| clear(adj)       | واضح                | photography(n)       | التصوير الفوتوغرافي |
| confirm(ed) (v)  | يؤكد / يثبت / يبرهن | point of view        | وجهة نظر            |
| crash(ed) (v)    | بصطدم               | politician(n)        | شخص سياسي           |
| digital(adj)     | رقمي                | press conference (n) | مؤتمر صحفي          |
| disaster(n)      | كارثة               | print(ed) (v)        | يطبع                |
| discovery(n)     | اكتشاف              | printing press(n)    | الصحافة المطبوعة    |
| fake(adj)        | مُزيف - كاذب        | professional(adj)    | مُحترف              |
| fear(ed) (v - n) | يخشى / يخاف - الخوف | properly(adj)        | بشكل مناسب          |
| find(n)          | اكتشاف              | range(n)             | سلسلة - مدى         |
| firefighter(n)   | رجل مطافي           | record(ed) (v - n)   | يُسجل - يسجل        |
| fix(ed) (v)      | يُصلح - يثبت        | responsible(adj)     | مسئول               |
| flame(n)         | اللهب               | select(ed) (v)       | يختار - ينتقي       |



|                 |                 |                   |                 |
|-----------------|-----------------|-------------------|-----------------|
| frequently(adv) | كثيراً          | serious(adj)      | خطير - جاد      |
| hold - held (v) | يتبلي - يؤمن بـ | story(n)          | خبر - قصة       |
| identity (n)    | هوية - شخصية    | talent(n)         | موهبة           |
| income(n)       | دخل             | traditional(adj)  | تقليدي          |
| inform(ed) (v)  | يبلغ - يُعلم    | trust(ed) (v - n) | يثق بـ - الثقة  |
| injury(n)       | إصابة           | truth(n)          | الحقيقة - الصدق |
| Lebanese(adj)   | لبناني          | unclear(adj)      | غير واضح        |
| meteorite(n)    | نيزك            | unreliable(adj)   | غير موثوق به    |
| news stories    | موضوعات الأخبار | zoom(ed) in (v)   | يُكبّر الصورة   |

### 3 Definitions تعريفات

| Memorise                            | Understand   |
|-------------------------------------|--|
| broadcast (v) يذيع                  | to send out a programme on TV or radio                                       |
| digital nomad رحلة رقمي             | a person who uses telecommunication technologies to earn a living يحقق دخلاً |
| editor(n) رئيس التحرير              | a person who is in charge of a newspaper or magazine مسئول عن                |
| foreign correspondent مراسل أجنبي   | a person who finds a news story in a different country                       |
| headline(n) عنوان رئيسي             | the titles of news stories عناوين  |
| interview (v) يُحاور - يُجري مقابلة | to ask someone questions   |
| investigator(n) مُحقق               | a person who tries to discover the facts of what happened                    |
| journalist(n) صحفي                  | a person who finds a news story and tells the public                         |
| news channel قناة إخبارية           | a television station where you can see news programmes محطة تلفزيونية        |
| newsreader(n) قارئ الأخبار          | someone who reads reports on a TV news programme                             |
| photographer(n) مصور فوتوغرافي      | a person who takes photographs, as a job or hobby                            |
| reporter(n) مراسل                   | a person who collects and tells the news for newspapers, radio or TV         |
| scene(n) مشهد - مكان                | a place where something has happened, perhaps a crime جريمة                  |



|               |             |   |
|---------------|-------------|---|
| search engine | مُحرك البحث | a computer programme that searches the internet for information |
| sense (n)     | معنى - مغزى | something that people can understand                            |
| source (n)    | مصدر        | the place something comes from or starts at                     |

## Exercise On Vocabulary

### • Understand

- Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

#### 1 Key vocabulary

- I always tell my sister that she doesn't have to ..... my news to the whole world! (الذكو ٢٠٢٣)  
a. cast      b. broadcast      c. film      d. shoot
- Egypt is working through diplomatic ..... to find a solution for the war in Sudan. (إجبا ٢٠٢٣)  
a. studies      b. stations      c. canals      d. channels
- It is better to deal with some problems at ..... or they will get more difficult. (الذكو ٢٠٢٣)  
a. purpose      b. source      c. site      d. location
- I'm sure he has said these things ..... to annoy me. (الشربين ٢٠٢٣)  
a. automatically      b. autonomously  
c. deliberately      d. accurately
- The intelligent ..... managed to identify who the criminal was. (البنوب ٢٠٢٣)  
a. editor      b. journalist      c. investigator      d. reporter
- A ..... must be honest in reporting pieces of news. (الطوان ٢٠٢٣)  
a. judge      b. photographer      c. journalist      d. digital nomad
- The play's opening ..... takes place in the court yard. (هيت سلسيل ٢٠٢٣)  
a. seen      b. scene      c. view      d. making
- Google is a ..... engine full of information and data about any subject. (النوبارية ٢٠٢٣)  
a. research      b. searching      c. search      d. researcher
- My uncle is a/an ..... . He collects and tells the news for newspapers, radio or TV. (السوهاج ٢٠٢٣)  
a. newsreader      b. reporter      c. photographer      d. interviewer
- It does not ..... to me whether he apologises or not. I have forgiven him. (سامحه)  
a. correspond      b. matter      c. search      d. broadcast



11. The ..... of articles, news stories are written in a special way so that they attract readers.  
a. sources      b. senses      c. scenes      d. headlines
12. We do not ..... our parents' advice as we are sure they love us.  
a. bury      b. tempt      c. question      d. erect
13. You need to follow this fitness ..... patiently if you want to lose weight.  
a. find      b. programme      c. search engine      d. necropolis
14. It is the role of a/an ..... to check everything that will be published in his or her newspaper.  
a. correspondent      b. investigator      c. prisoner      d. editor
15. A ..... has to pass strict language tests.  
a. newsreader      b. news channel      c. newspaper      d. a & c
16. .... make a lot of money from online business.  
a. Journalists      b. Judges      c. Digital nomads      d. Photographers
17. It is the job of a fact ..... to examine the facts in the reports before they are sent to the editor.  
a. reader      b. correspondent      c. reporter      d. checker
18. A TV ..... has to speak at least two foreign languages.  
a. correspondent      b. investigator      c. prisoner      d. nomad
19. I was ..... for the job of a tour guide, and I'm waiting for them to call me.  
a. broadcast      b. recognised      c. crept      d. interviewed
20. As a professional ....., he knows all about modern digital cameras.  
a. journalist      b. judge      c. digital nomad      d. photographer

## 2 Important vocabulary

21. Astronauts used digital cameras and ..... in to discover a meteorite. (الدلائل ٢٣-٢٢)  
a. roomed      b. loomed      c. zoomed      d. doomed
22. Hala has a ..... for music she will be a great musician. (القصة ٢٣-٢٢)  
a. planet      b. talent      c. visual      d. version
23. The doctor asked the patient to do some tests to ..... the diagnosis. (أبو حمص ٢٣-٢٢)  
a. confirm      b. create      c. select      d. fear
24. The player asked for a substitution as he suffered from a leg ..... (أبو المطامير ٢٣-٢٢)  
a. practice      b. breath      c. boredom      d. injury



25. Earthquakes and volcanoes are the most dangerous natural .....  
 a. disasters      b. reserves      c. beauty      d. views
26. This COVID-19 vaccine مصل is one of the most important ..... in the last ten years.  
 a. finds      b. programmes      c. search engines      d. necropolis
27. It is said that the satellite was destroyed when a ..... hit it.  
 a. tone      b. meteorite      c. speed      d. spacewalk
28. Every footballer dreams of being ..... for the national team.  
 a. tempted      b. created      c. selected      d. feared
29. The word "Algebra" is Arabic in .....  
 a. remains      b. barrier      c. origin      d. sense
30. Many well-known doctors attended the medical .....  
 a. spacewalk      b. conference      c. permission      d. point of view
31. Titles of news ..... are written in a way that attracts readers' attention.  
 a. routes      b. addresses      c. stories      d. conferences
32. It is polite to respect other people's .....  
 a. spacewalk      b. conference      c. permission      d. points of view
33. My sister always ..... the same opinions as me.  
 a. launches      b. zooms      c. holds      d. matters
34. I ..... that I might not have enough time to help you.  
 a. sorry      b. create      c. select      d. fear

### 3 Definitions

35. The place something comes from or starts at is the ..... (الزيتون ٢٠٢٣)  
 a. interview      b. source      c. broadcast      d. report
36. A/An ..... is a person who is in charge of a newspaper. (دار السلام ٢٠٢٣)  
 a. editor      b. writer      c. correspondent      d. newsreader
37. A ..... is a computer programme that searches the internet for information.  
 a. search engine      b. news channel  
 c. foreign correspondent      d. digital nomad
38. A ..... is the titles of a news story.  
 a. stage      b. scene      c. headline      d. drum
39. To ..... is to send out a programme on TV or radio.  
 a. broadcast      b. creep up      c. interview      d. edit



## PART II VOCABULARY STUDY

### 1 Verbal Collocations متلازمات لفظية

|               |                              |                      |                |               |                    |
|---------------|------------------------------|----------------------|----------------|---------------|--------------------|
| <b>check</b>  | the facts                    | يؤثق الحقائق         | <b>make</b>    | a discovery   | يكتشف              |
| <b>come</b>   | true                         | يتحقق                |                | a video       | يُعد فيديو         |
| <b>create</b> | a search engine              | يُصمم محرك بحث       | <b>offer</b>   | the chance    | يُمنح الفرصة       |
|               | a news website               | ينشئ موقعاً إخبارياً | <b>present</b> | a news report | يُقدم تقرير إخباري |
| <b>have</b>   | a special talent             | لديه موهبة خاصة      | <b>produce</b> | a news report | يُعد تقرير إخباري  |
|               | the chance                   | لديه الفرصة          | <b>share</b>   | opinions      | يتفق في الرأي      |
| <b>hold</b>   | an opinion / a point of view | يتبنى وجهة نظر       |                |               |                    |

### 2 Synonyms مترادفات

| Word         | Synonym (=Meaning)                      |
|--------------|---|
| deliberately | عمداً/ عن قصد                           |
| question     | يتشكك - يتحقق من مصداقية                |
| confirm      | يؤكد / يثبت / يبرهن                     |
| confirm      | يعترف                                   |
| foreign      | أجنبي                                   |
| foreign      | غير معروف - غير مألوف                   |
| foreign      | غير ملائم                               |
| investigate  | يُحقق - يتقصي                           |
|              | intentionally, on purpose, purposefully |
|              | doubt, raise doubts about, suspect      |
|              | verify, authenticate                    |
|              | assert                                  |
|              | alien, non-native                       |
|              | unfamiliar, unknown, strange            |
|              | irrelevant, inappropriate               |
|              | look into, detect                       |

### 3 Antonyms المتضادات

| Word         | Antonym (= Opposite)          |
|--------------|-------------------------------|
| deliberately | عمداً/ عن قصد                 |
| confirm      | يؤكد / يثبت / يبرهن           |
| confirm      | يعترف                         |
| foreign      | أجنبي                         |
| foreign      | غير معروف - غير مألوف         |
| foreign      | غير ملائم                     |
| zoom in      | يُكَبِّر الصورة               |
|              | by mistake, accidentally      |
|              | refute, rebut                 |
|              | deny, refute, rebut, disprove |
|              | domestic, local               |
|              | familiar                      |
|              | relevant                      |
|              | zoom out                      |
|              | بالصدفة                       |
|              | يدحض                          |
|              | يُنكِر - يدحض                 |
|              | محلي                          |
|              | مألوف - معروف                 |
|              | ملائم                         |
|              | يُصَغِّر الصورة               |



| broadcast          |                             |  |
|--------------------|-----------------------------|--|
| broadcast (v)      | يذيع                        | - The match is broadcast on this channel.            |
| broadcast (n)      | إذاعة                       | - There's a live broadcast of the conference.        |
| broadcaster (n)    | مذيع                        | - He is a well-known radio broadcaster.              |
| broadcasting (n)   | المجال الإذاعي              | - My brother has a job in broadcasting.              |
| correspondent      |                             |  |
| correspond (v)     | يُرَاسِل                    | - We correspond regularly.                           |
| correspondent (n)  | مُرَاسِل                    | - She works as a correspondent for a news channel.   |
| correspondence (n) | المراسلة - التناغم          | - Correspondence is one of the secretary's duties.   |
| editor             |                             |  |
| edit (v)           | يُعَدِّل - يحرر             | - I had to edit the essay.                           |
| edition (n)        | طَبْعَة - نُسخة             | - The second edition of the book has come out today. |
| editor (n)         | رئيس التحرير                | - The editor refused to publish my article.          |
| find               |                             |  |
| find (v)           | يجد                         | - I found a good clothes shop in the city centre.    |
| find (n)           | اكتشاف                      | - This medicine for virus C is a find.               |
| findings (n)       | نتائج                       | - The findings of the research surprised us.         |
| interview          |                             |  |
| interview (v)      | يُحاوِر - يُجَرِّي مقابلة   | - The HR is interviewing some applicants tomorrow.   |
| interview (n)      | مقابلة - حوار               | - I have a job interview today.                      |
| interviewee (n)    | المُحاوِر - الضيف           | - The interviewee didn't expect to get the job.      |
| interviewer (n)    | مُحاوِر - مُجَرِّي المقابلة | - The interviewer liked my CV.                       |



| investigator      |                      |  |
|-------------------|----------------------|--|
| investigate (v)   | يُحقّق - يستجوب      | - The police are investigating the crime.                |
| investigation (n) | تحقيق - تَقْصِي      | - The investigations have continued for two weeks.       |
| investigator (n)  | مُحقّق               | - The investigators have found important evidence. أدلة. |
| journalist        |                      |  |
| journal (n)       | صحيفة - مفكرة يوميات | - He is a reporter for a famous journal.                 |
| journalism (n)    | الصحافة              | - He works in journalism.                                |
| journalist (n)    | صحفي                 | - He is a journalist.                                    |

## 5 Expressions & Idioms تعبيرات و مصطلحات

|                  |                       |  |                          |
|------------------|-----------------------|--|--------------------------|
| a dream start    | بداية رائعة           | NASA = National Aeronautics and Space Administration | وكالة الفضاء الأمريكية   |
| a wider range of | مجال أوسع من          | press conference                                     | مؤتمر صحفي               |
| be chosen for    | يتم اختياره لـ        | question what we read                                | نتحقق من مصداقية ما نقرأ |
| for the day      | لمدة يوم واحد - اليوم | suffer an injury                                     | يشكو من إصابة            |
| gaming record    | يسجل الألعاب          | top scorer   | هَدَّاف                  |
| in charge of     | مسئول عن              |  |                          |
| main income      | الدخل الرئيسي         |  |                          |
| national team    | المنتخب الوطني        |  |                          |

## 6 Verb + Preposition فعل + حرف جر

|               |                |                |                                |
|---------------|----------------|----------------|--------------------------------|
| accept ... as | يقبل بـ ... كـ | send ... out   | ينبعث منه ... - يُطلق ...      |
| care about    | يهتم بـ        | share ... with | يُحكي عن ... لـ - يشارك ... مع |
| crash into    | يصطدم بـ       | stay up        | يسهر                           |
| hear of/about | يسمع عن - يعرف | turn to        | يتحول إلي - يغيّر إلي          |
| look for      | يبحث عن        | upload ... to  | يرفع ... علي                   |
| look into     | يُحقّق في      | zoom in        | يُكبّر الصورة                  |
| play for      | يلعب لـ        |                |                                |

## 7 Clear the confusion لاحظ الفرق

### channel - canal

• channel (n)

قناة (تليفزيونية)

- There is an exciting film being shown on channel 2 now.



• **canal / channel (n)**

- The Suez Canal is very important to both Egypt and the whole world. (قناة (مجري مائي)
- This irrigation **channel** carries water to our fields. (الري)
- لاحظ أن **canal** (قناة صناعية يحفرها الإنسان بينما **channel**) (قناة مائية طبيعية).

**nomad - digital nomad**

- **nomad (n)** (بدوئي (ينتمي لقبيلة من البدو الرحل الذين ينتقلون من مكان لآخر لرعي حيواناتهم)
- In the past, most Arab tribes **were nomads**. (القبائل)
- **digital nomad (n)** (رجالة رقمي (شخص يعمل من منزله لجهات مختلفة علي الإنترنت)
- He earns a lot of money as a digital **nomad**.

**headline - title - address**

- **headline (n)** (عنوان رئيسي (التقرير اخباري أو موضوع في صحيفة)
- Salah's news always makes the **headlines**.
- **title (n)** (عنوان (كتاب - مسرحية - رواية / مقال ...)
- I nearly know all the **titles** of Naguib Mahfouz's works.
- **title (n)** (لقب (شخص)
- 'Sir', 'Mr', 'Dr' and 'Professor' are all **titles**.
- **title (n)** (مسمى الوظيفة)
- The **title** of a person who examines patients is 'Dr'.
- **address (n)** (عنوان (مكان المعيشة / العمل)
- I don't know your new **address**.
- **address (n)** (عنوان (الالكتروني)
- I sent him the **address** of my new website.

**photographer - painter**

- **photographer (n)** (مصور فوتوغرافي (يلتقط صور بالكاميرا)
- As a **photographer**, you need a high-tech digital camera.
- **painter = artist (n)** (رسام / فنان - نقاش)
- I want to become a famous **painter**.

**Exercise On Vocabulary Study**

- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d :

1. The Judge was sure that Ali killed his neighbour deliberately, not ..... , so he was sentenced to death.
  - a. purposely
  - b. by design
  - c. intentionally
  - d. accidentally (المقصود)
2. The ..... of the writer's first novel is "The Storm".
  - a. address
  - b. title
  - c. line
  - d. rank (الواسطي)
3. Can you give me your email ..... , please?
  - a. title
  - b. dress
  - c. address
  - d. headline (السوان)



4. To 'investigate' is a synonym of to '.....'.  
a. navigate      b. innovate      c. admit      d. look into
5. To 'confirm' is antonymous with to '.....'.  
a. deny      b. verify      c. authenticate      d. assert
6. When you question something, this means you ..... it.  
a. verify      b. doubt      c. ask      d. certify
7. I haven't heard ..... this player before. What club does he play for ?  
a. from      b. of      c. about      d. b & c
8. Ayman and I ..... the same opinions.  
a. have      b. share      c. play      d. a & b
9. I hope that all my hopes will ..... true one day.  
a. have      b. share      c. play      d. come
10. "I need to do some tests to confirm my diagnosis التشخيص." In this context, the verb 'confirm' can be replaced by .....  
a. refuse      b. refute      c. verify      d. a & b
11. "Egypt encourages foreign investment, especially that from Arab countries." The adjective 'foreign' in this utterance is an antonym of .....  
a. domestic      b. familiar      c. alien      d. unfamiliar
12. This car has crashed ..... a tree.  
a. into      b. for      c. out      d. with
13. When you stay ....., you don't get enough sleep.  
a. in late      b. in early      c. up early      d. up late
14. Each ..... hopes to give a good impression in order to get the job.  
a. interviewee      b. interviewer  
c. interview      d. interviews
15. When we send a letter, we write the ..... on the envelope.  
a. headline      b. address      c. title      d. entitle
16. He works in a factory. His job ..... is 'Engineer'.  
a. headline      b. address      c. title      d. entitle

### PART III

## READING & LISTENING

### Reading Texts

#### News stories

(SB page 42)

#### A - Where do you get your news from?

It seems that today less than 50% of us get our news<sup>(1)</sup> from traditional<sup>(2)</sup> sources<sup>(3)</sup> like newspapers and television.

(1) خبر - اخبار

(2) تقليدي

(3) مصادر



Everyone is turning to the internet and **social media**<sup>(4)</sup> for news, and some **experts**<sup>(5)</sup> **fear**<sup>(6)</sup> that we might **accept**<sup>(7)</sup> some **unreliable**<sup>(8)</sup> **news stories**<sup>(9)</sup> as fact because we read social media **sites**<sup>(10)</sup> which **share**<sup>(11)</sup> our opinions. But is this true? **Search engines**<sup>(12)</sup> **lead**<sup>(13)</sup> us to a wider **range**<sup>(14)</sup> of sources which means we can read the news from many different places. However, we should always **question**<sup>(15)</sup> what we read and never just accept it as true.



- وسائل التواصل الاجتماعي (4)  
خبراء (5)  
يخشى (6)  
يقبل (7)  
غير متوقع به (8)  
موضوعات الأخبار (9)  
مواقع (10)  
يتشارك (11)  
محررات البحث (12)  
يقود - يؤدي (13)  
سلسلة (14)  
يتشكك - يتحقق من مصداقية (15)

### B - School Report

Secondary school students in the **UK**<sup>(1)</sup> have had **the chance**<sup>(2)</sup> to become news **reporters**<sup>(3)</sup> for the day. Students **created**<sup>(4)</sup> a news website and **produced**<sup>(5)</sup> a news **report**<sup>(6)</sup>. They **selected**<sup>(7)</sup> students to be reporters and **photographers**<sup>(8)</sup> who went out to look for interesting news in their **community**<sup>(9)</sup>. When they had **interviewed**<sup>(10)</sup> people and had written their stories, the reporters gave their work to the **newsreaders**<sup>(11)</sup> who then **recorded**<sup>(12)</sup> the news. The videos were **uploaded**<sup>(13)</sup> to the news website and some were **broadcast**<sup>(14)</sup> on local television.



(SB page 43)

- المملكة المتحدة (1)  
فرصة (2)  
مراسلين (3)  
ينشئ (4)  
يبتج (5)  
تقرير (6)  
يختار - ينتقي (7)  
مصور فوتوغرافي (8)  
المجتمع (9)  
يُحاور (10)  
قارئ الأخبار (11)  
يُسجل (12)  
يرفع على الإنترنت (13)  
يذيع (14)

### C - Facts - do they matter?

Saeed Yousuf is a **fact checker**<sup>(1)</sup>. He **checks**<sup>(2)</sup> the facts in reports before they are sent to the **editor**<sup>(3)</sup>. Saeed explains that news stories can use both facts and opinions, but it must be **clear**<sup>(4)</sup> which is which. Facts can be checked, but opinions are the **points of view**<sup>(5)</sup> **held**<sup>(6)</sup> by the writer. He believes that it's very important for **the public**<sup>(7)</sup> to **trust**<sup>(8)</sup> the information in



(SB page 43)

- مفتضي حقائق (1)  
يلتحق من (2)  
رئيس التحرير (3)  
واضح (4)  
وجهات نظر (5)  
يتبنى - يؤمن بـ (6)  
الجمهور - العامة (7)  
يثق بـ (8)



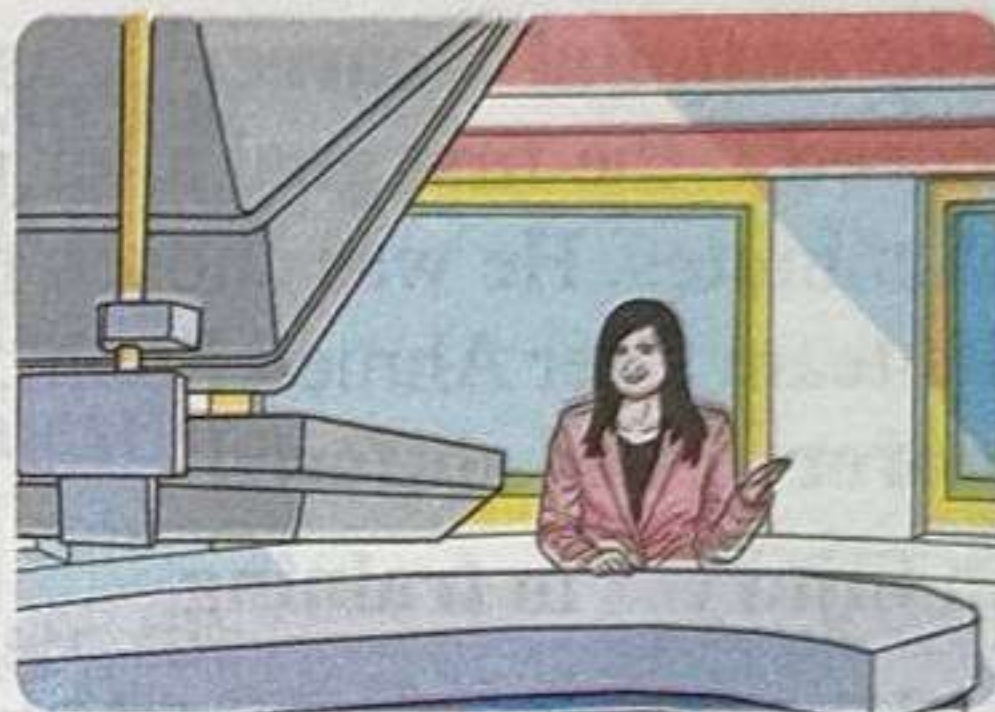
the story<sup>(9)</sup>, but some newspapers, he **admits**<sup>(10)</sup> are better at checking facts than others. It can cause **serious**<sup>(11)</sup> problems if newspapers **print**<sup>(12)</sup> stories without checking the information carefully first.

- (9) خبر  
(10) يُقر - يعترف بأن  
(11) خطير  
(12) يطبع

(WB page 24)

**Dalia** : Hi there Hoda. How are you ?

**Hoda** : I'm tired! I stayed up late to watch a programme about Steve Sherwood, that businessman who's been in the news recently. The problem is that it was broadcast really late on Channel 6.



**Dalia** : Ah yes, I heard about that story. He created a search engine which kept all the personal information of the people who used it, didn't he? A lot of people have complained about this.

**Hoda** : Yes, but the reporter who was chosen to interview the man hadn't checked out his sources properly and seemed to have a lot of wrong information.

## A fake news story!

(WB page 24)

### A gaming record !

Astronauts have made yet another amazing **discovery**<sup>(1)</sup> in **space**<sup>(2)</sup>. During a **recent**<sup>(3)</sup> **space walk**<sup>(4)</sup> to **fix**<sup>(5)</sup> part of a **satellite**<sup>(6)</sup>, which had been damaged after a **meteorite**<sup>(7)</sup> had hit it, they saw an **unexpected**<sup>(8)</sup> **shape**<sup>(9)</sup> on the moon. Using their **onboard**<sup>(10)</sup> **digital**<sup>(11)</sup> cameras, they **zoomed in**<sup>(12)</sup> to **discover**<sup>(13)</sup> what appeared to be a plane, which used to carry **bombs**<sup>(14)</sup> during **World War II**<sup>(15)</sup> and had **crashed**<sup>(16)</sup> into the moon. After reporting **the find**<sup>(17)</sup>, **NASA**<sup>(18)</sup> **confirmed**<sup>(19)</sup> that there are still 124 planes which were lost during the Second World War, and they believe this may be one of them.



- (1) اكتشاف  
(2) الفضاء  
(3) حديث  
(4) سير في الفضاء  
(5) يُصلَح  
(6) قمر صناعي  
(7) نيزك  
(8) غير مُتَوَقَّع  
(9) شكل - شيء  
(10) علي مَن  
(11) رقمي  
(12) يُكَبِّر الصورة  
(13) يكتشف  
(14) قنابل  
(15) الحرب العالمية الثانية  
(16) يصطدم  
(17) اكتشاف  
(18) وكالة الفضاء الأمريكية  
(19) يؤكد



## Young footballer achieves his dream

(WB page 25)

Last night, 19-year-old Amir Hamdi finally **achieved**<sup>(1)</sup> a dream he had had since the age of 6 - to play for his national team. It was a **dream start**<sup>(2)</sup> to his **international**<sup>(3)</sup> **career**<sup>(4)</sup>, as he **scored**<sup>(5)</sup> the first goal after just 15 minutes. He was chosen for the team after Ahmed Sobhi, top **scorer**<sup>(6)</sup>, had **suffered**<sup>(7)</sup> an **injury**<sup>(8)</sup> in **training**<sup>(9)</sup>.



He said after the match that it was a dream **come true**<sup>(10)</sup>. Although at school, when he was a student, his teachers **frequently**<sup>(11)</sup> had told him that he had a special **talent**<sup>(12)</sup>, but he had never believed he could be a **professional**<sup>(13)</sup> footballer.

- (1) يحقق
- (2) بداية رائعة
- (3) دولي
- (4) مهنة
- (5) يُحرز
- (6) هداف
- (7) يعاني
- (8) إصابة
- (9) التدريب
- (10) يتحقق
- (11) غالباً
- (12) موهبة خاصة
- (13) مُحترف

## 2 Listening Text

### News stories

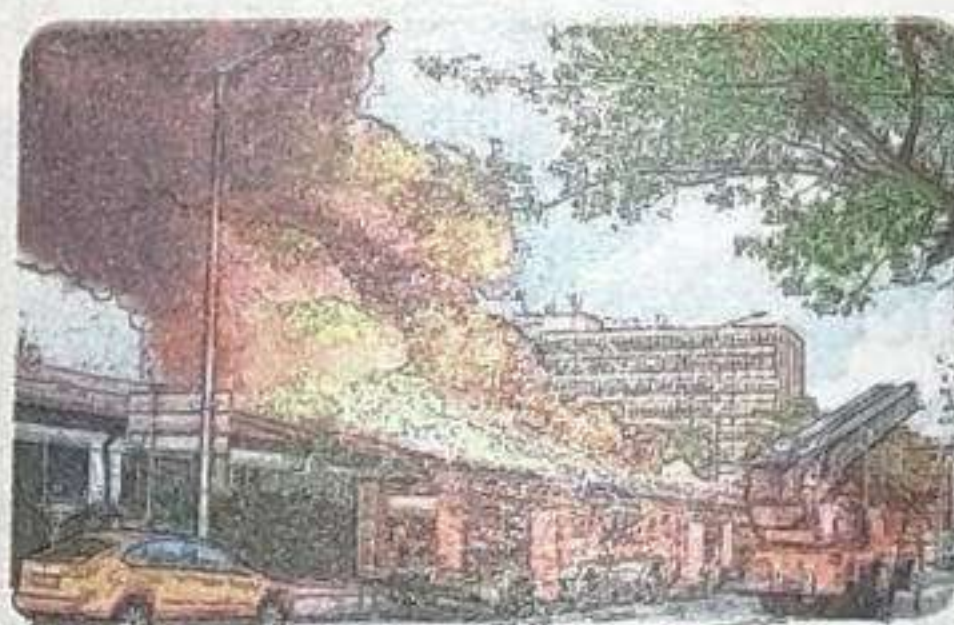
(SB page 44)

Good morning. Here are today's **headlines**<sup>(1)</sup> on Monday, 5<sup>th</sup> October.

A fire started in a supermarket late last night and 20 firefighters are still at the scene. Investigators say it is **unclear**<sup>(2)</sup> how the fire began, but police think it had been started **deliberately**<sup>(3)</sup>. The police and fire services had been called earlier in the evening, but they left when everything appeared to be Ok. At the time they believed it was yet another **false alarm**<sup>(4)</sup>.

At **midnight**<sup>(5)</sup>, a woman phoned again and said she had seen **flames**<sup>(6)</sup> at the back of the supermarket, and by the time the firefighters arrived the fire had moved to the front of the shop.

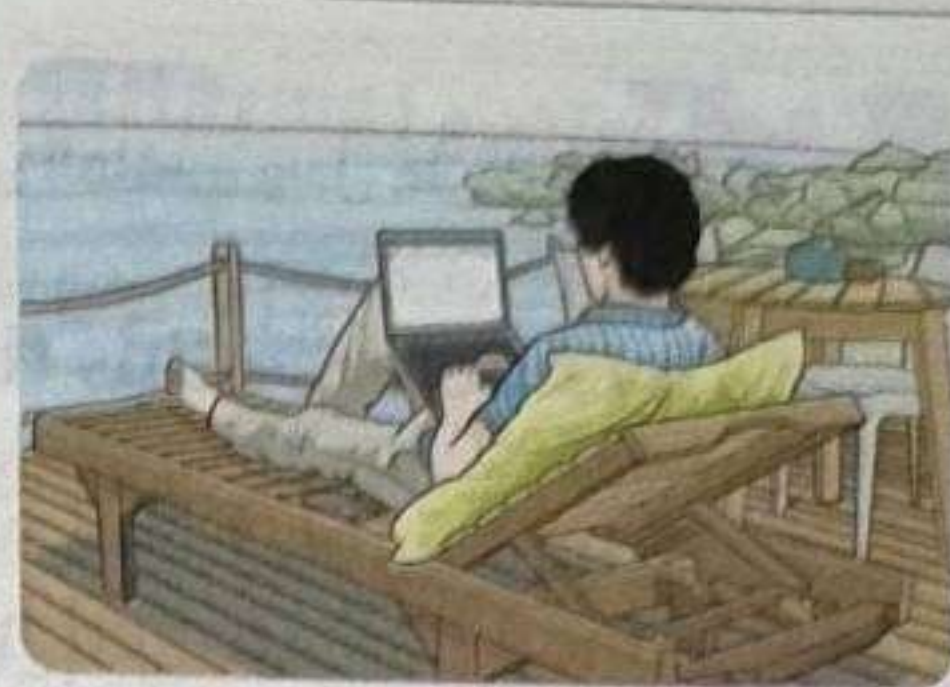
A **Lebanese**<sup>(7)</sup> **photographer**<sup>(8)</sup> has won a top **photography competition**<sup>(9)</sup> for his



- (1) عناوين رئيسية
- (2) غير واضح
- (3) عمداً
- (4) انذار مزيف
- (5) منتصف الليل
- (6) ألسنة اللهب
- (7) لبناني
- (8) مصور
- (9) مسابقة تصوير



photo of a desert **sunrise**<sup>(10)</sup>. Twenty-two-year old, Marwan Hamed told journalists that he had used an old digital camera to take his photo and was surprised that it had looked so good. Marwan entered his first photo competition when he was only eight years old after he had been given a book about photography by his uncle. He didn't win that time, but he has continued to take photos and is now working as a **professional**<sup>(11)</sup> photographer for a news channel. Antigua and Barbuda is the latest country to offer digital nomads, people who can work anywhere in the world on their computer, the **opportunity**<sup>(12)</sup> to live and work there for two years.



(10) شروق الشمس

(11) محترف

(12) فرصة

(13) الدخل الرئيسي

(14) سياحة

(15) جزر البحر الكاريبي

(16) مثالي / رائع

Until Covid-19 arrived, the country's **main income**<sup>(13)</sup> had been **tourism**<sup>(14)</sup>, but now with people having fewer holidays, the government has offered digital nomads a fantastic opportunity to enjoy life on their **Caribbean islands**<sup>(15)</sup>. Our Caribbean correspondent, Melody Smith, told us if you want relaxing place to work, then this is **perfect**<sup>(16)</sup>.

## PART IV

## LANGUAGE

1

### Past Perfect Simple : Active & Passive

الماضي التام البسيط : المعلوم والمجهول

|   |  |
|---|--|
| <b>Affirmation &amp; Negation</b><br>الإثبات والنفي | <b>Subj. + had / hadn't + p.p. ...</b><br>- He <b>had done</b> the shopping before returning home.<br>- Mum <b>hadn't prepared</b> lunch by midday.  |
| <b>Yes / No Q.</b><br>السؤال بـ (هل)                | <b>Had + subj. + p.p. ... ?</b><br>- <b>Had</b> he <b>done</b> the shopping before returning home ?  |
| <b>Wh-, Q.</b><br>السؤال بأداة استفهام              | <b>Q.W. + had + subj. + p.p. ... ?</b><br>- What <b>had</b> he <b>done</b> before returning home ?   |
| <b>Passive</b><br>المبنى للمجهول                    | <b>Obj. + had + been + p.p. ... ?</b><br>- I <b>had done</b> the shopping before I went home. (معلوم)<br>- The shopping <b>had been done</b> (by me) before I went home. (مجهول)<br>- After she <b>had cooked</b> lunch, she took a rest. (معلوم)<br>- After lunch <b>had been cooked</b> (by her), she took a rest. (مجهول) |



## Usage

١ يُستخدم الماضي التام البسيط للتعبير عن حدث تم قبل وقت معين في الماضي، ويدل على ذلك تعبيرات مثل :

تعبير زمني دال على وقت مُعين في الماضي + **by / before / this time**

- ex. - By midnight, I had written two articles.  
- Ahmed had arrived home before lunchtime yesterday.

٢ يُستخدم الماضي التام البسيط للتعبير عن حدث تم قبل وقوع حدث آخر في الماضي.

- ex. - First, I sent 20 invitations. Then, I left the office.  
= I had sent 20 invitations before I left the office.

٣ يُستخدم الماضي التام البسيط للتعبير عن حدث تم وكان له أثر على حدث آخر في الماضي (الأثر ناتج عن احتمال الحدث الأول).

- ex. - He had eaten too much food, so he didn't eat any dessert.  
= He didn't eat any dessert because he had eaten too much food.

## Time Clauses العبارات الزمنية

١ لاحظ استخدام الروابط الزمنية مع أزمنة الماضي :

| Time connector الرابطة الزمنية  | Time clause العبارة الزمنية  | Main clause الجملة الرئيسية     |
|---|------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| by the time / في الوقت الذي /<br>when / عندما / before قبل  | ماضي بسيط +<br>(حدث ثان)     | ماضي تام بسيط +<br>(حدث أول)    |
| after / بمجرد أن / as soon as بمجرد أن /<br>once / بمجرد أن / the moment عندما /<br>when في اللحظة التي | ماضي تام بسيط +<br>(حدث أول) | ماضي بسيط +<br>(حدث ثان)        |
| - It was only when / فقط عندما<br>- It wasn't until / بعد   | ماضي تام +<br>(حدث أول)      | + that<br>ماضي بسيط (حدث ثان) + |

- ex. - Before I arrived home, it had rained for two hours.  
- After she had worked in the company for 15 years, she became the manager.  
- It was only when I had taken a rest that I began to write the report.

٢ لاحظ استخدام (until - till) :

ماضي تام past perfect + حتى / لغاية until / till + ماضي بسيط (منفي غالبًا) past simple

- ex. - I didn't watch TV until / till I had done the housework.

٣ يُستخدم (inf. + ing) بعد كل من (after / before) في حال عدم وجود فاعل :

- ex. - After having lunch, I went back to my office.  
- Before going back to my office, I had had lunch.



٤ لاحظ استخدام (Having) :

(معلوم). ماضى بسيط **Having + p.p. .... + , + past simple**

ex. - Having slept for eight hours, I started to feel energetic.

(مجهول) **Having + been + p.p. ... + past simple.**

ex. - Having been punished, he didn't come late again.

٥ لاحظ استخدام الماضى التام مع الظروف التالية بمعنى (لم يكـد ..... حتى) :

ماضى بسيط **Subj. + had + no sooner + p.p. .... + than + past simple**

**Subj. + had + hardly / scarcely / barely + p.p. .... + when / before**  
ماضى بسيط **+ past simple**

ex. - I had no sooner finished the report than I gave it to the secretary.  
- I had scarcely finished the report when / before I gave it to the secretary.

ماضى بسيط **No sooner + had + subj. + p.p. .... + than + past simple**

**Hardly / Scarcely / Barely + had + subj. + p.p. .... + when / before**  
ماضى بسيط **+ past simple**

ex. - No sooner had I finished the report than I gave it to the secretary.  
- Hardly had I finished the report when / before I gave it to the secretary.

### ملاحظات هامة Notes for advanced level

١ لاحظ استخدام (inf. + ing) فى بداية الجملة بدلاً من (Because + فاعل + فعل) :

ex. - Having his own car, it was easy for him to travel a long way to work every day.

= Because he had his own car, ...

٢ عند ذكر توقيت محدد لوقوع الحدث فإن الماضى البسيط يمكن أن يحل محل الماضى التام (كلاهما صحيح) خاصة مع (after / before)

ex. - She did (had done) the shopping at nine yesterday before she returned home at ten.



## 2 Past Simple Tense : Active end Passive

الماضي البسيط : المعلوم والمجهول

في الجزء التالي سيتم تذكير الطالب بتكوين واستخدامات الماضي البسيط، وذلك لارتباطه بزمان الماضي التام في الشرح والتدريبات

تنويه

|                                  |  |
|----------------------------------|--|
| <b>Affirmation</b><br>الإثبات    | ...التصريف الثاني s.c. + الفاعل Subj.<br>- Omar <b>played</b> tennis yesterday.<br>- Sama <b>ate</b> two apples for lunch.   |
| <b>Negation</b><br>النفي         | <b>Subj. + did not (didn't) + inf. ... ?</b><br>- Omar <b>didn't</b> play squash yesterday.<br>- Sama <b>didn't</b> eat two apples for lunch.  |
| <b>Passive</b><br>المبنى للمجهول | <b>Obj. + was / were + p.p. ... ?</b><br>- Omar <b>played</b> tennis yesterday. (معلوم)<br>- Tennis <b>was played</b> (by Omar) yesterday. (مجهول)<br>- Sama <b>ate</b> two apples for lunch. (معلوم)<br>- Two apples <b>were eaten</b> (by Sama) for lunch. (مجهول) |

## Uses الاستخدامات

استخدم الماضي البسيط في الحالات التالية:

١ التعبير عن حدث بدأ وانتهى في الماضي :

ex. - I **ate** fish for lunch yesterday.

٢ سرد مواقف أو قصص وقعت في الماضي :

ex. - I **returned** home at two. I **had** a shower. Then, I **had** my lunch with my family. After that, I **went** to bed.

٣ بعد (if) في الحالة الشرطية الثانية :

ex. - If I **earned** enough money, I'd buy a modern car.

٤ لاحظ :

أ. جملة الماضي البسيط بعد (I wish) تعبر عن تمني في المضارع :

ex. - I **wish** my father **earned** more money.

(والذي لا يحصل علي مال كاف و أتمني العكس !)

ب. جملة الماضي البسيط بعد (I would rather) تعبر عن عدم رضا أو رفض (لشيء في المضارع):

ex. - I'd rather you **didn't** ask me to lend you money.

(يعني ذلك أنني لا أريد أن أقرضك أي نقود !)

ج. جملة الماضي البسيط بعد (It is time) تعبر عن تذكير أو لوم :

ex. - It is time you **returned** the book to the library. (المتحدث هنا يلوم أو يذكّر)



## ملاحظات للمتفوقين Notes for advanced level

١. لابد من استخدام فعل مساعد قبل الفاعل عند بدء الجملة بظروف التكرار التي تحمل معني النفي مثل

(never / rarely / seldom / little ....) :

ex. - She rarely got up late. (Rarely ...)

- Rarely did she get up late.

٢. في حالة وجود تعبير زمني يدل علي الماضي بعد (I wish / I'd rather / It's time) استخدم بعدهم الماضي التام (had + p.p.) وليس الماضي البسيط :

ex. - I'd rather you had finished the report last Friday.

## General Exercise On Language

☆ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1 Getting started: Check what you have learnt

- David bought his new villa because he ..... money. (رشيد ٢٠٢٣)  
a. has saved      b. was saving      c. had saved      d. save
- The editor had checked all the headlines before he ..... the stories to the printers. (الدلتجات ٢٠٢٣)  
a. sent      b. send      c. sends      d. have sent
- As soon as she returned home, she realised that she ..... her watch in her office. (رشيد ٢٠٢٣)  
a. had been left      b. will leave      c. has left      d. had left
- Once all their questions ..... answered, the journalists left. (الدلتجات ٢٠٢٣)  
a. have      b. had been      c. are      d. been
- Murad missed the train. When he ..... the station, the train ..... (النوبارية ٢٠٢٣)  
a. arrived / had left      b. had arrived / left  
c. arrives / leaves      d. arriving / had left
- When I got home, I ..... that somebody had broken into my flat. (ادكو ٢٠٢٣)  
a. discover      b. have discovered  
c. had discovered      d. discovered
- The car ..... until its engine had broken down. (ابو المطامير ٢٠٢٣)  
a. wasn't sold      b. didn't sell  
c. hasn't sold      d. won't be sold
- The secretary left the office after ..... her jobs. (المرج ٢٠٢٣)  
a. finish      b. had finished      c. finishing      d. finished
- Before I arrived at school, the lesson ..... (الزيتون ٢٠٢٣)  
a. has started      b. is started      c. had started      d. starting



10. I ..... all about my homework until my friend told me about it.  
 a. had forgotten    b. forgotten    c. have forgotten    d. forget (السؤال ٢٠٢٣)
11. I didn't go with you to the cinema because I ..... that film.  
 a. already see    b. have already seen (الجمالية ٢٠٢٣)  
 c. had already seen    d. didn't see

## 2 Special cases

12. No sooner ..... the thief see the police than he ran away. (الرحمانية ٢٠٢٣)  
 a. do    b. does    c. had    d. did
13. After I'd stayed for three months in London, I ..... Londoners  
 accent. (المصرية ٢٠٢٣)  
 a. used to    b. am used to  
 c. got used to    d. was used to
14. Having ....., the criminal was sent to prison. (الدفو ٢٠٢٣)  
 a. arresting    b. being arrested    c. been arrested    d. arrested
15. I thought I had finished my homework, but I realized I ..... the  
 last page. (الزيتون ٢٠٢٣)  
 a. has forgotten    b. was forgotten  
 c. forget    d. had forgotten
16. When I came home, I realized that I ..... my wallet. (طما ٢٠٢٣)  
 a. had lost    b. was lost    c. losing    d. loss
17. When I arrived home, I ..... out that a thief had broken into my flat.  
 (ساقلة ٢٠٢٣)  
 a. find    b. had found    c. have found    d. found
18. The ancient Egyptians believed that there was life after .....  
 (ساقلة ٢٠٢٣)  
 a. they die    b. they had died    c. death    d. b & c
19. .... his answers carefully, he realized that he had made  
 a mistake. (الجا ٢٠٢٣)  
 a. Being checked    b. Checking    c. Had checked    d. Checked
20. He ..... the Nobel Prize until he had written 10 novels.  
 (منشية أبو عامر ٢٠٢٣)  
 a. wasn't awarded    b. hadn't awarded    c. didn't award    d. awarded

## 3 Check your understanding

21. Which of the following is structurally correct? (الواسطي ٢٠٢٣)  
 a. I haven't leave the house till I had breakfast.  
 b. I didn't leave the house till I have had breakfast.  
 c. I haven't left the house till I had had breakfast.  
 d. I didn't leave the house till I had had breakfast.





## PART I VOCABULARY

### 1 Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

|               |                                |                     |                              |
|---------------|--------------------------------|---------------------|------------------------------|
| barrier(n)    | حاجز                           | teenage(adj)        | مُراهق                       |
| erect(ed) (v) | يُشَيِّد - يبني                | tone(n)             | أُسْلُوب / طابع - نبرة الصوت |
| necropolis(n) | جَبَانَة / مدفن - مدينة الموتى | witness(ed) (n - v) | شاهد عيان - يشهد/يري         |

### 2 Important Vocabulary المفردات الهامة

|                |                     |                    |                              |
|----------------|---------------------|--------------------|------------------------------|
| adult(n)       | شخص بالغ/راشد       | objects(n)         | أشياء - مقتنيات              |
| brilliant(adj) | رائع - مُتَالِق     | overhead(adj)      | علوي                         |
| bury(ied) (v)  | يدفن                | permission(n)      | إذن - تصريح                  |
| cave(n)        | كهف                 | pronunciation(n)   | النطق                        |
| coastal(adj)   | ساحلي               | proud(adj)         | فخور                         |
| connector(n)   | رابط                | recent(adj)        | حديث                         |
| create(d) (v)  | ينشئ - يُوجد - يخلق | remains(n)         | بقايا                        |
| creation(n)    | إبداع - خلق/إيجاد   | remarkable(adj)    | هام - بارز                   |
| emergency(n)   | موقف طارئ           | report(ed) (n - v) | تقرير - يكتب تقرير - يُبلِّغ |
| exploration(n) | استكشاف             | route(n)           | مسار - خط سير                |
| explore(d) (v) | يستكشف              | sculpture(n)       | فن النحت - تمثال             |
| grateful(adj)  | ممتن - شاكر         | spacewalk(n)       | سير في الفضاء                |
| historian(n)   | مُؤرِّخ             | speed(n)           | السُرعة                      |
| incident(n)    | حادثة - مناسبة      | spill(n)           | تَسْرُب - نضح                |
| keen(adj)      | متحمس - مبال        | spokesperson(n)    | مُتحدِّث                     |
| launch(ed) (v) | يُطلق - يَنشئ       | stick - stuck(v)   | يلصق - يَغْلِق/ينحشر         |
| location(n)    | موقع                | teenager(n)        | شخص مُراهق                   |
| monument(n)    | أثر / قطعة أثرية    | uninjured(adj)     | غير مصاب                     |

### Exercise On Vocabulary

- ★ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

#### 1 Key vocabulary

1. The twentieth century ..... two world wars.

- a. buried                      b. erected                      c. witnessed                      d. created



2. Our family house was ..... fifty years ago.

- a. buried      b. tempted      c. questioned      d. erected

3. He is a cheerful person who would not enjoy reading a novel with a gloomy كئيب .....

- a. tone      b. meteorite      c. speed      d. spacewalk

4. There should be no ..... between parents and their children.

- a. remains      b. barriers      c. origins      d. trust

5. The planners of the new city have made plans for a ..... for the deaths of this new society.

- a. permission      b. disaster      c. necropolis      d. remains

6. Teachers of secondary schools have enough experience to control their ..... students.

- a. teenage      b. adult      c. baby      d. b & c

## 2 Important vocabulary

7. Ahmed Zewail was a ..... scientist in the field of chemistry.

(النوبارية ٢٠٢٣)

- a. remark      b. remarking      c. remarkable      d. remarked

8. Talaat Harb is the name of the ..... which stands in the middle of a square of the same name.

(شمال بورسعيد ٢٠٢٣)

- a. scene      b. invention      c. sculpture      d. exploration

9. Building at the site was banned after ancient ..... were unearthed earlier this month.

(شربين ٢٠٢٣)

- a. maintains      b. remains      c. bargains      d. mountains

10. Some teenagers have ..... this new website.

(المحمودية ٢٠٢٣)

- a. lunched      b. launched      c. scored      d. interviewed

11. My daughter was rescued safely, and I was very ..... to the fireman.

(بها ٢٠٢٣)

- a. grateful      b. hateful      c. resentful      d. reproachable

12. There is an oil ..... on the spot where the two cars crashed.

(الجا ٢٠٢٣)

- a. spill      b. well      c. tanker      d. company

13. We sat on the ..... of the river relaxing and watching the boats.

(منشية أبو عامر ٢٠٢٣)

- a. coast      b. bank      c. beach      d. harbour



14. The ..... of new jobs requires يتطلب starting new businesses.  
 a. speed                      b. route                      c. creation                      d. incident
15. People who are older than teenagers are called .....  
 a. spokespeople                      b. checkers                      c. disasters                      d. adults
16. They found this statue ..... in sand.  
 a. buried                      b. tempted                      c. questioned                      d. erected
17. The road is closed because of a serious .....  
 a. speed                      b. route                      c. incident                      d. creation
18. The ..... of this desert area is an adventure.  
 a. council                      b. sculpture                      c. spacewalk                      d. exploration
19. Teamwork is necessary to ..... a good news website.  
 a. confirm                      b. create                      c. question                      d. fear
20. Mustafa is one of the most ..... students I have ever taught.  
 a. overhead                      b. coastal                      c. brilliant                      d. uninjured
21. What is the best ..... to the city centre ?  
 a. speed                      b. route                      c. incident                      d. creation
22. I need to get my father's ..... before I can make this decision.  
 a. spacewalk                      b. conference                      c. emergency                      d. permission
23. A ..... is supposed to be fluent مُتحدِّث جيد and he or she should be good-looking.  
 a. spokesperson                      b. checker                      c. disaster                      d. foreigner
24. Don't drive at this breakneck .....  
 a. route                      b. speed                      c. incident                      d. creation

## PART II

## VOCABULARY STUDY

### 1 Verbal Collocations      العتلازحات اللفظية

|           |                       |                        |        |                      |                         |
|-----------|-----------------------|------------------------|--------|----------------------|-------------------------|
| achieve   | a dream               | يحقق حلم               | keep   | safe                 | يبقي بأمان              |
| come      | close to              | يدنو من                | launch | a website            | يبدأ موقع               |
| cover     | important information | يغطي المعلومات الهامة  | make   | history              | يصنع التاريخ            |
| earn/make | a living              | يحقق دخلاً - يكسب رزقه | play   | a musical instrument | يعزف على آلة موسيقية    |
| give      | permission            | يُعطي إذن              | tell   | the story            | يحكي القصة - يقرأ الخبر |



## 2 Synonyms مترادفات

| Word       | Synonym (=Meaning)          |
|------------|-----------------------------|
| erect      | يُشيد - يبنى                |
| necropolis | جبانة / مدفن - مدينة الموتى |
| nonsense   | لغو - هراء                  |
| opinion    | رأى                         |
| prisoner   | سجين                        |
| remarkable | هام / استثنائي / بارز       |
| teenage    | مراهق                       |
| tone       | اسلوب / طابع                |
| witness    | يشهد / يرى                  |

## 3 Antonyms المتضادات

| Word       | Antonym (= Opposite)  |
|------------|-----------------------|
| erect      | demolish, deteriorate |
| nonsense   | sense, wisdom         |
| remarkable | ordinary, commonplace |

بهدم

عقلانية - حكمة

عادي - شائع

## 4 Expressions & Idioms تعبيرات ومصطلحات

|                         |                     |                                 |                            |
|-------------------------|---------------------|---------------------------------|----------------------------|
| be happy about          | سعيد بـ             | make no sense                   | لا معنى له                 |
| be involved in          | متورط / مشارك في    | 19-year-old                     | ذو الـ 19 عام              |
| be keen on              | ميال إلى - متحمس لـ | oil spill                       | تسرب بترولي                |
| be proud to / of        | فخور بأن / بـ       | safety barrier                  | حاجز الأمان                |
| call for help           | يتصل لطلب المساعدة  | see ... differently to ...      | يري ... بشكل مختلف عن .... |
| close to                | قريب من             | spokesperson for                | المتحدث باسم               |
| find out more about     | يكتشف المزيد عن     | That's nonsense.                | هذا كلام فارغ              |
| for some unknown reason | لسبب ما غير معروف   | the same ... as me              | نفس ... مثل                |
| in a different way      | بطريقة مختلفة       | what makes it different is that | ما يجعله مختلفاً هو أن     |
| in the hope of          | لكي                 |                                 |                            |



## 5

## Verb + Preposition حرف جر فعل

|                  |                   |                |               |
|------------------|-------------------|----------------|---------------|
| creep up         | يتسلق             | punish ... for | يعاقب ... علي |
| find out (about) | يكتشف / يعرف (عن) | read ... out   | يقرا بصوت عال |
| get off          | يلزل من           | take out       | يُخرج         |
| go out           | يخرج              |                |               |

## Exercise On Vocabulary Study

★ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

(أبو غالب ٢٠٢٣)

- Smoking makes our health .....  
a. improve      b. deteriorate      c. boost      d. correct
- I work long hours every day to ..... a living.  
a. earn      b. make      c. hold      d. a & b
- "This temple was erected by the pharaohs." Which of the following replaces the verb 'erected' in this utterance?  
a. deteriorated      b. collapsed      c. built      d. demolished
- Something that is 'remarkable' is not .....  
a. commonplace      b. a common place  
c. amazing      d. extraordinary
- I am proud ..... the first Egyptian to win this prize.  
a. be      b. being      c. to be      d. to being
- The guitar is one of the musical instruments Ammar could .....  
a. give      b. score      c. play      d. come
- Mohammed Salah is really ..... history with Liverpool.  
a. earning      b. making      c. holding      d. telling
- I want to ..... you the story of my success.  
a. tell      b. launch      c. keep      d. check
- I can't understand what you say. It does not ..... sense.  
a. do      b. take      c. make      d. look
- My father punished us ..... playing football in the living room.  
a. into      b. for      c. out      d. with
- He changed his opinion ..... some unknown reasons.  
a. for      b. of      c. to      d. at
- I asked Rokaya to read her essay ..... to the class.  
a. into      b. for      c. out      d. with



## 1 Reading Texts

A teenage<sup>(1)</sup> world !

A new website has just been **launched**<sup>(2)</sup> by **teenagers**<sup>(3)</sup> for teenagers. Our World is **the creation**<sup>(4)</sup> of Jake and Amy Hope who wanted a news website that other teenagers would enjoy. 'Adults think teenagers are only interested in music and sport,' explained Amy, 'but that isn't true!'



(SB page 46)

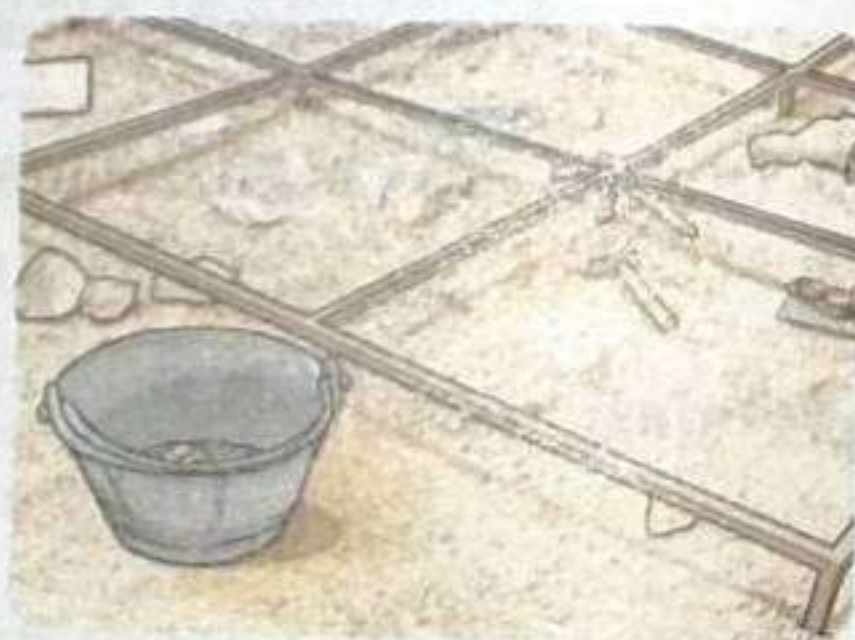
- (1) مُراهق
- (2) يُطْلَق - يُنْشَأ
- (3) المراهقين
- (4) إبداع - ابتكار
- (5) تعليم
- (6) رائع - مثَّال

Our World has news, technology, **education**<sup>(5)</sup>, music and sport, but what makes it different is that all the reporters are teenagers.

'Teenagers sometimes see the world differently to adults,' Jake told us and it seems he's right. '**It's brilliant**<sup>(6)</sup>,' said 13-year-old Henry, 'it's much more interesting than most websites.' His sister agrees, 'I really like the fact that all the reports are by teenagers who are keen on the same things as me.'

Successful exploration<sup>(1)</sup>

Two days ago **historian**<sup>(2)</sup>, José Galán and his team discovered the ancient **remains**<sup>(3)</sup> of a 15 or 16-year-old girl who had been **buried**<sup>(4)</sup> for 3,600 years. José was part of a team of Spanish and Egyptian experts, who had been given **permission**<sup>(5)</sup> to **explore**<sup>(6)</sup> **a necropolis**<sup>(7)</sup> (an area of land where people are buried) on Luxor's **West Bank**<sup>(8)</sup>, in the hope of **finding out**<sup>(9)</sup> more about the history of the area. What makes the discovery so amazing, is that the teenager had been buried with lots of **interesting objects**<sup>(10)</sup>.



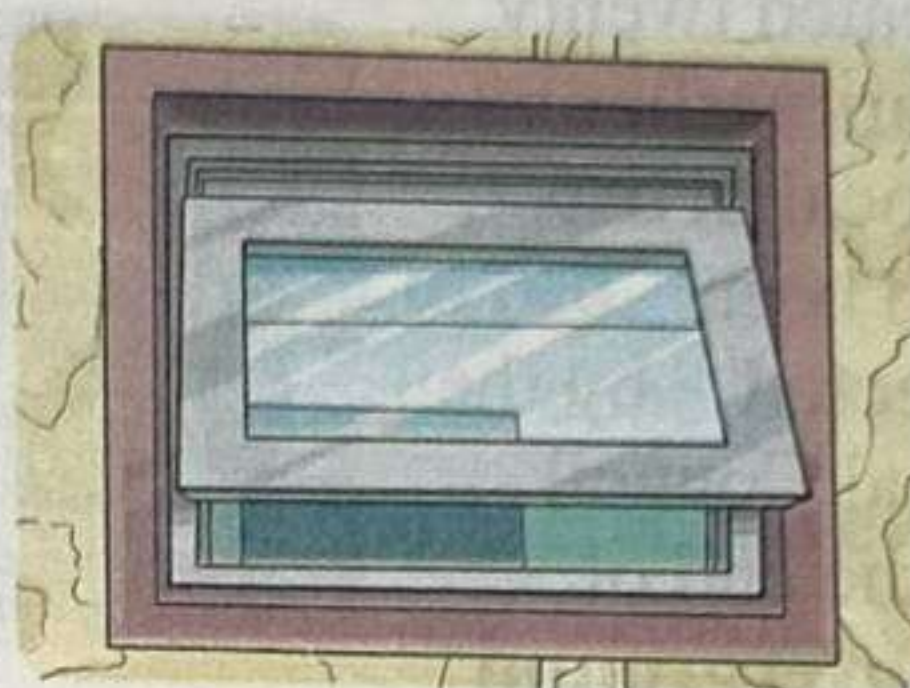
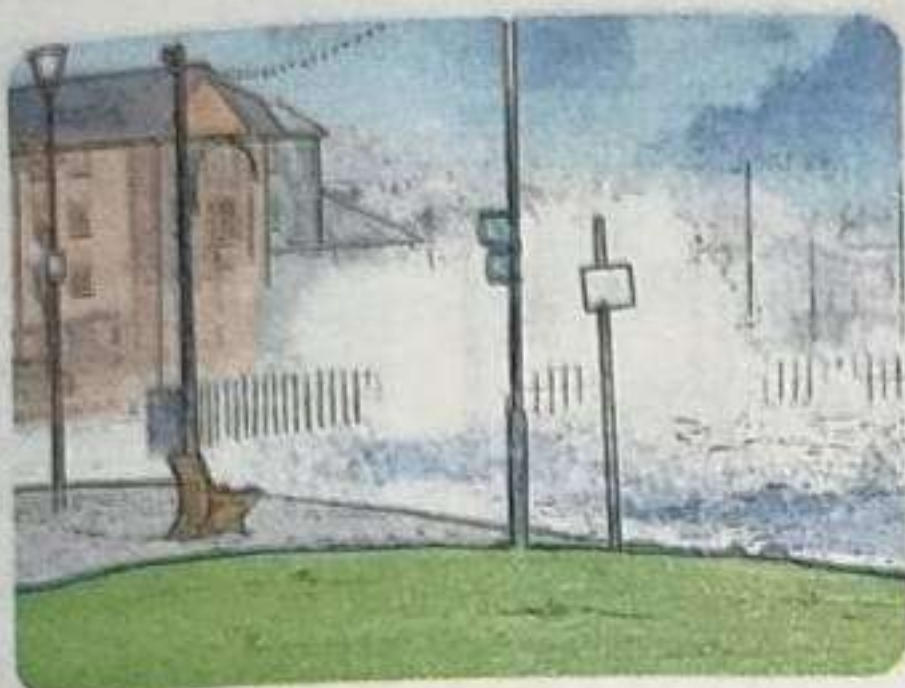
(WB page 26)

- (1) استكشاف
- (2) مؤرخ
- (3) بقايا
- (4) يدفن
- (5) إذن - تصريح
- (6) يستكشف
- (7) مقبرة - مدينة الموتى
- (8) الضفة الغربية
- (9) يكتشف
- (10) أشياء - مقتنيات
- (11) هام - بارز
- (12) مُتَحَدِّث

The Egyptian government was very happy about the new discovery. The government said it was one of the most **remarkable**<sup>(11)</sup> discoveries in recent years. 'We plan to show the objects in a museum very soon for everyone to see,' a **spokesperson**<sup>(12)</sup> for the government said.



## 2 Listening Texts



(SB page 47)

(1) متلازم / متجول

(2) هروب

(3) قرية ساحلية

(4) مطر شديد

(5) يهب

(6) طريق للمشاة

(7) مقدمة البحر

(8) شهود

(9) منتصف الطريق

(10) موجة ضخمة

(11) يوقع .. أرضاً

(12) محبوس في

(13) يظهر من / يبرز من

(14) يطلق سراح / يحرر

**Man:** [serious tone] Two **Walkers**<sup>(1)</sup> had a lucky **escape**<sup>(2)</sup> last night after a storm hit the small **coastal village**<sup>(3)</sup> of Largs in Scotland. **Heavy rain**<sup>(4)</sup> started at 5 p.m., and by 6 p.m. strong winds had **blown**<sup>(5)</sup> a lot of water onto the **footpath**<sup>(6)</sup> on the **sea front**<sup>(7)</sup>. **Witnesses**<sup>(8)</sup> say that the walkers were **halfway**<sup>(9)</sup> along the path when a **huge wave**<sup>(10)</sup> **knocked them over**<sup>(11)</sup>. Police believe that the walkers were two local women but no names have been given and the women had returned safe and well to their families.

**Man:** [light hearted tone] Police were called to a house in Beedon yesterday to help a teenager **stuck**<sup>(12)</sup> in a bathroom window.

Neighbours saw the legs and feet of 13 year old Leila Tahar **sticking out of**<sup>(13)</sup> the window and thought it was a thief. When the police managed to **free**<sup>(14)</sup> the teenager, they discovered that Leila lived at the house but had forgotten her keys! She said, "The only window open was the bathroom one, but it was a bit small!"



(WB page 27)

**Newsreader :** Welcome to the Rotterdam local news. [surprised and quite lively but not excessively so] Today we have an amazing story of how a sea animal saved the lives of many adults and children by stopping a train ten metres in the air in the middle of a city. Yes, you heard me correctly.

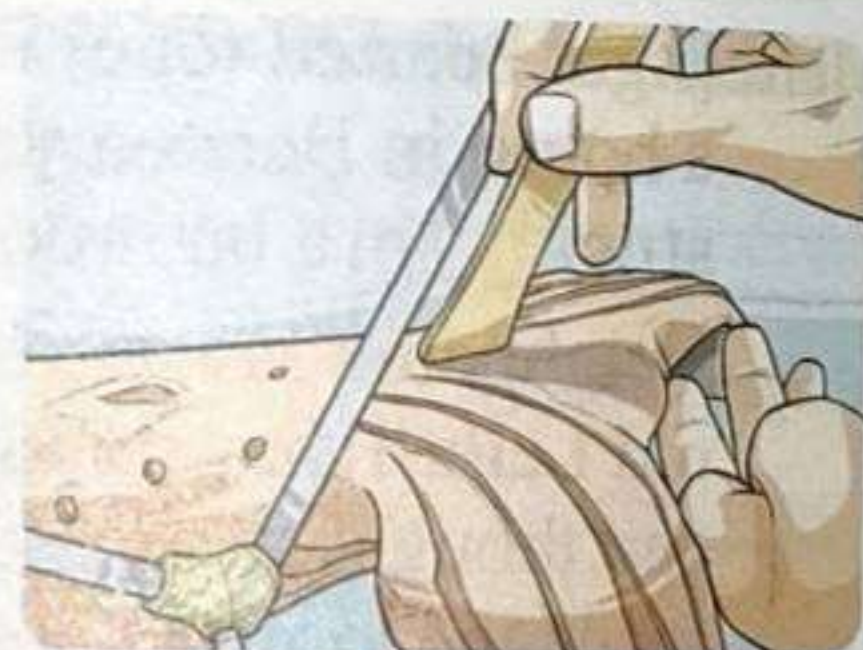




The plastic **sculpture**<sup>(1)</sup> of a **whale's tail**<sup>(2)</sup>, which had been created twenty years earlier by a local **artist**<sup>(3)</sup>, had been **erected**<sup>(4)</sup> by the local Council at the end of an **overground railway line**<sup>(5)</sup>.



Little did they expect the work of **art**<sup>(6)</sup> to **save lives**<sup>(7)</sup>. However, last week when, for some **unknown reason**<sup>(8)</sup>, the train could not stop at the final station on its **route**<sup>(9)</sup>, and it crashed through the **safety barriers**<sup>(10)</sup>. The sculpture at the end of the railway line was able to catch the **runaway train**<sup>(11)</sup> and **prevent it from**<sup>(12)</sup> falling into a park below where parents with their children were playing happily. Luckily, the train had been **emptied**<sup>(13)</sup> just moments before so the only person **onboard**<sup>(14)</sup> was the train driver. As he got off the train **uninjured**<sup>(15)</sup>, he said he was glad that nobody had been hurt and was very **grateful to**<sup>(16)</sup> the artist who had created the tail. So, it just goes to show you; art can save lives! In other news ... [fade out].



- (1) تمثال منحوت
- (2) ذيل الحوت
- (3) فنان / رسام
- (4) بشيد / يقيم
- (5) خط سكك حديدية فوق الأرض
- (6) فن
- (7) ينقذ حياة
- (8) سبب غير معروف
- (9) طريق
- (10) حواجز الأمان
- (11) قطار منطلق / خارج عن السيطرة
- (12) يمنع ... من
- (13) يفرغ - يخل
- (14) على متن (القطار)
- (15) غير مصاب
- (16) شاكر لـ

## PART IV LANGUAGE

راجع شرح القاعدة من الدرسين الأول والثاني

تنويه

### General Exercise On Language

- ★ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1 Getting started: Check what you have learnt

1. Before ..... a car, my brother learnt how to drive well.

- a. bought      b. had bought      c. buying      d. buy

(المعصرة ٢٠٢٣)



2. After she ..... her housework, she watched TV. (حلوان ٢٠٢٣)  
 a. was doing      b. had done      c. doing      d. was done
3. .... seeing the fierce dog, I was very afraid. (شرق مدينة نصر ٢٠٢٣)  
 a. Before      b. As soon as      c. On      d. During
4. After ..... his homework, Amr went to bed. (شرق مدينة نصر ٢٠٢٣)  
 a. does      b. doing      c. had done      d. has been doing
5. When he was on holiday, Omar ..... his grandpa every day. (أجا ٢٠٢٣)  
 a. was visiting      b. visited      c. had visited      d. visits
6. Hamdy ..... back home until he had finished all the tasks at the office. (أجا ٢٠٢٣)  
 a. didn't      b. wouldn't      c. wasn't      d. doesn't
7. As the fire brigade ..... immediately, the fire was put out.  
 a. called      b. had called  
 c. had been calling      d. had been called
8. .... I left the office; I had written 5 reports. (منشية أبو عامر ٢٠٢٣)  
 a. After      b. By the time      c. As soon as      d. Until
9. Having set his alarm o'clock, he ..... to bed. (العاشر من رمضان ٢٠٢٣)  
 a. had gone      b. went      c. was going      d. has gone
10. Leen looked over the moon as she ..... her final exam.  
 a. was passing      b. was passed  
 c. had passed      d. had been passing
11. He didn't answer my call as he ..... taken out a bad tooth at the dentist's.  
 a. has just      b. was being      c. had just      d. had just been
12. He didn't answer my call as a bad tooth ..... taken out of his mouth at the dentist's.  
 a. has just      b. was being      c. had just      d. had just been
13. As soon as the teacher ..... the lesson, the students started to ask their questions.  
 a. finishes      b. has finished  
 c. had finished      d. had been finished
14. As soon as the lesson ....., the students started to ask their questions.  
 a. finishes      b. has finished  
 c. have finished      d. had been finished
15. By the time I arrived at school, the bell .....  
 a. didn't ring      b. had been rung  
 c. had already rung      d. b & c



16. I didn't see Esraa. When I arrived at her house, she ..... out.  
 a. had gone                      b. had been going  
 c. went                            d. goes
17. She started cleaning when the guests .....  
 a. were left                      b. have left  
 c. had been leaving            d. had left
18. By the age of ten, I ..... to swim.  
 a. have learnt            b. was learning            c. had learnt            d. had been learnt
19. She was tired because she ..... late to bed the night before.  
 a. is                            b. was being            c. had been            d. has been
20. It was only ..... Esraa had passed her exam that she travelled abroad.  
 a. before                      b. after                      c. until                      d. when
21. Sara couldn't buy a new mobile ..... the shop had shut.  
 a. until                      b. as                            c. no sooner            d. hardly
22. When we got to the show, all the seats .....  
 a. had taken                      b. had been taken  
 c. had been taking            d. have taken
23. I couldn't believe it. I ..... chosen to play for the National Team.  
 a. had                            b. have been            c. had been            d. will be
24. As soon as I met him, I knew I ..... him somewhere before.  
 a. was seeing            b. see                            c. have seen            d. had seen

## 2 Special cases

25. We arrived at the station at 8 a.m. yesterday. By then, the train .....  
 (الدفق ٢٠٢٣)  
 a. leave                      b. leaves                      c. had left                      d. was left
26. .... typed the report, the secretary handed it to the manager. (العرج ٢٠٢٣)  
 a. Having                      b. While                      c. When                      d. After
27. When he returned home, he found that his mobile phone ..... disappeared.  
 a. had been                      b. was                            c. has been                      d. had
28. It was only when I ..... studying that I went to bed.  
 a. has finished            b. have finished            c. was finishing            d. had finished
29. No sooner ..... I started watching TV than the telephone rang.  
 a. have                            b. had                            c. did                            d. was
30. No sooner ..... I start watching TV than the telephone rang.  
 a. have                            b. had                            c. did                            d. was
31. Having ....., the present surprised me.  
 a. opens                            b. opened                      c. been opened            d. opening
32. By the time she finished writing her report, she ..... six cups of tea.  
 a. had been drinking            b. was drinking  
 c. had drunk                      d. had been drunk



33. .... had we furnished the house when we moved into it.  
 a. Hardly                      b. Before                      c. After                      d. No sooner
34. Scarcely had the thief seen the policeman before he .....  
 a. escape                      b. had escaped                      c. escaping                      d. escaped
35. They ..... a great time when they were in Fayoum.  
 a. had had                      b. had been                      c. had                      d. were having

### 3 Check your understanding

36. .... before she went to bed.  
 a. Homework had done                      b. Homework had been done  
 c. She had been done                      d. She had done
37. "Having bought grandpa's newspaper, I went home." What does this mean ?  
 a. After I had gone home, I bought the papers for my grandpa.  
 b. Before I went home, I had bought the papers for my grandpa.  
 c. Soon after going home, I bought the papers for my grandpa.  
 d. On going home, I bought the papers for my grandpa.
38. "She had scarcely typed the email when she left." This means .....  
 a. she left just before typing the email  
 b. she left while typing the email  
 c. she left just after typing the email  
 d. she didn't write the email until she left
39. "First, I did my homework. Then, I went to bed." What does this mean ?  
 a. Having been done, my homework went to bed.  
 b. Having done, I went to bed.  
 c. Before doing my homework, I went to bed.  
 d. Doing my homework, I went to bed.
40. "After I had planted the tree, I watered it." This means .....  
 a. Having planted a tree, it was watered  
 b. Having been planted, the tree was watered  
 c. Having been planted, I have watered the tree  
 d. a & b
41. "I had breakfast and went out." Which of the following sentences gives the same meaning ?  
 a. Breakfast was eaten before going out.  
 b. Having been fed, I went out.  
 c. Having had my breakfast, I went out.  
 d. I went out until I had breakfast.





PART I

LANGUAGE HINTS

أيهما يكون / أي منهما **... which is which**

لاحظ استخدام هذا التعبير عند الحديث عن التمييز بين شخصين أو شيئين متشابهين جداً، لاحظ الجمل التالية وترجمتها:

1. Saeed explains that news stories can use both facts and opinions, but it must be clear **which is which**.

يوضح "سعيد" أن موضوعات الأخبار يمكن أن تتضمن الحقائق ووجهات النظر، لكن ينبغي أن يكون من الواضح أيهما يُعتبر حقيقة وأيهما يُعتبر وجهة نظر.

2. The twins look so much alike that I'm surprised if anyone can tell **which is which**.

يبدو التوأمان متشابهان جداً لدرجة أنني أتعجب عندما يتمكن أي شخص أن يميز أحدهما عن الآخر.

space

كلمة (space) بمعنى (الفضاء الكوني) لا تأخذ أداة التعريف (the) أو أدوات التنكير (a - an) :

- Astronauts travel to **the** space. (X)
- Astronauts travel to **a** space. (X)
- Astronauts travel to **space**. (✓)

كلمة (space) بمعنى (مكان فارغ / مسافة) يمكن أن تأخذ أداة التعريف (the) أو أدوات التنكير (a - an) حسب السياق وقواعد استخدام كل منهما:

**ex.** - There's **an** eight-metre-space between the front door and the wall of the garden. **The** space is enough to plant some trees.

Once

- **Once = at some time in the past**

في وقت ما في الماضي / ذات مرة

**ex.** - **Once**, people were hunters. Their food came from animals.

- **Once = as soon as**

بمجرد أن

**ex.** - **Once** I get home, I'll go to bed.

- **Once = one time**

مرة واحدة

**ex.** - We go to Alexandria **once** a year.

news

- **news (of / on / about) (n)**

خبر - أخبار (الاسم لا يُعد)

- The **news** of the exam results **is** promising. (**Not** : The news ... are ...)

- **This news** is not true. (**Not** : These news ...)



لاحظ الفرق بين :

... **on the news**

- The Minister of Health was **on the nine o'clock news**.

يظهر في الأخبار / هناك تقرير عنه في الأخبار

... **in the news**

- Covid-19 has been **in the news** for two years now.

يتم مناقشته في الأخبار

لاحظ التعبيرات التالية :

- the latest news

أحدث الأخبار

- a piece / a bit of news (مفرد) خبر

- pieces / bits of news (جمع) أخبار

- welcome news

أخبار سعيدة

- the good news is ...

والجيد في الأمر هو أن ...

- the bad news is ...

والسيئ في الأمر هو أن ...

## General Exercise On Language Hints

★ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. There're millions of stars in ..... space.

a. a                      b. an                      c. the                      d. no article

2. .... space between these two cars is enough for you to park your car in.

a. A                      b. An                      c. The                      d. no article

3. "This bottle is to be used only once." In this sentence, 'once' means

a. as soon as                      b. one time                      c. in the past                      d. before

4. .... she had arrived home, she started to prepare lunch.

a. As soon as                      b. One time                      c. Once                      d. a & c

5. .... news is not confidential.

a. This                      b. These                      c. A                      d. a & b

6. .... pieces of news are not confidential.

a. This                      b. These                      c. A                      d. a & b

7. Little ..... any free time over the last two weeks.

a. I have had                      b. I haven't had                      c. had I had                      d. have I had

## PART II LANGUAGE SKILLS

### 1 Reading

★ Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

The average high-school or college English student has likely heard of the Herman Melville novel, Moby Dick. What those students probably don't realise is that Melville was inspired by real events. In 1820, the whaling ship Essex, captained by George Pollard, was attacked and sunk by a huge whale.



The whale, which survivors claimed was around 26 meters (85 feet) in length, rammed the Essex twice, causing the crew of 20 to abandon the ship in three lifeboats. Pollard wanted to head toward the closest land—the Marquesas or the Society Islands—but his crew convinced him to try for South America instead, since they had heard the islanders were cannibals *أكلوا لحوم البشر*. So, they were to **face** the dangers of being eaten by them. That turned out to be a cruelly ironic decision, since the starving crew soon turned to cannibalism themselves. They even shot Pollard's cousin outright after drawing lots to see who would be eaten next. Ultimately, only eight members of the crew survived.

★ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

- The synonym of the underlined word "**face**" is .....  
a. confront      b. support      c. behave      d. increase
- How many sailors do you think were in each lifeboat ?  
a. Twenty sailors      b. Ten sailors  
c. Eight or more      d. Seven or less
- What was the nearest land to the surviving sailors?  
a. The Marquesas      b. The Society continents  
c. South America      d. North America
- What is this text about ?  
a. The story of Moby Dick      b. Captain Ahab's adventure  
c. A real adventure at sea      d. The cannibals
- Moby Dick is ..... among high school or college English students.  
a. so famous      b. not famous      c. not known      d. nothing
- Melville was inspired by .....  
a. what was in the age  
b. the Cannibals  
c. who were living with him  
d. a real accident of a whaling ship
- Humans can be cannibals if .....  
a. the whale eats them      b. they eat human flesh  
c. the whale attack them      d. they eat plants
- Sailors working on a ship are called the ..... of the ship.  
a. cannibals      b. whales      c. crew      d. survivors



## 2 كتابة تقرير اخباري Writing a news report

Write a news report of about (180) words on an incident that happened recently :

### Discovery of an ancient monument

Welcome to the evening news. We have a story that interests all people all over the world, especially those who are interested in ancient Egyptian history. Our story took place in the south of Egypt, in Aswan Governorate.

The hero of our story is a fifteen-year-old boy called Ahmed. A few days ago, he was playing hide and seek with his friends in an open space in the countryside. The boys were hiding and Ahmed was looking for them.

Ahmed searched for the boys here and there but he could not find them. Suddenly, he found a dark cave. Ahmed entered it looking for his friends.

To his surprise, he discovered an ancient monument from the Pharaohs era. Ahmed called out for his friends who forgot about the game and hurried to where Ahmed was.

The boys were all surprised. At first, they did not know what to do. When they calmed down, Ahmed suggested reporting monuments' officials in the governorate.

Soon, Ahmed's discovery was in the news. Reporters and correspondents wanted to talk to Ahmed. His videos were broadcast on local and foreign channels. His photograph was in the newspapers.

Ahmed is now famous. He is very proud of himself because he has helped his country.

## 3 الترجمة Translation

1 Choose the correct Arabic translation from a, b, c or d:

1. Terrorists are working to spoil Egypt's economy and ruin tourism industry. They are not loyal to their country. They also should know that killing innocent people is rejected by all religions. (بناها ٢٠٢٣)

a. الإرهابيون يفسدون الاقتصاد المصري ويدمرون صناعة السياحة، فهم غير مخلصين لبلدهم، كما يجب أن يعملوا أن قتل الأبرياء مرفوض من جميع الأديان.

b. الإرهابيون يعزلون الاقتصاد المصري ويفسدون صناعة السياحة، فهم غير مخلصين لبلدهم، كما يجب أن يعلموا أن قتل الأبرياء مرفوض من جميع الأديان.

c. الإرهابيون يفسدون الاقتصاد المصري ويعزلون صناعة السياحة، فهم غير مخلصين لبلدهم، كما يجب أن يعلموا أن قتل الأشخاص مرفوض من جميع الأديان.

d. الإرهابيون يفسدون الاقتصاد المصري ويدمرون صناعة السياحة، فهم غير مخلصين لبلدهم، كما يجب أن يعلموا أن قتل الأبرياء مرفوض من جميع الأديان.



2. It is a good idea to start your own business soon after graduation. It is also much better to be your own manager.

- أروض الفرج (٢٠٢٣)
- a. إنها لفكرة جيدة أن تبدأ مشروعك الخاص بعد التخرج بفترة وجيزة، ومن الأفضل إذاً أن تكون مدير نفسك.
- b. إنها لفكرة جيدة أن تبدأ عملك الخاص بعد التخرج بفترة وجيزة، ومن الأفضل أيضاً أن تكون مدير نفسك.
- c. إنها لفكرة غير جيدة أن تبدأ عملك الخاص بعد التخرج بفترة جيدة، ومن الأفضل أيضاً أن تكون مدير نفسك.
- d. إنها لفكرة جيدة أن تبدأ مشروعك الخاص بعد التخرج بفترة وجيزة، ومن المفضل أيضاً ألا تكون مدير نفسك.

● **2 Choose the correct English translation from a, b, c or d:**

أ. تعرضت بعض الدول لكوارث طبيعية مثل الزلازل والبراكين والفيضانات والتي أدت إلى الكثير من الضحايا وخسائر فادحة، وهذا يثبت أن الانسان ما زال عاجزاً عن التغلب على الكوارث الطبيعية بالرغم من التقدم العلمي المذهل الذي حققه.

(قلين ٢٠٢٣)

- a. Some countries faced natural disasters such as earthquakes, volcanoes and floods which resulted from many victims and huge losses and this provide that man is still able to overcome the natural disasters despite the great scientific progress he has achieved.
- b. Some countries forced natural disasters such earthquakes, volcanoes and floods which resulted in many victims and hug losses and this proves that man is still unable to overcome the natural disasters despite the great scientific progress he has achieved.
- c. Some countries faced natural disasters such as earthquakes, volcanoes and floods which resulted in many victims and huge losses and this proves that man is still unable to overcome the natural disasters despite the great scientific progress he has achieved.
- d. Many countries faced natural disasters such as earthquakes, volcanoes and floods which resulted in some victims and few losses and this proves that man is still unable to overcome the natural disasters despite the great scientific progress he has achieved.

أ. يجب علينا ترشيد الاستهلاك في المياه والكهرباء والطعام وذلك لمواجهة الارتفاع المتزايد في الأسعار.

(سنورس ٢٠٢٣)

- a. We have to rationalize consumption of water, electricity and food to face the increasing rise in price.
- b. We has to rationalize consumption of water, electricity and food to face the increasing rise in prices.
- c. We have to rationalize consumption of water, electricity and food to face the increasing rise in prices.
- d. We have to rationalize consumption of water, electricity and food to face from the increasing rise in prices.



## broadcast

- **broadcast (n)** برنامج / بث (إذاعي / تليفزيوني)  
- I am not interested in that political news broadcast.
- **broadcast (v)** يذيع / يبث (عبر الراديو أو التليفزيون)  
- The match was broadcast live on the sports channel
- **broadcast - broadcast - broadcast (v)** ينشر - يُعلن  
- She broadcast that her husband lost a lot of money.

لاحظ التعبيرات التالية:

- a radio / television broadcast برنامج إذاعي / تليفزيوني
- a news broadcast برنامج إخباري
- a live broadcast برنامج مباشر / بث مباشر
- make / do / give broadcast يقدم برنامج / يتحدث من خلال برنامج

## editor

- **edit (v)** يُنقّح - يُعدّل (يقوم بعمل المونتاج)  
- This news website edits news reports before publishing them.
- **edit (v)** يرأس تحرير مجلة / جريدة  
- This writer edited Al-Ahram newspaper for three years.
- **edit ... out = cut (phr. v)** يقطع / يجتزئ - يحذف جزء (من مقال أو فيلم)  
- I was very angry when I knew that some parts of my article were edited out.
- **editor (n)** مُحَرِّر - رئيس تحرير (مجلة / جريدة)  
- This writer was an editor of Al-Ahram newspaper for three years.
- **editor (n)** مُراجع - مُنقّح (كتاب / مقال / فيلم / برنامج)  
- An editor prepares a book to be published, for example by checking and correcting the text, making improvement, etc.
- **editor (n)** برنامج حاسوبي أو تطبيق يقوم بتعديل النصوص أو الصور أو الأفلام  
- I have paid a lot of money for this high-tech video editor.
- **edition (n)** نسخة - طَبْعَة  
- The news about the accident appeared in the second edition.

## investigate

- **investigate = look into (v)** يُحقّق في - يبحث (جريمة - حادث - مسألة علمية)  
- The police are investigating the crime.



• **investigate (v)**

- The bank manager was **investigated** for corruption.

يُتَحَرَّى عَنْ - يَحْقُق مَعَ (شَخْص) الفساد

• **investigation (of / into) (n)**

- Sometimes **investigations** of difficult crimes continue for years.

تَحْقِيق - تَحَرَّى

• **investigator (n)**

- A clever **investigator** is working on the crime.

مُحَقِّق

**judge**

• **judge (v)**

- It is easy to **judge** how long the flight will take.

يُقَدِّر - يُقَيِّم

• **judge (v)**

- The court **judged** him guilty and he was sent to prison.

يَقْضِي بِ / يَصْدُر حُكْمًا عَلَى

• **judge (by / from) (v)**

- My father told me not to **judge** people only by what they say.

يُعْطِي حُكْمًا أَوْ رَأْيًا فِي الْأَشْخَاصِ وَالْأَشْيَاءِ (بَعْدَ تَفْكِيرٍ عَمِيقٍ)

- It is not for + شخص + to judge ...

لاحظ التعبيرات التالية:

- It is not for us to **judge** if he needs an operation or not. We are not doctors.

ليس ... أهلاً للحكم على / ليس ... من يقرر ...

- Don't judge a book by its cover.

لا تتخذ بالمظاهر

• **judge (n)**

- This **judge** is honest and fair.

قاضي - مُحْكَم

• **judgement = judgment (n)**

- He has enough experience to make a **judgement** about people by their behaviour.

حُكْم - رَأْي - قُدْرَةٌ عَلَى اتِّخَاذِ الْقَرَارِ

• **judgement = judgment (n)**

- He won a **judgement** of two million dollars.

حُكْم قَضَائِي

**nonsense**

• **nonsense (n)**

- Tell your son to stop that **nonsense**.

سلوك سيء (اسم مفرد لا يُعَد)

• **nonsense = rubbish (n)**

- It is **nonsense** to say that you never make mistakes.

لُغْو - هُزَاء (اسم مفرد لا يُعَد)

- Don't believe that **nonsense** about healthy food on that channel.

لاحظ التعبيرات التالية:

• **make (a) nonsense of**

- Smoking makes **nonsense** of the treatment.

يُفَرِّغ ... مِنْ مَضْمُونِهِ - يُفْشِل

• **be (a) nonsense**

- This article is a **nonsense**. I can't understand what it is about.

كَلَامٌ فَارِغٌ



- ... not + stand / put up with / take + any nonsense يرفض السلوك السيء
- Mr Ashraf won't stand any nonsense.
- complete / utter / absolute / total nonsense مُجَرَّد هُراء
- talk nonsense يلغو - يقول كلام فارغ

### report

- **report (v)** يُبلِّغ (يكتب أو يجمع أخبار لصحيفة أو برنامج تليفزيوني)
- We sent a correspondent to Dubai to **report** on the conference.
- **report (v)** يُبلِّغ الشرطة أو الجهات المسئولة (عن جريمة أو شيء مخالف للقانون)
- An old man **reported** a theft. عملية سرقة.
- **report (v)** يذكر - يصرِّح بـ - يُعلن بشكل رسمي
- Doctors **reported** that there is 25% decrease in the number of COVID-19 patients.

لاحظ التعبيرات التالية :

- **report ... missing / injured / killed...** يُبلِّغ عن فقدان / إصابة / مقتل ...
- The shop owner **reported** ten thousand dollars **missing**.
- The reporter **reported** three soldiers **killed**.
- **report sick ...** يُبلِّغ عن مرضه (يخبر رئيسه في العمل أنه لن يأتي للعمل لمرضه)
- Mr Emad has **reported sick** since last July.

لاحظ ما يأتي بعد (report) :

- **report on + noun** يكتب تقارير أو موضوعات عن
- This journalist always **reports on** football matches.
- **report that + جملة**
- Our correspondent **reported that** there was an explosion انفجار.
- **report + (inf. + ing)** يُبلِّغ عن
- This man **reported seeing** this car hit the old man.
- **report (on / of / about) (n)** تقرير
- I have to make a **report** about the students' progress تحسُّن.

لاحظ التعبيرات التالية:

- write / make / give / prepare a report يكتب / يُعدّ تقرير
- submit a report يُسلِّم تقرير
- confirm a report يؤكِّد تقرير
- a report says / states (that).... يذكر التقرير (أن) ...
- an official / formal report تقرير رسمي
- an unofficial report تقرير غير رسمي
- a misleading report تقرير مُضلل
- **reporter (n)** مراسل - مُبلِّغ / مُقرِّر / مُكاتب
- I got a job as a news **reporter** for a TV channel.



## Advanced Exercise on Vocabulary

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

★ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

- The investigation ..... the robbery proved that the night watchman was involved.  
a. of                      b. into                      c. a & b                      d. with
- This is not the complete interview. Some of the questions and replies have been .....  
a. corresponded      b. crept up                      c. edited out                      d. interviewed
- I wish you didn't ..... that I am bankrupt. مفليس  
a. tempt                      b. interview                      c. recognise                      d. broadcast
- That tailor is a real ..... . He has made me the best clothes I have ever worn.  
a. find                      b. checker                      c. editor                      d. range
- Will it ..... if I am half an hour late tomorrow?  
a. launch                      b. zoom                      c. hold                      d. matter

## Advanced Exercise on Language

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

★ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

- Rodayna ..... a good film last night.  
a. was watched                      b. had been watched  
c. had watched                      d. watched
- What I'd done was wrong and I ..... ashamed of myself.  
a. was being                      b. was                      c. had been                      d. has been
- This time yesterday, I ..... all the sandwiches in my lunchbox already.  
a. had been eating                      b. had eaten  
c. was eaten                      d. have eaten
- ..... some old wood, my father made a nice cupboard.  
a. Using                      b. Used                      c. Being used                      d. Be used
- ..... , my shoes looked almost new.  
a. Polishing                      b. Having polished  
c. Having been polished                      d. To be polished



# Test on Unit 10

● Understand

● Apply

● Create

تنويه

التقييمات  
الشهرية في  
نهاية الكتاب



اختبار الكتروني

## 1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. The scholastic morning ..... must be prepared in advance. (طما ٢٠٢٣)  
a. podcast      b. broadband      c. blackboard      d. broadcast
2. I look forward to crossing the English ..... to break the record. (دمياط ٢٠٢٣)  
a. channel      b. canal      c. canon      d. cart
3. The police think that the fire has been deliberately started. The antonym of "deliberately" here is ..... (العمرانية ٢٠٢٣)  
a. on purpose      b. intentionally      c. accidentally      d. purposely
4. The intelligent ..... managed to make the thief admit stealing the money from the bank. (المطرية ٢٠٢٣)  
a. respondent      b. prisoner      c. editor      d. investigator
5. The journalist refused to reveal his ..... saying it was a top secret. (المرج ٢٠٢٣)  
a. resource      b. sauce      c. resort      d. source
6. I liked this play so much, especially the last ..... (البحيرة ٢٠٢٣)  
a. sight      b. site      c. scene      d. view
7. Having ....., my room looked nicer. (البنوب ٢٠٢٣)  
a. painting      b. being painted      c. painted      d. been painted
8. As soon as she heard the loud noise, she ..... to look. (دار السلام ٢٠٢٣)  
a. runs      b. ran      c. had run      d. will run
9. After dinner, I served the dessert that I ..... the afternoon before. (شمال بورسعيد ٢٠٢٣)  
a. prepared      b. had prepared  
c. have prepared      d. was preparing
10. Scarcely ..... finished writing my essay when the examiner announced the end of the exam. (شمال بورسعيد ٢٠٢٣)  
a. I had      b. had I      c. I      d. have I
11. .... been arrested, the thief was sent to jail. (دمياط ٢٠٢٣)  
a. After      b. Having      c. Hardly      d. Before
12. No sooner had I had the problem ..... all my friends came to help me. (أبو غالب ٢٠٢٣)  
a. than      b. when      c. then      d. after that
13. The people of the city hardly ..... safe until the police had caught the wild animal. (العمرانية ٢٠٢٣)  
a. felt      b. didn't feel      c. hadn't felt      d. won't feel



14. They couldn't go swimming because they .....their swimsuits.

- a. were forgotten   b. have forgotten   c. will forget   d. had forgotten

15. After ....., the room looked neat.

- a. it cleaned   b. being cleaned   c. it had cleaned   d. it is cleaned

2. Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

(إيلي سوييف - ناصر ٢٠٢٣)

What does it mean to be lucky? It commonly means someone who gets something **valuable** without really trying; someone who is in the right place at the right time. The person who buys a winning lottery ticket or who discovers a lost painting by a famous painter - these are lucky people. Yet, luck does not guarantee happiness. Accepting ourselves exactly as we are at this present moment provides the courage to move forward. Believing that all our choices in the past were the best we could have made frees us from regret. It also **reinforces** our belief that we are as good as we can be now.

The best preparation for the future is self-acceptance in the present. Self-acceptance and trust in people are the foundations of confidence and courage. Added to action, they lead to more opportunities for unexpected events - which people call luck - that can enrich our lives.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- The synonym of the word "**reinforce**" is .....  
a. ignore   b. damage   c. boast   d. boost
- The antonym of the word "**valuable**" is .....  
a. worthless   b. precious   c. invaluable   d. priceless
- The underlined pronoun "they" refers to .....  
a. trust and happiness   b. happiness, trust and luck  
c. self-acceptance, trust and action   d. luck and self-acceptance
- According to the passage, we can best prepare for the future by .....  
a. self-dependence   b. self confidence  
c. self-acceptance   d. self-resistance
- Trust in people .....  
a. leads to an unexpected event   b. reminds us of the past  
c. means a good choice   d. leads to confidence and courage
- A person who ..... is a lucky one  
a. passes the final exam   b. buys a car of a latest model  
c. does an unexpected action   d. satisfies himself with his deeds
- Accepting ourselves provides the ..... to move forward.  
a. bravery   b. cowardliness   c. nervousness   d. sympathy



8. .... frees us from our regret.

- a. Doubting our past choices
- b. Hesitating our past choices
- c. Believing that our past choices were the best
- d. Forgetting our past choices

3. a. Choose the correct Arabic translation from a, b, c or d:

To solve the problem of over-population, the government has built a lot of new cities in the desert and provided them with essential facilities for people to live in.

(النزعة ٢٠٢٣)

- a. لحل مشكلة الزيادة السكانية، قامت الحكومة ببناء بعض المدن الجديدة في الصحراء، وقامت بتزويدها بكل الإمكانيات الأساسية حتى يعيش فيها الناس.
- b. لحل مشكلة الزيادة السكانية، قامت الحكومة ببناء العديد من المدن الجديدة في الصحراء، وقامت بتزويدها بكل الإمكانيات الأساسية حتى يعيش فيها الناس.
- c. لحل مشكلة الزيادة السكانية، قامت الحكومة ببناء العديد من المدن المجهزة في الصحراء، وقامت بتزويدها بكل الأماكن الأساسية لكي يعيش فيها الناس.
- d. لحل مشكلة الزيادة السكانية، قامت الحكومة ببناء العديد من المدن الجديدة في الصحراء، وقامت بتزويدها بكل الخانات الضرورية حتى يعيش فيها الناس.

b. Choose the correct English translation from a, b, c or d:

في نظم التعليم الجديدة أصبح لزاماً على المعلمين أن يستخدموا التكنولوجيا الحديثة التي أصبحت جزءاً هاماً من حياة الطلاب حتى في المرحلة الابتدائية.

(شبراخيت ٢٠٢٣)

- a. In the new education systems, teachers have to using modern technology, which has become an important part of students' lives, even if the primary stage.
- b. In the new education systems, teachers has to use modern technology, which have become an important part of students' lives, even in the primary stage.
- c. In the new education systems, teachers have to use modern technology, which has become an important part of students' lives, even in the primary stage.
- d. In the new education systems, teachers have to use modern technology, which has become an important part of students' lives, even in the primary stage.

4. Answer the following questions :

1. Why do you think Edgar says that King Lear is talking both "sense and nonsense"?

2. How do you feel about the death of Oswald ? Why do you feel like this ?

3. "Please put on some better clothes, Kent". Was it necessary for Kent to be in bad clothes? Why/Why not ?

5. Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED and EIGHTY (180) words on the following topic :

"Increasing our national income is a must"



## Mini-Test on Unit 10 for Al-Azhar Students

إختبار مصغر لطلاب الأزهر الشريف

### 1. Finish the following dialogue :

Esraa and Sara are talking about climate change.

Esraa : I'm doing a project on climate change. (1) .....

Sara : Of course. (2) .....

Esraa : What do you think the main cause of climate change is ?

Sara : (3) .....

Esraa : How can the increase in numbers lead to that dangerous problem ?

Sara : (4) .....

Esraa : Then, it is better for us and the environment to use electric cars, isn't it ?

Sara : Yes, it is.

### 2. Write a paragraph of (60) words on :

“The job that you would like to do after you graduate”

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

### 3. A. Translate into Arabic :

Mass media plays a vital role in forming the public opinion as they inform us of whatever happens all over the world.

.....

.....

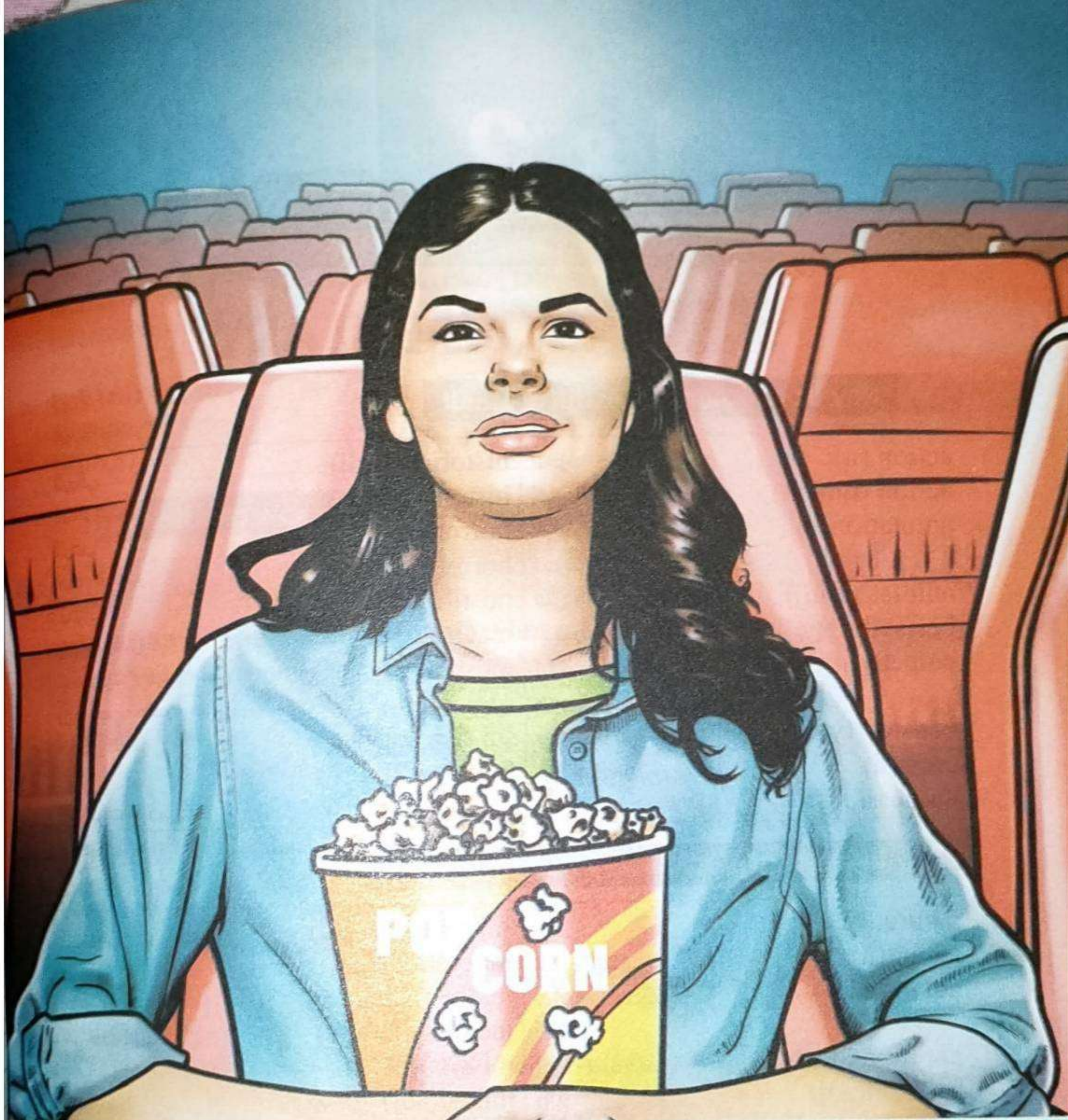
### B. Translate into English :

بغالب كثير من الشباب من بعض المشاكل الصحية بسبب سوء استخدام أجهزة الحاسب الآلى والتليفونات المحمولة.

.....

.....





# UNIT 11

## What a performance!

SB pages 52 : 61

WB pages 30 : 35

### Objectives :

• Reading :  
Online film reviews

• Writing :  
Two film reviews

• Listening :  
Interview with a film critic ; Intonation

• Speaking :  
Explain how a film affects you

• Language :

Tag questions; Adjectives and adverbs

• Life skills :

Communication : listening to others' opinions ;  
Respect for others : recognising differences in  
opinions





## PART I VOCABULARY

### 1 Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

|                  |                                   |                             |                        |
|------------------|-----------------------------------|-----------------------------|------------------------|
| action (n)       | الحركة - حَدَث                    | historical (adj)            | تاريخي                 |
| action films(n)  | أفلام الحركة (الصراع)             | historical films(n)         | أفلام تاريخية          |
| animation(n)     | الرسوم المتحركة - تحريك - الحيوية | horror (n)                  | الرعب                  |
| animated(adj)    | ملئ بالحيوية - متحرك              | horror films(n)             | أفلام الرعب            |
| bestselling(adj) | الأكثر مبيعاً                     | hostile(adj)                | عدواني                 |
| comedy(n)        | فيلم كوميدي - كوميديا / الفكاهة   | mate(n)                     | رفيق - زميل            |
| constantly(adv)  | باستمرار - بانتظام                | musical(n)                  | مسرحية / فيلم غنائي    |
| crew(n)          | طاقم العمل                        | romantic(adj)               | رومانسي - حالم - خيالي |
| harness(ed) (v)  | يستخدم - يُسَخَّر                 | sci-fi = science fiction(n) | الخيال العلمي          |
|                  |                                   | visuals(n)                  | المؤثرات البصرية       |

### 2 Important Vocabulary المفردات الهامة

|                     |                            |                    |                         |
|---------------------|----------------------------|--------------------|-------------------------|
| a bit(adv)          | قليلاً                     | Martian (n - adj)  | المريخي - من المريخ     |
| acting(n)           | الاداء التمثيلي            | marvellous(adj)    | رائع                    |
| adapt (ed) (v)      | يقتبس - يتكيف / يتأقلم     | mathematician(n)   | عالم رياضيات            |
| approve (d) (v)     | يؤيد - يستحسن              | meanwhile(adv)     | في تلك الأثناء          |
| brilliant(adj)      | رائع                       | mission(n)         | مهمة                    |
| cartoon(n)          | أفلام رسوم متحركة          | mixed(adj)         | مختلط                   |
| certain(adj)        | مؤكد - متأكد               | neighbourhood(n)   | الحي - الجيرة           |
| choice(n)           | اختيار                     | performance(n)     | أداء                    |
| colleague(n)        | زميل (عمل)                 | pity(n)            | الشفقة - الحسرة         |
| critic(n)           | ناقد                       | quite(adv)         | إلى حد ما               |
| cruel(adj)          | قاسي                       | recommend(ed) (v)  | ينصح بـ - يوصي بـ       |
| demonstrate (d) (v) | يوضح - يبرز                | remake(n)          | إعادة إنتاج             |
| director(n)         | مخرج (برنامج / فيلم / ...) | rescue (d) (n - v) | إنقاذ - يُنقذ           |
| documentary(n)      | فيلم وثائقي                | review(n)          | عرض نقدي - مراجعة نقدية |
| energy(n)           | حيوية - طاقة               | scared(adj)        | خائف - مفزوع            |
| enjoyable(adj)      | ممتع                       | script(n)          | نص مكتوب - سيناريو      |
| escape(d) (v)       | يهرب / يفر                 | soundtrack(n)      | ملف صوتي                |
| extremely(adv)      | للاغاية / جداً             | special effects    | تأثيرات خاصة            |



|                   |                          |                 |                          |
|-------------------|--------------------------|-----------------|--------------------------|
| fan(n)            | مُعْجَب - مُشْجَع        | storyline(n)    | الأحداث - العُقْدة       |
| film (ed) (v)     | يُصوِّر فيلم             | style(n)        | أسلوب - نَمَط            |
| genuine(adj)      | أصلي                     | survive (d) (v) | يُنْجُو - يَبْقَى حَيًّا |
| incredibly(adv)   | بشكل هائل                | talent(n)       | موهبة                    |
| intonation(n)     | نبرة الصوت - تنغيم الصوت | talented(adj)   | موهوب                    |
| lack (ed) (v - n) | ينقصه - نَقْص / عَجْز    | totally(adv)    | كلياً / تماماً           |
| location(n)       | موقع                     | version(n)      | نُسخة                    |
| Mars(n)           | كوكب المريخ              | warmth(n)       | خَمِيمِيَّة - دِفء       |

### 3 Definitions تعريفات

| Memorise  | Understand   |
|---|--|
| <b>action film(n)</b><br>أفلام الحركة / القتال        | a film that has a lot of exciting scenes in it, in which people fight, chase, and kill each other                    |
| <b>animation(n)</b><br>الرسوم المتحركة                | a film, television programme, computer game, etc. that has pictures, clay models, etc. that seem to be really moving |
| <b>comedy(n)</b><br>فيلم كوميدي                       | a play, film, or television programme that is intended to make people laugh  |
| <b>constantly(adv)</b><br>باستمرار - دائماً           | all the time   |
| <b>historical(adj)</b><br>تاريخي                      | describing or based on events in the past  |
| <b>horror(n)</b><br>الرعب                             | a strong feeling of shock and fear   |
| <b>incredibly(adv)</b><br>بشكل خرافي - بشكل غير معقول | in a way that is difficult to believe  |
| <b>Martian(n - adj)</b><br>مخلوق خيالي من المريخ      | an imaginary creature from the planet Mars   |
| <b>musical(n)</b><br>مسرحية / فيلم غنائي              | a play or a film that includes singing and dancing   |
| <b>romantic(adj)</b><br>رومانسي                       | relating to feelings of love or a loving relationship  |
| <b>sci-fi = science fiction(n)</b><br>الخيال العلمي   | stories about events in the future which are affected by imaginary developments in science                           |
| <b>storyline(n)</b><br>الأحداث - العُقْدة             | the main set of related events in a story  |



|                   |             |                              |
|-------------------|-------------|------------------------------|
| surprisingly(adv) | بشكل مُذهِل | in an unexpected way         |
| talented(adj)     | موهوب       | very good at doing something |
| unkind(adj)       | غير ودود    | not friendly                 |

## Exercise On Vocabulary

### • Understand

- ☆ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

#### 1 Key vocabulary

- In this ..... film, two young men are struggling to survive after a destructive volcano. (الواسطي ٢٠٢٣)  
a. funny      b. comedy      c. musical      d. action
- "Tom and Jerry" are probably the most famous ..... characters. (بنا ٢٠٢٣)  
a. allied      b. historical      c. apparent      d. animated
- This ..... film is about a man and a woman remembering the time when they first met. (النوبارية ٢٠٢٣)  
a. comedy      b. romantic      c. historical      d. musical
- We can ..... the power of the wind to generate electricity. (المعصرة ٢٠٢٣)  
a. discover      b. explore      c. expire      d. harness
- There are a lot of ..... figures in the Egyptian history. (طما ٢٠٢٣)  
a. historic      b. historical      c. history      d. historian
- The most frightening part of this ..... film was when the shark ate three children. (الدلجات ٢٠٢٣)  
a. comic      b. horror      c. romantic      d. musical
- Climate change and global warming may make our environment ..... to us. (شرق مدينة نصر ٢٠٢٣)  
a. pretty      b. wealthy      c. friendly      d. hostile
- My friend talks ..... about his little daughter. He is crazy about her.  
a. a bit      b. quite      c. constant      d. constantly
- Someone who is fond of songs will prefer to watch .....  
a. actions      b. horrors      c. musicals      d. romantics
- The guitar is my favourite ..... instrument.  
a. marvellous      b. musical      c. hostile      d. brilliant
- Children like ..... films. Moving drawings attracts them.  
a. animation      b. comedy      c. horror      d. romantic



12. People who are cheerful prefer .....  
 a. animations      b. comedies      c. horrors      d. romantics
13. Time travel only exists in ..... stories.  
 a. science fiction      b. musicals      c. factual      d. comedies
14. Thanks to HD cameras, modern movies' ..... are far better than those of earlier movies.  
 a. mates      b. reviews      c. storylines      d. visuals
15. All my father's office ..... are invited to my sister's wedding.  
 a. cartoons      b. mates      c. talents      d. cages
16. A famous director intends to make this ..... novel into a film to benefit from its popularity.  
 a. talented      b. hilarious      c. Martian      d. bestselling

## 2 Important vocabulary

17. The film "Jurassic Park" is ..... from a Michael Crichton novel of the same name. (ادكو ٢٠٢٣)  
 a. attributed      b. adapted      c. applied      d. inhibited
18. The 2019 ..... of The Lion King lacks the warmth and energy of the original cartoon film. (دار السلام ٢٠٢٣)  
 a. vision      b. version      c. question      d. session
19. National Geographic is an exciting channel which shows only ..... (شمال بورسعيد ٢٠٢٣)  
 a. correspondences      b. documentaries  
 c. copies      d. competition
20. Don't be ..... to people like that. (أبو غالب ٢٠٢٣)  
 a. good      b. sociable      c. cruel      d. communicative
21. Research has ..... that babies can recognize their mothers' voice very soon after birth. (شربين ٢٠٢٣)  
 a. activated      b. participated      c. demonstrated      d. advocated
22. They were sent in a ..... mission to look for survivors under the ruins. (البداري ٢٠٢٣)  
 a. funny      b. comedy      c. rescue      d. curious
23. His application for the job might be rejected because he ..... experience. (العمرائية ٢٠٢٣)  
 a. links      b. lacks      c. declines      d. decreases
24. When I am abroad, I miss family .....  
 a. performance      b. script      c. soundtrack      d. warmth
25. Salah showed a ..... for football at a very young age.  
 a. documentary      b. talent      c. version      d. scenery



26. We had a/an ..... time on the beach.  
 a. historical      b. hostile      c. marvellous      d. original
27. The ..... of this song isn't as good as the original one.  
 a. science fiction      b. acting      c. mission      d. remake
28. The ..... is the main set of related events in a novel or a play.  
 a. mate      b. review      c. storyline      d. visuals
29. Would you agree to go on a/an ..... to the moon?  
 a. cartoon      b. acting      c. mission      d. remake
30. This film is absolutely ..... . Both viewers and critics like it.  
 a. brilliant      b. upset      c. brave      d. awful
31. We are going to ..... a documentary about Old Cairo.  
 a. escape      b. film      c. scare      d. affect
32. There is a mall in our ..... .  
 a. performance      b. neighbourhood  
 c. soundtrack      d. warmth
33. Are you interested in reading the ..... about the films you watch?  
 a. reviews      b. mates      c. storylines      d. visuals
34. Finally, his parents ..... of his marriage. They had been completely against it.  
 a. escaped      b. filmed      c. rescued      d. approved
35. It is a ..... to leave your job before getting another one.  
 a. pity      b. script      c. performance      d. style

### 3 Definitions

36. .... are plays or films that include singing and dancing.  
 a. Actions      b. Animations      c. Comedies      d. Musicals
37. .... means all the time.  
 a. Incredibly      b. Constantly      c. Historically      d. Surprisingly
38. .... means very good at doing something.  
 a. Talented      b. Unkind      c. Romantic      d. Historical
39. .... stories are about events in the future which are affected by imaginary developments in science.  
 a. Horror      b. Martian      c. Storyline      d. Science fiction
40. .... are plays, films, or television programmes that are intended to make people laugh.  
 a. Actions      b. Animations      c. Comedies      d. Musicals



## PART II

# VOCABULARY STUDY

### 1 Verbal Collocations متلازمات لفظية

|         |            |                    |           |                        |                              |
|---------|------------|--------------------|-----------|------------------------|------------------------------|
| become  | lost       | يتوه / يضل الطريق  | lack      | the warmth             | تنقصه الحميمية               |
| build   | a windmill | يبني طاحونة هوائية | make      | a film                 | يصنع فيلم                    |
| get     | lost       | يتوه / يضل الطريق  | recognise | differences in opinion | يدرك الاختلاف في وجهات النظر |
| harness | the wind   | يستغل الرياح       | win       | races                  | يفوز بسباقات                 |

### 2 Synonyms مترادفات

| Word  | Synonym (=Meaning) |
|---|--------------------|
| a bit   | قليلاً             |
| animate   | حي - متحرك         |
| animation   | الحيوية            |
| brilliant   | رائع / ممتاز       |
| brilliant   | ذكي - موهوب        |
| comedy  | كوميديا - الفكاهة  |
| constantly  | باستمرار - بانتظام |
| enjoyable   | ممتع               |
| harness   | يستخدم - يُسخر     |
| hostile   | عدواني             |
| romantic  | رومانسي            |
| romantic  | حالم - خيالي       |
| a little  | قليلاً             |
| living  | حي - متحرك         |
| liveliness  | الحيوية            |
| very good, excellent, marvellous, great, terrific | رائع / ممتاز       |
| gifted, talented, genius, intelligent             | ذكي - موهوب        |
| humour, fun, farce                                | كوميديا - الفكاهة  |
| continually, continuously                         | بانتظام - باستمرار |
| fun, entertaining, amusing                        | ممتع               |
| exploit, utilize, make use of                     | يستخدم - يُسخر     |
| aggressive, unfriendly, cruel                     | عدواني             |
| intimate, passionate                              | رومانسي            |
| idealistic, unrealistic                           | حالم - خيالي       |

### 3 Antonyms متضادات

| Word                       | Antonym (= Opposite)    |
|----------------------------|-------------------------|
| a bit                      | كثيراً                  |
| animate                    | ميت - بلا حراك          |
| brilliant                  | غبى - غير موهوب         |
| brilliant                  | سيء                     |
| comedy                     | تراجيديا - مأساة        |
| hostile                    | ودود - معتدل - مُقَرَّب |
| romantic                   | غير عاطفي               |
| romantic                   | واقعي                   |
| a lot, much, far, even     | كثيراً                  |
| inanimate                  | ميت - بلا حراك          |
| stupid, untalented         | غبى - غير موهوب         |
| bad                        | سيء                     |
| tragedy                    | تراجيديا - مأساة        |
| friendly, mild, favourable | ودود - معتدل - مُقَرَّب |
| unromantic                 | غير عاطفي               |
| realistic, factual         | واقعي                   |



#### 4 مشتقات المفردات الرئيسية Derivatives of key vocabulary

| animation   |  |
|---|--|
| <b>animate</b> (v) يُلجش / يُنشط - يحيي                           | - Happiness animates our faces.  |
| <b>animation</b> (n)<br>(أفلام) الرسوم المتحركة - تحريك - الحيوية | - Computer animation is used in this cartoon.<br>- This channel shows 3-D animations.<br>- She was talking with animation. |
| <b>animate</b> (adj) حي - متحرك                                   | - People, animals and insects are examples of animate beings. كائنات   |
| <b>animated</b> (adj)<br>ملئ بالحيوية - متحرك                     | - We had an animated debate about the advantages of smart technology.  |
| comedy  |  |
| <b>comedian</b> (n) ممثل كوميدي                                   | - Ismael Yassen was a great comedian.  |
| <b>comedy</b> (n) عمل كوميدي - كوميديا                            | - El-Zaeem is a comedy by Adel Imam.   |
| <b>comic/ comical</b> (adj)<br>فكاهي / مُضحك                      | - I like watching comic films.   |
| constantly  |  |
| <b>constancy</b> (n) الثبات - الولاء                              | - The constancy of prices is something positive.   |
| <b>constant</b> (adj) مستمر - منتظم                               | - Your constant mistakes are what makes you lose jobs.   |
| <b>constantly</b> (adv) باستمرار - بانتظام                        | - She constantly talks about her children.   |
| horror  |  |
| <b>horrify</b> (v) يُرعب - يصدِّم                                 | - The last scene horrified me.   |
| <b>horror</b> (n) الرعب   | - I was filled with horror by the last scene.  |
| <b>horrifying / horrific</b> (adj)<br>مُرعب - صادم                | - The last scene was horrifying.   |
| musical   |  |
| <b>music</b> (n) الموسيقى   | - She is interested in folk music.   |
| <b>musical</b> (n) فيلم غنائي                                     | - I watched a musical by Abdulhalim Hafez.   |
| <b>musician</b> (n) عازف  | - Omar was a talented musician.  |
| <b>musical</b> (adj) موسيقي                                       | - He plays some musical instruments.   |



| romantic                              |                                       |
|---------------------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| romance (n) الرومانسية - قصة رومانسية | - She enjoys reading romances.        |
| romantic (adj) رومانسي - خيالي        | - She enjoys reading romantic novels. |

## 5 Expressions & Idioms تعبيرات و مصطلحات

|                    |                      |                  |                   |
|--------------------|----------------------|------------------|-------------------|
| a bestselling book | الكتاب الأكثر مبيعاً | leave ... using  | يغادر ... عن طريق |
| animated film      | فيلم رسوم متحركة     | not yet          | ليس بعد           |
| back on Earth      | بالعودة إلى الأرض    | of the same name | له نفس الاسم      |
| bring ... home     | يُعيد - يستعيد       | on a farm        | في مزرعة          |
| die in a storm     | يموت في عاصفة        | others' opinions | آراء الآخرين      |
| far from           | بعيد عن              | romantic story   | قصة رومانسية      |
| fight scenes       | مشاهد عنف            | similar to       | مشابه لـ ...      |
| film reviews       | عروض نقدية للأفلام   | true life        | الحياة الواقعية   |
| five-year-old      | ذو الخمسة أعوام      | waste of money   | إهدار للمال       |

## 6 Verb + Preposition فعل + حرف جر

|                  |                       |                  |                            |
|------------------|-----------------------|------------------|----------------------------|
| adapt ... from   | يقتبس ... من          | rule over        | يحكم - يسيطر نفوذه علي     |
| climb onto       | يصعد علي              | shout at         | يصرخ في                    |
| escape from      | يهرب من               | steal (...) from | يسرق (...) من              |
| go back          | يعود - يرجع           | take off         | تُقلع الطائرة - يخلع ملابس |
| leave ... behind | يغادر تاركاً ... خلفه | take off from    | ينطلق من - يغادر           |

## 7 Clear the confusion لاحظ الفرق

### adapt ... from – adapt ... for

- ... **adapt ... from** يقتبس ... من - يأخذ ... عن  
- They **adapted** this film **from** a novel by Charles Dickens.
- ... **adapt ... for** يُكيف ... مع - يُعدّ ... ليصبح  
- They **adapted** a novel by Charles Dickens **for** a film.

### historic - historical

- **historic (adj)** تاريخي / قديم (تصف الأماكن والمباني)  
- The Pyramids are **historic** buildings.  
- Egypt has the most **historic** sites in the world.
- **historical (adj)** تاريخي (تصف حدث أو وقت هام سيسجل في التاريخ)  
- The two leaders had a **historical** meeting.  
- Landing on the moon was a **historical** moment.



• **historical (adj)**

- The pyramids are buildings of **historical** interest.

تاريخي (مُتعلّق بالماضي)

• **historical (adj)**

- I have done a lot of **historical** research.

تاريخي (مُتعلّق بدراسة التاريخ)

• **historical (adj)**

- I have read a lot of **historical** novels.

تاريخي (عن التاريخ)

• **historic = historical (adj)**

- Alexandria witnessed **historic / historical** battles.

تاريخي (وقع في الماضي أو كان موجوداً في الماضي) شهدت

## Exercise On Vocabulary study

• ☆ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

- The research centers demonstrate the link between poverty and illness.  
The verb "demonstrate" can be replaced by .....  
a. improve      b. reveal      c. disapprove      d. ignore  
(ساقطة ٢٠٢٣)
- The company has ..... some actions to solve the financial problem.  
a. referred      b. made      c. worked      d. taken  
(النوبارية ٢٠٢٣)
- A good leader should have special talent, the word "talent" is the synonym of .....  
a. skill      b. silk      c. tale      d. tools  
(الواسطي ٢٠٢٣)
- The antonym of "unkind" is .....  
a. unfriendly      b. friendly      c. hard-hearted      d. cruel  
(سوهاج ٢٠٢٣)
- I can't adapt ..... in this crowded city.  
a. for living      b. to live      c. to living      d. with living  
(النوبارية ٢٠٢٣)
- This film is adapted ..... a novel by Mahfouz.  
a. about      b. at      c. from      d. in  
(البلوب ٢٠٢٣)
- His behaviour with the neighbours didn't show any kind of peace with them. It was .....  
a. hostile      b. friendly      c. aggressive      d. a & c  
(امتحان الكتروني ٢٠٢٢ - الفترة المسائية)
- It is possible to ..... lost when you visit a city for the first time.  
a. come      b. get      c. make      d. do
- "He has romantic ideas about the perfect society." The adjective 'romantic' in this context is the antonym of .....  
a. amorous      b. idealistic      c. unromantic      d. realistic
- "Rodayna is a brilliant student." In this sentence, the synonym of 'brilliant' is .....  
a. stupid      b. gifted      c. talented      d. b & c



11. "I am a bit tired today." The adverb 'a bit' here is the synonym of .....  
 a. a lot                      b. far                      c. a & b                      d. a little
12. "What I love most about her is her animation." Which of the following gives a similar meaning to the noun 'animation'?  
 a. Liveliness                      b. Romance                      c. Inanimate                      d. a & b
13. Tragedy is to ..... as brilliant is to bad.  
 a. comedy                      b. romance                      c. animation                      d. animated
14. For a long time in the past, Arab kings ruled ..... a large area of the world.  
 a. from                      b. for                      c. over                      d. under
15. This film is based on a novel ..... the same name.  
 a. of                      b. to                      c. like                      d. up
16. The bus driver had to drive back because we had left one of the passengers ..... in the cafeteria.  
 a. ahead                      b. behind                      c. for                      d. to
17. "Do you want me to believe that the baby is safe with his sister who is ..... by a cricket صرصار?  
 a. horrifying                      b. horrific                      c. horrified                      d. horror

### PART III

## READING & LISTENING

### 1 Reading Texts

#### The Martian

(SB page 54)

Clever, exciting, and **surprisingly**<sup>(1)</sup> funny, The **Martian**<sup>(2)</sup> is a **brilliant**<sup>(3)</sup> film, **adapted from**<sup>(4)</sup> the **bestselling**<sup>(5)</sup> book of the same name, and **demonstrates**<sup>(6)</sup> the **talents**<sup>(7)</sup> of the actor Matt Damon and the **director**<sup>(8)</sup> Ridley Scott.



When **astronauts**<sup>(9)</sup> **take off**<sup>(10)</sup> from the **planet**<sup>(11)</sup> **Mars**<sup>(12)</sup>, they **leave behind**<sup>(13)</sup> Mark Watney (Damon), who they believe had died in a **storm**<sup>(14)</sup>. Watney is left with little food or water and has to find a way to **survive**<sup>(15)</sup> on the **empty**<sup>(16)</sup> planet. **Meanwhile**<sup>(17)</sup>, back on Earth, NASA and a team of **international**<sup>(18)</sup>

- (1) بشكل مذهل
- (2) المريخي
- (3) رائع
- (4) مُقتبس من
- (5) الأكثر مبيعاً
- (6) يوضح - يبرز
- (7) مواهب
- (8) المخرج
- (9) رواد الفضاء
- (10) ينطلق
- (11) كوكب
- (12) المريخ
- (13) يترك وراءه
- (14) عاصفة
- (15) ينجو - يبقى حياً
- (16) فارغ
- (17) في تلك الأثناء
- (18) دولي



scientists<sup>(19)</sup> work constantly<sup>(20)</sup> to bring him home<sup>(21)</sup>. At the same time his crew<sup>(22)</sup> mates<sup>(23)</sup> plan a brave<sup>(24)</sup> rescue<sup>(25)</sup> mission<sup>(26)</sup>.

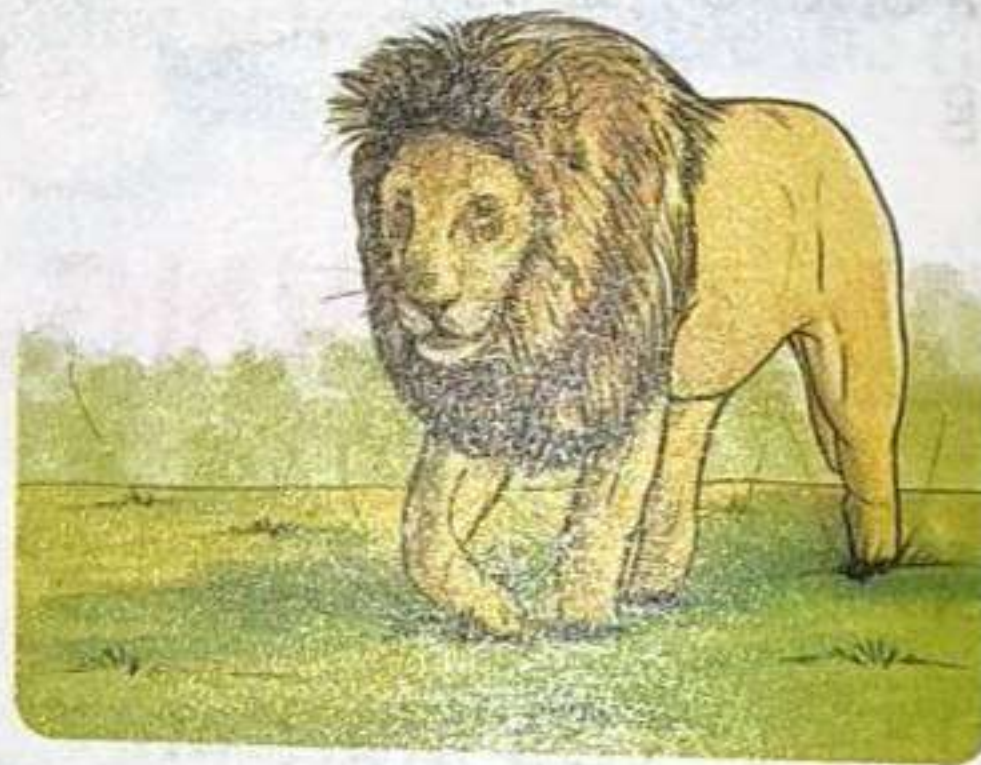
Unlike<sup>(27)</sup> most sci-fi<sup>(28)</sup> films, The Martian has no fight scenes<sup>(29)</sup>. Instead<sup>(30)</sup>, it is a clever and powerful<sup>(31)</sup> film and perhaps the best science fiction<sup>(32)</sup> film that I've seen in a long time.

علماء  
بالتظام  
يعود لموطنه  
طاقم العمل  
رفقاء  
شجاع  
إنقاذ  
مهمة  
على عكس  
الخيال العلمي  
مشاهد عنف  
بدلاً من ذلك  
قوي  
الخيال العلمي

## The Lion King

(SB page 54)

Although the visuals<sup>(1)</sup> in the 2019 version<sup>(2)</sup> of The Lion King are quite brilliant, this remake<sup>(3)</sup> lacks<sup>(4)</sup> the warmth<sup>(5)</sup> and energy<sup>(6)</sup> of the original<sup>(7)</sup> cartoon<sup>(8)</sup> film. This is even more surprising when you look at the list of talented<sup>(9)</sup> actors involved<sup>(10)</sup>. The storyline<sup>(11)</sup> is the same and the music and songs are great, but it just isn't as much fun and it's difficult to know why.



المؤثرات البصرية  
نسخة  
إعادة إنتاج  
يلقصه  
خميرية - دفاء  
حيوية  
أصلي  
أفلام رسوم متحركة  
موهوب  
مشارك  
الأحداث - العقدة  
قتل  
قاسي  
يقتل  
يتكرر  
الرسوم المتحركة  
يدو  
بشكل هائل  
حقيقي  
ربما  
يدو مثل  
الحياة البرية  
فيلم وثائقي

Like<sup>(12)</sup> the 1994 film, the story is about the young lion Simba, his unkind<sup>(13)</sup> uncle who kills<sup>(14)</sup> Simba's father, and Simba's life in the desert with his new friends Timon and Pumbaa.

The director Jon Favreau has created<sup>(15)</sup> an animation<sup>(16)</sup> which looks<sup>(17)</sup> incredibly<sup>(18)</sup> real<sup>(19)</sup> and maybe<sup>(20)</sup> that's the problem – it doesn't look like<sup>(21)</sup> an enjoyable film, more like a wildlife<sup>(22)</sup> documentary<sup>(23)</sup>!



## A film review

(WB page 31)

I don't expect to like films about children who **get lost**<sup>(1)</sup>, but the film *Lion* was surprisingly good. It's about a family in India who are constantly trying to find enough work to live well. One day, five-year-old Saroo goes to a town with his older brother, but when his brother doesn't return from a job, Saroo climbs onto a train and becomes lost. The story is about the brave boy as he tries to live in a city where the people are often **hostile**<sup>(2)</sup> and **unfriendly**<sup>(3)</sup>. I found the second half of the film less **enjoyable**<sup>(4)</sup>, although it is still good. Saroo is now a talented student of 25. He has a good life with a kind family who took him to Australia, but he wants to find out what happened to his brother and family in India.

The story is very brilliant and I'll always remember it. The **acting**<sup>(5)</sup> was totally powerful and I **definitely**<sup>(6)</sup> **recommend**<sup>(7)</sup> it.

- (1) يضل الطريق - يتوه
- (2) غداوي
- (3) غير ودود - قُظ
- (4) مُمتع
- (5) الأداء التمثيلي
- (6) بالتأكيد - قطعاً
- (7) ينصح بـ - يوصي بـ

## 2 Listening Texts

**Adel** : Tonight I'm talking to **film critic**<sup>(1)</sup> Seleem about the films he's seen recently.

(SB page 53)

Seleem, welcome.

**Seleem** : Hi Adel.

**Adel** : You've been a film critic for many years, so I guess you love watching films, don't you ?



- (1) ناقد سينمائي
- (2) مختلط - محير
- (3) مؤثرات خاصة
- (4) مشاهد العراك
- (5) شفقة / عطف
- (6) حائز على جائزة

**Seleem** : I do and there are some great ones out there. You're a fan of action films, aren't you ?

**Adel** : Yes, have you seen any good ones recently ?

**Seleem** : Black Panther. I really enjoyed it, but it's had **mixed**<sup>(2)</sup> reviews. The **special effects**<sup>(3)</sup> were great and so were the **fight scenes**<sup>(4)</sup>, but the dialogue was difficult to follow at times, which was a **pity**<sup>(5)</sup>. The best film I've seen lately was the **award-winning**<sup>(6)</sup>



Hidden Figures. I don't often watch historical films but this one is **brilliant**<sup>(7)</sup>. It's the true story of black female **mathematicians**<sup>(8)</sup> working at NASA in the 1960s and how hard they had to work to prove themselves.

**Adel** : They both sound good. Any others ?

**Seleem** : A Beautiful Day in the Neighbourhood. This is another true story. It's about Fred Rogers, an American children's TV presenter and a journalist. It's a story of **kindness**<sup>(9)</sup> and has a wonderfully positive message.

**Adel** : Tom Hanks was in that, wasn't he ?

**Seleem** : Yes, and as you know, I'm a big Tom Hanks **fan**<sup>(10)</sup>. He's a **marvellous**<sup>(11)</sup> actor and his films are so different. He's done comedy, animation, action – you name it, he's done it.

**Adel** : Very true. So, when you're not working, what kind of film would you choose to watch ?

**Seleem** : Well, believe it or not I love musicals. You thought I'd say action or science fiction, didn't you ?

**Adel** : I did yes, but why not. I mean I love horror films !

**Seleem** : [Sound surprised] Really ?

**Narrator** : 1

(SB page 53)

**Speaker 1** : You don't want to see this film, do you ? [falling intonation]

**Narrator** : 2

**Speaker 2** : Your test won't be difficult, will it ? [rising intonation]

**Narrator** : 3

**Speaker 1** : His parents aren't coming, are they ? [falling intonation]

**Narrator** : 4

**Speaker 2** : They played well, didn't they ? [falling intonation]

**Narrator** : 5

**Speaker 1** : You were scared, weren't you ? [rising intonation]



**Fares** : That was an amazing film, wasn't it ?

**Munir** : I disagree. The story wasn't very easy to believe, was it ?

**Fares** : That's not true. You read that report about the film online, didn't you ?

**Munir** : Yes. The review said the film used scientific facts, but you can't really go back in time, can you ?

**Fares** : Not yet, but it's easy to imagine what it would be like, isn't it ?

**Munir** : Perhaps you're right. You've always liked films like that more than me, haven't you ?

**Fares** : That's true. OK, next time, you can choose the film !

## PART IV LANGUAGE

نظرًا لطول القاعدة فقد تم تقسيمها إلى أجزاء ووضع تدريبات كافية بعد كل جزء بنظام التقويم البنائي، وذلك لتسهيل تقسيم شرح القاعدة واستذكارها والتدريب عليها

تنويه

### 1 Tag Question

السؤال المذيّل

#### النقاط الأساسية Basics

١ السؤال المذيّل هو سؤال قصير يوضع في نهاية الجملة الخبرية، ومعناه دائما : "أليس كذلك؟" أو "هل أنا على صواب؟"

جملة خبرية

+ فعل مساعد / ناقص

ضمير فاعل

ex. - Fish is my favourite food, isn't it ?  
- The boys didn't go to bed, did they ?

٢ الجملة المثبتة يتبعها سؤال مُذَيّل ملغي :

ex. - Omar will arrive at 12 o'clock, won't he ?  
- Sama can speak two languages, can't she ?

٣ الجملة المنفية يتبعها سؤال مُذَيّل مثبت :

ex. - Omar won't arrive at 11 o'clock, will he ?  
- Sama can't speak three languages, can she ?



٤ في السؤال المُذيل نستخدم دائما ضمير فاعل (وليس الفاعل) :

ex. - Ahmed isn't careful, is **Ahmed** ? (X)

- Ahmed isn't careful, is **he** ? (✓)

٥ يبقى ضمير الفاعل (I - we) كما هما في السؤال المُذيل ولا يتحولان إلى (you) :

ex. - I took the medicine, didn't **you** ? (X) - I took the medicine, didn't **I** ? (✓)

- We are late, aren't **you** ? (X) - We are late, aren't **we** ? (✓)

٦ في السؤال المُذيل يكون النفي بالصيغة المختصرة للفعل المساعد أو الناقص :

ex. - He works in a secondary school, **does not** he ? (X)

- He works in a secondary school, **doesn't** he ? (✓)

### Mini Test 1

Apply

● ☆ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. The exam won't be difficult, ..... it?

(دار السلام ٢٠٢٣)

a. doesn't      b. didn't      c. will      d. isn't

2. My brother isn't here, ..... ?

(حطوان ٢٠٢٣)

a. does he      b. is he      c. is my brother      d. isn't he

3. He's never late for school, ..... he?

(السوان ٢٠٢٣)

a. isn't      b. is      c. hasn't      d. has

4. Leen is a clever doctor, ..... ?

a. is Leen      b. isn't Leen      c. is she      d. isn't she

5. Taha hasn't got any sisters, ..... ?

a. has Taha      b. hasn't Taha      c. has he      d. hasn't he

6. My sister ..... hard, doesn't she ?

a. work      b. works      c. worked      d. didn't work

7. My sister ..... hard, does she ?

a. work      b. works      c. worked      d. doesn't work

8. Ali has bought a new digital camera, ..... he?

a. has      b. has not      c. hasn't      d. b & c

9. Roaa is a clever student, isn't ..... ?

a. she      b. Roaa      c. her      d. hers

10. I did not arrive late, did ..... ?

a. you      b. I      c. we      d. my



## 2

## Determining the correct auxiliary

## تحديد الفعل المساعد / الناقص الصحيح

يتم تحديد الفعل المساعد أو الناقص في السؤال المُذَيَّل حسب زمن الجملة :

١ في الجُمْل المنفية نستخدم الصيغة المثبتة من الفعل المساعد أو الناقص الموجود بالجملة في السؤال المُذَيَّل :

- ex. - Nada **didn't** prepare lunch, **did** she ?  
 - Tarek **can't** swim, **can** he ?  
 - They **aren't** naughty, **are** they ?  
 - We **don't** have a car, **do** we ?  
 - You **shouldn't** go to bed late, **should** you ?

## present simple

٢ إذا كان فعل الجملة في المصدر نستخدم (**don't**) في السؤال المُذَيَّل :

- ex. - I **help** you with the housework, **don't** I ?  
 - You **work** in a hotel, **don't** you ?

٣ إذا كان فعل الجملة في المصدر مضافاً له (s / es / ies) نستخدم (**doesn't**) في السؤال المُذَيَّل :

- ex. - Areej **helps** me with the housework, **doesn't** she ?  
 - Ramy **works** in a hotel, **doesn't** he ?

## past simple

٤ إذا كان فعل الجملة تصريف ثان (ماضي بسيط) نستخدم (**didn't**) في السؤال المُذَيَّل :

- ex. - I **helped** you with the housework, **didn't** I ?  
 - You **worked** in a hotel, **didn't** you ?

## am – is – are – was – were

٥ إذا كان فعل الجملة الأساسي أو المساعد (**is – are – was – were**) فيتم نفيه في السؤال المُذَيَّل :

- ex. - They **are** doing homework, **aren't** they ?  
 - I **was** in the office when you left, **wasn't** I ?

٦ إذا كان فعل الجملة الأساسي أو المساعد (**am**) فيتم تحويله إلى (**aren't**) في السؤال المُذَيَّل :

- ex. - I **am** waiting for the bus, **aren't** I ?

٧ إذا كان فعل الجملة الأساسي أو المساعد (**am not / am never / am rarely**) فيتم تحويله إلى (**am**) في السؤال المُذَيَّل :

- ex. - I **am not** late for school, **am** I ?  
 - I **am never** late for school, **am** I ?  
 - I **am rarely** late for school, **am** I ?



## has

إذا كان فعل الجملة (has + p.p.) فيتم استخدام (hasn't) في السؤال المُذيل :

ex. - Aya **has been** busy, **hasn't** she ?

إذا كان فعل الجملة الأساسي (has) فيتم استخدام (doesn't) في السؤال المُذيل :

ex. - Aya **has** a lot of friends, **doesn't** she ?

## يجب has to – has got to

إذا كان فعل الجملة المساعد (has to) فيتم استخدام (does / doesn't) في السؤال المُذيل :

ex. - Rodayna **has to** be at school in time, **doesn't** she ?

إذا كان فعل الجملة المساعد (has got to) فيتم استخدام (has / hasn't) في السؤال المُذيل :

ex. - Rodayna **has got to** be at school in time, **hasn't** she ?

## have

إذا كان فعل الجملة (have + p.p.) فيتم استخدام (haven't) في السؤال المُذيل :

ex. - The boys **have watched** the match, **haven't** they ?

إذا كان فعل الجملة الأساسي (have) فيتم استخدام (don't) في السؤال المُذيل :

ex. - They **have** lunch at three, **don't** they ?

## يجب have to – have got to

إذا كان فعل الجملة المساعد (have to) فيتم استخدام (do / don't) في السؤال المُذيل :

ex. - We **have to** finish the report today, **don't** we ?

إذا كان فعل الجملة المساعد (have got to) فيتم استخدام (have / haven't) في السؤال المُذيل :

ex. - We **have got to** finish the report today, **haven't** we ?

## had

إذا كان فعل الجملة (had + p.p.) فيتم استخدام (hadn't) في السؤال المُذيل :

ex. - Before lunchtime, Mai **had returned** home, **hadn't** she ?

إذا كان فعل الجملة الأساسي (had) فيتم استخدام (didn't) في السؤال المُذيل :

ex. - They **had** lunch at three, **didn't** they ?

إذا كان فعل الجملة المساعد (had to) فيتم استخدام (didn't) في السؤال المُذيل :

ex. - We **had to** finish the report yesterday, **didn't** we ?

## need – needs – needed

إذا كان فعل الجملة الأساسي (need / need to) نستخدم (don't) في السؤال المُذيل :

ex. - They **need to** take a rest, **don't** they ?

- We **need** some money, **don't** we ?

إذا كان فعل الجملة الأساسي (needs / needs to) فيتم استخدام (doesn't) في السؤال المُذيل :

ex. - Amr **needs to** follow a diet, **doesn't** he ?



٢١ إذا كان فعل الجملة الأساسي (needed) فيتم استخدام (didn't) في السؤال المذيل :

ex. - Walaa needed to go shopping, didn't she ?

٢٢ إذا كان فعل الجملة المساعد (needn't) فيتم استخدام (need) في السؤال المذيل :

ex. - You needn't drive so fast, need you ?

's

٢٣ إذا كان في الجملة الأصلية ('s) فإنها يمكن أن تكون (is) أو (has) - (لاحظ أنه لا توجد قاعدة حاسمة للاختيار بين (is) و (has) لكن يتم التحديد حسب المعنى) :

- ex. - He's at home, isn't he ? (= He is ...)  
 - He's a headache, doesn't he ? (= He has ...)  
 - She's waiting for us, isn't she ? (= She is ...)  
 - She's boring friends, doesn't she ? (= She has ...)  
 - He's punished for making mistakes, isn't he ? (= He is punished...)  
 - He's punished me for making mistakes, hasn't he ? (= He has punished ...)

'd = would / had

٢٤ إذا كان هناك ('d + inf.) في الجملة الأصلية فإنها تكون اختصار (would) , ونستخدم (would / wouldn't) في السؤال المذيل :

- ex. - He'd prefer to have fish, wouldn't he ?  
 - She'd never shout at her, would he ?

٢٥ إذا كان هناك ('d + p.p.) في الجملة الأصلية فإنها تكون اختصار لـ (had + p.p.) , ونستخدم (had / hadn't) في السؤال المذيل :

- ex. - He'd bought a new car, hadn't he ?

٢٦ إذا لم يكن هناك فعل في المصدر أو (p.p.) بعد ('d) فإنها تكون (had) كفعل أساسي, ونستخدم (didn't) في السؤال المذيل :

- ex. - He'd lunch in a restaurant, didn't he ?

٢٧ إذا كان هناك ('d rather) في الجملة الأصلية نستخدم (would / wouldn't) في السؤال المذيل :

- ex. - He'd rather go out, wouldn't he ?  
 - She'd rather not do the shopping, would she ?

## Mini test 2

● Apply

● Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

- You went to school yesterday, ..... you? (شرق مدينة نصر ٢٠٢٣)  
 a. don't                      b. did                      c. didn't                      d. do
- He always forgets his homework .....? (ميت سلسيل ٢٠٢٣)  
 a. never he                      b. doesn't he                      c. don't you                      d. did he
- Ramy has a sister, ..... he? (ببا ٢٠٢٣)  
 a. isn't                      b. haven't                      c. has not                      d. doesn't
- It's been a long time since you've seen him, .....? (شمال بورسعيد ٢٠٢٣)  
 a. haven't you                      b. isn't it                      c. is it                      d. hasn't it



5. You hadn't met this man before the conference was held, .....?
- a. had it      b. had it      c. were you      d. had you
6. They'd better leave early to go to their destination, ..... they?
- a. hadn't      b. had      c. would      d. wouldn't
7. Munir hardly buys a newspaper, .....?
- a. does he      b. isn't he      c. has he      d. doesn't he
8. We ..... a break between lessons, have we?
- a. have      b. don't have      c. haven't had      d. a & c
9. He's few friends, ..... he?
- a. is      b. hasn't      c. does      d. doesn't
10. He's no time to carry out all the tasks, ..... he?
- a. is      b. doesn't      c. hasn't      d. does
11. We take exercise to keep fit, ..... we?
- a. do      b. does      c. don't      d. doesn't
12. We don't eat much to keep fit, ..... we?
- a. do      b. does      c. don't      d. doesn't
13. A lion eats meat, ..... it?
- a. do      b. does not      c. don't      d. doesn't
14. A lion doesn't eat grass, ..... it?
- a. do      b. does      c. don't      d. doesn't
15. The girl ate fish for lunch, ..... she?
- a. did      b. didn't      c. was      d. wasn't
16. The girl didn't eat cheese for lunch, ..... she?
- a. did      b. didn't      c. was      d. wasn't
17. Ibrahim ..... in the office, wasn't he?
- a. is      b. isn't      c. was      d. wasn't
18. I am very late, .....?
- a. am I      b. am not I      c. aren't you      d. aren't I
19. I am not very late, .....?
- a. am I      b. am not I      c. are I      d. aren't I
20. Maha has gone back home, ..... she?
- a. has      b. hasn't      c. does      d. doesn't
21. Omar has breakfast before leaving home, ..... he?
- a. has      b. has not      c. doesn't      d. b & c
22. Samar ..... a drink during the break, doesn't she?
- a. has      b. doesn't have      c. has had      d. hasn't had
23. Samar ..... a drink during the break, does she?
- a. has      b. doesn't have      c. has had      d. hasn't had
24. Samar ..... a drink during the break, hasn't she?
- a. hasn't      b. doesn't have      c. has had      d. hasn't had
25. Samar ..... a drink during the break, has she?
- a. has      b. doesn't have      c. has had      d. hasn't had



26. She has to wear the school uniform, ..... she ?  
 a. has                      b. does                      c. hasn't                      d. doesn't
27. She has got to wear the school uniform, ..... she ?  
 a. has                      b. does                      c. hasn't                      d. doesn't
28. We have to arrive at work in time, ..... we ?  
 a. don't                      b. haven't                      c. do                      d. have
29. We have got to arrive at work in time, ..... we ?  
 a. don't                      b. haven't                      c. do                      d. have
30. You had a meal with some friends, ..... you ?  
 a. had                      b. had not                      c. did                      d. didn't
31. You didn't have a meal with some friends, ..... you ?  
 a. had                      b. hadn't                      c. did                      d. didn't
32. You had had a meal with some friends before going back home, ..... you ?  
 a. had                      b. hadn't                      c. did                      d. didn't
33. You hadn't had a meal with some friends before going back home, ..... you ?  
 a. had                      b. hadn't                      c. did                      d. didn't
34. She ..... help with her homework, does she ?  
 a. needs                      b. doesn't need                      c. needed                      d. needn't
35. I ..... help my daughter with her homework, need I ?  
 a. needs                      b. doesn't need                      c. needed                      d. needn't
36. She ..... someone to help with her homework, doesn't she ?  
 a. needs                      b. doesn't need                      c. needed                      d. needn't
37. She ..... help with her homework, didn't she ?  
 a. needs                      b. doesn't need                      c. needed                      d. needn't
38. She's watering the flowers, ..... she ?  
 a. is                      b. isn't                      c. doesn't                      d. hasn't
39. She's never late for work, ..... she ?  
 a. is                      b. isn't                      c. doesn't                      d. hasn't
40. She's always late for work, ..... she ?  
 a. is                      b. isn't                      c. doesn't                      d. hasn't
41. She's enough free time, ..... she ?  
 a. is                      b. isn't                      c. doesn't                      d. b & c
42. She's interesting jobs to do at home, ..... she ?  
 a. is                      b. isn't                      c. doesn't                      d. has not
43. She'd rather stay at home to relax, ..... she ?  
 a. had                      b. hadn't                      c. would                      d. wouldn't
44. She'd rather not go out, ..... she ?  
 a. had                      b. hadn't                      c. would                      d. wouldn't
45. She'd a tiring day, ..... she ?  
 a. had                      b. did                      c. didn't                      d. wouldn't
46. She'd had a tiring day before she finally went home, ..... she ?  
 a. had                      b. hadn't                      c. didn't                      d. wouldn't



### 3 Determining the correct pronoun

تحديد الضمير الصحيح في السؤال المذيل

- ١ كما ذكرنا من قبل، يُستخدم دائما ضمير فاعل (وليس الإسم) في السؤال المذيل :
- ex. - Reem was angry, wasn't Reem ? (X)  
- Reem was angry, wasn't she ? (✓)
- ٢ إذا كان الفاعل مفرد مذكر عاقل يُستخدم ضمير الفاعل (he) في السؤال المذيل :
- ex. - Omar bought a car, didn't Omar ? (X)  
- Omar bought a car, didn't he ? (✓)
- ٣ إذا كان الفاعل مفرد مؤنث عاقل يُستخدم ضمير الفاعل (she) في السؤال المذيل :
- ex. - Malak likes ice cream, doesn't Malak ? (X)  
- Malak likes ice cream, doesn't she ? (✓)
- ٤ إذا كان الفاعل مفرد غير عاقل يُستخدم ضمير الفاعل (it) في السؤال المذيل :
- ex. - A dog chased Yumna, didn't a dog ? (X)  
- A dog chased Yumna, didn't it ? (✓)
- ٥ إذا كان الفاعل جمع عاقل أو غير عاقل يُستخدم ضمير الفاعل (they) في السؤال المذيل :
- ex. - Nada and Sama are your best friends, aren't they ?  
- The rabbits ate all the carrots in the garden, didn't they ?
- ٦ هناك أسماء يُحتمل أن تكون مذكر أو مؤنث مثل :
- person - student - child - doctor- teacher - engineer - farmer...
- إذا كان واضحاً أن الكلام عن مذكر أو مؤنث، فإننا نستخدم الضمير (he / she) في السؤال المذيل حسب السياق :
- ex. - A person in a white blouse found my keys, didn't she ?  
- A doctor with a white moustache has examined me, hasn't he ?
- إذا لم يكن واضحاً من السياق أن الكلام عن مذكر أو مؤنث، فإننا نستخدم الضمير (they) في السؤال المذيل للإشارة إلى هذه الأسماء حتى عندما تكون في صيغة مفرد :
- ex. - A teacher has told you to improve your handwriting, haven't they ?  
- A student gave this mobile to the head teacher, didn't they ?
- ٧ نستخدم (they) كضمير في السؤال المذيل إذا كان الفاعل أحد الكلمات التالية :
- someone / somebody / anyone / anybody / everyone / everybody / no one/ nobody
- ex. - Someone has called you, haven't they ?  
- Everyone is at home, aren't they ?



٨ نستخدم (it) كضمير في السؤال المذيل إذا كان الفاعل أحد الكلمات التالية :

- something / anything / everything / nothing

ex. - Something has happened, hasn't it ?

- Everything is OK, isn't it ?

٩ إذا كان الفاعل (this / that) يعود على غير عاقل يكون الضمير في السؤال المذيل (it) :

ex. - That is your pen, isn't it ?

١٠ إذا كان الفاعل (this / that) يعود على عاقل يكون الضمير في السؤال المذيل (he / she) :

ex. - That is my son Ahmed, isn't he ?

- That girl is my daughter, isn't she ?

١١ إذا كان الفاعل (these / those) يكون الضمير في السؤال المذيل (they) :

ex. - These are our friends, aren't they ?

١٢ إذا كان الفاعل (there) تبقي كما هي في السؤال المذيل :

ex. - There's something wrong, isn't there ?

- There weren't any problems, were there ?

### Mini test 3

Apply

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. I think he is not good at math, .....?

(المعصرة ٢٠٢٣)

a. do I

b. is he

c. isn't he

d. don't I

2. Everyone's here, ..... ?

(شرق هديلة نصر ٢٠٢٣)

a. aren't they

b. don't they

c. isn't he

d. isn't she

3. Nobody in the family believes Carl, ..... ?

(غرب الزقازيق ٢٠٢٣)

a. do they

b. don't they

c. doesn't he

d. does he

4. This mobile phone cost you a lot of money, ..... ?

(العمرانية ٢٠٢٣)

a. doesn't it

b. does it

c. didn't it

d. don't you

5. Some boys broke the window, didn't ..... ?

a. some boys

b. he

c. they

d. them

6. A bird has built its nest here, hasn't ..... ?

a. it

b. he

c. she

d. they

7. Two birds have built their nest here, haven't ..... ?

a. it

b. he

c. she

d. they

8. A child is crying next door, ..... ?

a. isn't he

b. isn't she

c. aren't they

d. isn't it

9. Someone brought you a present, ..... ?

a. weren't you

b. weren't they

c. didn't they

d. haven't you



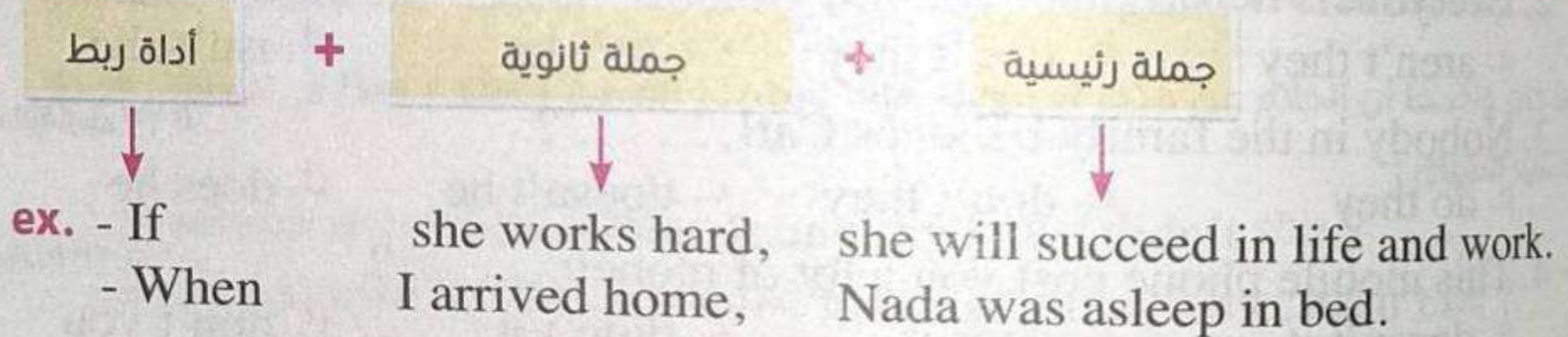
10. A typical Egyptian farmer with traditional earrings is working on a farm, ..... ?  
a. isn't she      b. is he      c. aren't they      d. are they
11. Somebody has stolen my mobile, ..... ?  
a. hasn't he      b. hasn't she      c. have they      d. haven't they
12. Something went wrong with my car, ..... ?  
a. did it      b. didn't it      c. did they      d. didn't they
13. This is my sister Sama, ..... ?  
a. isn't this      b. isn't she      c. isn't it      d. is she
14. That is my old motorbike, ..... ?  
a. isn't this      b. isn't she      c. isn't it      d. is she
15. These are the pens you want, ..... ?  
a. aren't they      b. aren't these      c. isn't it      d. is it
16. There was a policeman in front of the supermarket, ..... ?  
a. wasn't he      b. wasn't there      c. was he      d. was there

4

Tag questions with Compound and Complex sentences

السؤال المُذيل في الجمل المُركبة

1 لاحظ تكوين الجمل التي تحتوي على روابط :



2 الجملة التي تأتي بعد الرابطة مباشرة ليست جملة رئيسية ولا تُستخدم في تكوين السؤال المُذيل :

- ex. - If she works hard, she **will succeed** in life and work, **won't she** ?  
= She **will succeed** in life and work if she works hard, **won't she** ?  
- When I arrived home, Nada **was** asleep in bed, **wasn't she** ?  
= Nada **was** asleep in bed when I arrived home, **wasn't she** ?

لاحظ أن الجملة الثانوية لا تؤثر على السؤال المُذيل من ناحية النفي والإثبات :

- ex. - If Omar **doesn't** have enough time, Aya **will help** me, **won't she** ?



٣ لاحظ السؤال المُذيل في الصيغة التالية :

I / We + think / believe / say / expect / ... + جملة رئيسية + سؤال مزيل على الجملة الرئيسية

- ex. - I think Omnia is late, **isn't** she ? (Not: don't I)  
 - We believe that he **works** in a bank, **doesn't** he ? (Not: don't we)  
 لاحظ أن عبارة (I think / believe ...) تؤثر على السؤال المُذيل من ناحية النفي والإثبات :  
 ex. - I **believe** he **can win** the race, **can't** he ?  
 - I **don't** believe he **can win** the race, **can** he ?

٤ لاحظ السؤال المُذيل في الصيغة التالية :

He / she / it + think / believe / say / expect / ... + جملة رئيسية + سؤال مزيل على الجملة think / believe ...

- ex. - **Omar** **thinks** that he is right, **doesn't** he ?  
 - **They** **believe** that life in the countryside is simple, **don't** they ?

### Mini test

4

Apply

❖ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

- Noha called me as soon as dad had got out of hospital, ..... ?  
 a. did she      b. didn't she      c. had he      d. hadn't he
- If they were rich, they would donate money for charities, ..... they ?  
 a. were      b. weren't      c. would      d. wouldn't
- We don't think that the English test was difficult, ..... ? (المطرية ٢٠٢٣)  
 a. was it      b. do we      c. don't we      d. wasn't it
- I think everyone's here, ..... ? (جرجا ٢٠٢٣)  
 a. isn't he      b. don't I      c. aren't they      d. don't they
- I think Zamzam will come first, ..... ?  
 a. do I      b. don't I      c. will she      d. won't she
- I don't think Zamzam will come first, ..... ?  
 a. do I      b. don't I      c. will she      d. won't she
- I think Zamzam won't come first, ..... ?  
 a. do I      b. don't I      c. will she      d. won't she
- Khalid believes I am rich, ..... ?  
 a. doesn't he      b. does he      c. am I      d. aren't I



١ بعد جمل الأمر المثبت (افعل) يمكن أن نستخدم الصيغ التالية في السؤال المُذيل :

...., will you? ...., would you? ...., can you? ...., could you?

ex. - Give me a hand, will you?

- Wait here for a minute, would you?

- Get me something to drink, can you?

كما يمكن استخدام (can't you – won't you) في السؤال المُذيل لإعطاء جمل الأمر المثبت مزيد من التأكيد والحزم :

ex. - Keep silence, can't you?

- Return to your desk, won't you?

٢ بعد جمل الأمر المنفي (لا تفعل) نستخدم (will you) في السؤال المُذيل :

ex. - Don't lie to me again, will you?

٣ لا يُستخدم حرف الجر في (ought to) في السؤال :

ex. - You ought to be here in time, oughtn't you? (Not: oughtn't you to?)

٤ نستخدم السؤال المُذيل المثبت بعد الجمل التي تحتوي على ظروف وكلمات تعطي معني النفي مثل :

نادراً rarely - نادراً seldom - نادراً scarcely - hardly - nobody - no - never

... قلماً little

ex. - You never tell lies, do you? (Not: don't you?)

- It's no use trying to fix this mobile, is it? (Not: isn't it?)

- It's hardly been cloudy at all this summer, has it? (Not: hasn't it?)

- There's little we can do to help her, is there? (Not: isn't there?)

- Nobody arrived, did they? (Not: didn't they?)

٥ الصيغة (too + adj. + to) تُعطي معني النفي لكن السؤال المُذيل يكون منفي :

ex. - She is too young to get married, isn't she? (Not: is she?)

٦ نستخدم (must) في السؤال المُذيل في كل حالات استخدامها سواء ضرورة أو استنتاج :

ex. - She must have been ill, mustn't she? (Not: didn't she?)

٧ إذا بدأت الجملة بـ (Let's) يكون السؤال المُذيل (shall we) :

ex. - Let's go fishing, shall we?

٨ يرتفع الصوت في السؤال المُذيل إذا كان المقصود سؤال حقيقي (المتحدث يريد أن يعرف شيئاً) :

ex. - The train arrives at seven, doesn't it?

٩ ينخفض الصوت في السؤال المُذيل إذا كان المتحدث متأكد أن ما يقوله صحيح :

ex. - It is a good idea, isn't it?



١٠ إذا جاءت الصفة منفردة نستخدم كما في المحادثات (isn't it) :

ex. - Fantastic, isn't it? - Horrible, isn't it?

١١ لاحظ انه في الصيغة التالية يكون السؤال المذيل علي الجزء الأول من الجملة :

جملة + sentence + صفة + It + be + adj.

ex. - It's very important that we eat healthy food, isn't it?

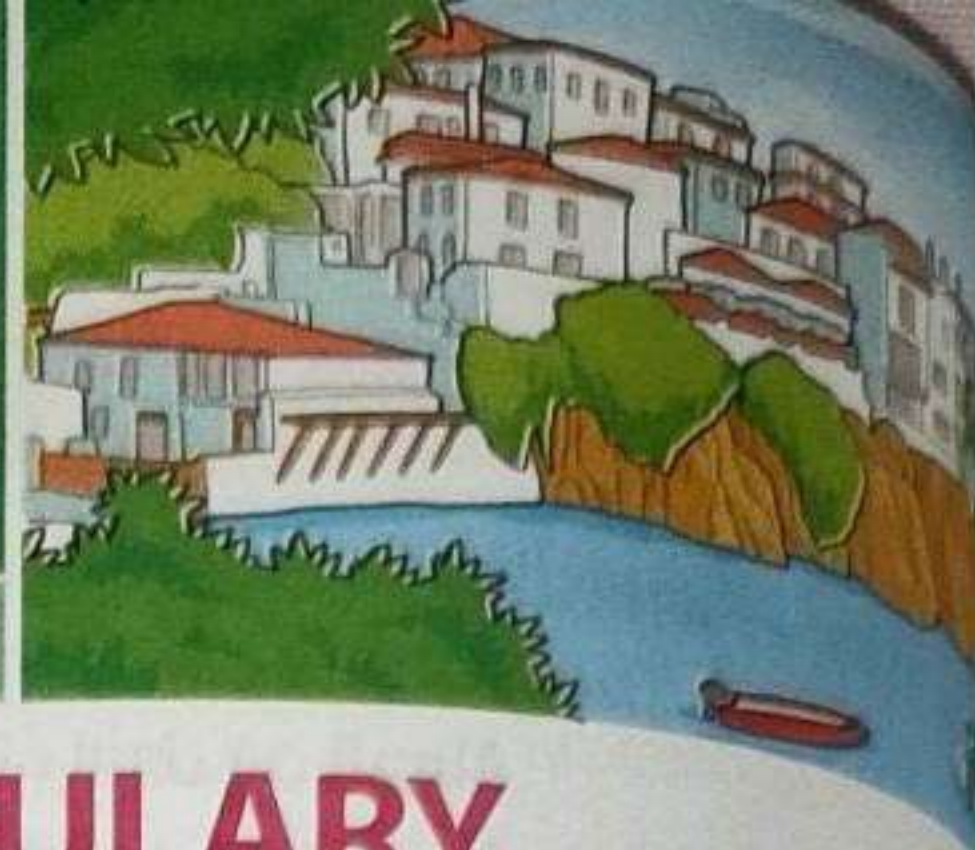
### Mini test 5

Apply

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. Let's visit the Egyptian Museum, ..... ? (سوهاج ٢٠٢٣)  
a. will you      b. shall you      c. shall we      d. can you
2. Nobody has arrived yet, ..... ? (أبنوب ٢٠٢٣)  
a. has he      b. hasn't he      c. have they      d. haven't they
3. She hardly goes anywhere alone, ..... (أبو المطامير ٢٠٢٣)  
a. is she      b. does she      c. doesn't she      d. hasn't she
4. No one read the story well, ..... ? (الزيتون ٢٠٢٣)  
a. did he      b. do they      c. did they      d. don't they
5. My brother can hardly speak Spanish, ..... he? (ساحل سليم ٢٠٢٣)  
a. can      b. can't      c. does      d. doesn't
6. She seldom has lunch outdoors, ..... she? (الفتح ٢٠٢٣)  
a. hasn't      b. doesn't      c. does      d. has
7. Don't eat the whole chicken, ..... ? (منشية أبو عامر ٢٠٢٣)  
a. will I      b. won't you      c. will you      d. won't I
8. Help me with the housework, ..... you?  
a. will      b. would      c. can      d. a, b & c
9. Don't shout at your sister, ..... you?  
a. will      b. would      c. can      d. a, b & c
10. They ought to help their neighbours, ..... they?  
a. ought to      b. oughtn't to      c. oughtn't      d. ought
11. The man must have lost his money, ..... he?  
a. must      b. mustn't      c. did      d. didn't
12. Ayman never wastes his time, ..... he?  
a. does      b. doesn't      c. does not      d. b & c
13. He's too fat to play football, ..... ?  
a. has he      b. hasn't he      c. is he      d. isn't he





## PART I VOCABULARY

### 1 Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

|               |                     |                |           |
|---------------|---------------------|----------------|-----------|
| amazing(adj)  | مذهل                | hilarious(adj) | مضحك جداً |
| annoying(adj) | مزعج                | powerful(adj)  | قوي       |
| awful(adj)    | شنيع - فظيع         | stupid(adj)    | غبي       |
| cheerful(adj) | مبتهج - بشوش - مبهج | upset(adj)     | مزعج      |

### 2 Important Vocabulary المفردات الهامة

|                  |                  |                   |                            |
|------------------|------------------|-------------------|----------------------------|
| affect(ed) (v)   | يؤثر في          | partner(n)        | شريك                       |
| astronaut(n)     | رائد الفضاء      | personally(adv)   | شخصياً                     |
| brave(adj)       | شجاع             | planet(n)         | كوكب                       |
| burning(adj)     | مُحترق - مشتعل   | popular(n)        | شعبي - محبوب               |
| choice(n)        | اختيار           | prefer(red) (v)   | يُفضل                      |
| empty(adj)       | فارغ             | right (n - adj)   | صحيح - مُجَوِّد / على صواب |
| ending(n)        | نهاية            | scenery(n)        | مناظر طبيعية               |
| equal(adj)       | متساوي           | silly(adj)        | سخيف - تافه                |
| equipment(n)     | مُعدات - تجهيزات | starve(d) (v)     | يعاني الجوع - يموت جوعاً   |
| mention (ed) (v) | يذكر - يقول      | suffer(ed) (v)    | يعاني                      |
| officer(n)       | ضابط             | surprising(adj)   | مُدهش                      |
| original(adj)    | أصلي             | surprisingly(adv) | بشكل مُدهل - من المُدهش    |
| owner(n)         | صاحب - مالك      | windmill(n)       | طاحونة هوائية              |

### Exercise On Vocabulary

#### • Understand

- Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

#### 1 Key vocabulary

- Losing the final match is a/an ..... experience I don't like to remember.  
a. brilliant      b. upset      c. brave      d. awful
- His ..... jokes made us laugh hysterically.  
a. equal      b. hilarious      c. Martian      d. bestselling
- His smile never disappears from his face. He is a/an ..... person.  
a. cheerful      b. cheerless      c. stupid      d. upset
- Continuous criticism النقد is .....  
a. amazing      b. amazed      c. annoying      d. annoyed
- This van has a/an ..... engine.  
a. hilarious      b. powerful      c. cheerful      d. upset



6. What a ..... decision! It is neither at its time nor in its place.  
 a. powerful      b. good      c. marvellous      d. stupid
7. Be careful when talking to him because he is a sensitive person who gets ..... very easily.  
 a. upset      b. amazing      c. cheerful      d. hilarious
8. Salah is a/an ..... footballer.  
 a. hilarious      b. awful      c. amazing      d. constant

## 2 Important vocabulary

9. We went for a drive to enjoy the ..... of the forest near our town.  
 (نبيل ٢٠٢٣)  
 a. sense      b. flavour      c. scenery      d. scent
10. ...., I think that comedy films always make people feel good.  
 (المرح ٢٠٢٣)  
 a. Personality      b. Personally      c. Personal      d. Person
11. Your opinion won't ..... my decision about travelling abroad.  
 (ديروط ٢٠٢٣)  
 a. affect      b. effect      c. infect      d. defect
12. In Third-World countries, most people ..... from poverty.  
 a. starve      b. affect      c. suffer      d. prefer
13. Keeping birds in ..... is something cruel. Birds have the right to their freedom.  
 a. cartoons      b. mates      c. talents      d. cages
14. You should be honest, especially with people who ..... you.  
 a. trust      b. invade      c. survive      d. lack
15. Egypt is a peace-loving country that never ..... or attacks other countries.  
 a. trusts      b. invades      c. survives      d. lacks
16. The ..... painting لوحة is now in the Egyptian Museum.  
 a. hilarious      b. hostile      c. powerful      d. original
17. Such a historical decision needed a/an ..... leader to take.  
 a. brilliant      b. upset      c. brave      d. awful
18. I didn't hear him ..... the place where he had left the keys.  
 a. mention      b. recommend      c. lack      d. suffer
19. You have the ..... to object, but in a polite way.  
 a. true      b. false      c. wrong      d. right
20. I haven't eaten anything all day. I am .....  
 a. starving      b. affecting      c. rescuing      d. preferring



# PART II

# VOCABULARY STUDY

UNIT

11

1

## Verbal Collocations متلازمات لفظية

|      |                                  |          |   |
|------|----------------------------------|----------|---|
| feel | sorry for يشعر بالأسف علي        | make     | people feel good يجعل الناس يشعرون شعوراً طيباً |
| get  | married يتزوج                    | share    | opinions with يتفق في الرأي مع                  |
| have | the right to لديه الحق في        | take     | control of يتحكم في                             |
|      | a powerful message له رسالة قوية | take/win | power يستولي على السلطة                         |
|      | a happy ending ينتهي نهاية سعيدة | tell     | a story يروي قصة                                |
| make | mistakes يخطئ                    |          |   |

2

## Synonyms مترادفات

| Word                       | Synonym (=Meaning)                                |
|----------------------------|---|
| amazing مذهل               | astonishing, very surprising, very good           |
| annoying مزعج              | irritating, displeasing                           |
| awful شنيع - فظيع          | terrible, very bad                                |
| cheerful مبتهج - بشوش      | pleasant, happy, jolly, joyful, joyous            |
| hilarious مضحك جداً - هزلي | very funny, extremely amusing                     |
| powerful قوي - مؤثر        | strong, intense, influential                      |
| stupid غبي                 | silly, unintelligent                              |
| upset منزعج                | distressed, troubled, worried, bothered, saddened |

3

## Antonyms المتضادات

| Word                       | Antonym (= Opposite)                         |
|----------------------------|--|
| amazing مذهل               | everyday - ordinary عادي                     |
| annoying مزعج              | pleasant, agreeable سار - مقبول              |
| awful شنيع - فظيع          | lovely, wonderful, excellent رائع - ممتاز    |
| cheerful مبتهج - بشوش      | sad, cheerless حزين - كئيب                   |
| hilarious مضحك جداً - هزلي | sad, serious حزين - جاد                      |
| powerful قوي - مؤثر        | powerless, weak, ineffective ضعيف - غير مؤثر |
| stupid غبي                 | intelligent, clever ذكي - ماهر               |



## 4

## Derivatives of key vocabulary مشتقات المفردات الرئيسية

| cage        |              |  |
|-------------|--------------|--|
| cage (v)    | يحبس في قفص  | - It is not fair to cage this bird.          |
| cage (n)    | قفص          | - It is not fair to put this bird in a cage. |
| caged (adj) | محبوس في قفص | - It is not fair to keep this bird caged.    |

## 5

## Expressions &amp; Idioms تعبيرات و مصطلحات

|                              |                    |                    |                  |
|------------------------------|--------------------|--------------------|------------------|
| a surprising end to the film | نهاية مذهشة للفيلم | not really         | ليس صحيحاً       |
| all the time                 | طوال الوقت         | on the island      | على الجزيرة      |
| at all                       | على الإطلاق        | positive thinking  | التفكير الإيجابي |
| be all the same              | جميعها متشابهة     | rescue mission     | مهمة إنقاذ       |
| be hostile to                | يكون عدوانياً تجاه | scientific facts   | حقائق علمية      |
| be terrible at               | سيء جداً في        | surprisingly funny | ممتع بشكل مذهش   |
| go into battle               | يدخل معركة         | the problem with   | المشكلة في       |
| have a right to              | لديه حق في         | true story         | قصة حقيقية       |
|                              |                    | young man          | شاب              |

## 6

## Verb + Preposition فعل + حرف جر

|                |                    |                |                 |
|----------------|--------------------|----------------|-----------------|
| give up        | يستسلم - يُقِلع عن | look like      | يشبه - يبدو مثل |
| learn ... from | يتعلم ... من       | share ... with | يتفق في ... مع  |

## 7

## Clear the confusion لاحظ الفرق

## be right to – have a / the right to

## • be right to + inf.

مُحق في

- We are right to ask for better working conditions ظروف.

## • have a / the right to + inf. / n.

له الحق في

- We have the right to ask for better working conditions.

= We have the right to better working conditions.

## go / get + adj. = become + adj.

• go / become (dark / يظلم / mad / يفقد صوابه / blind / يفقد بصره / deaf / يفقد سمعه / etc.)

dumb / يفقد اللطق / wrong / يخطئ / missing / يتوه

- If anything goes wrong, just call me.

= If anything becomes wrong, just call me.



- get / become (tired يتعب / bored يئس / angry يغضب / dressed يرتدي ملابس) / interested يهتم / cold يبرد / hot يسخن / burnt يحترق.... etc.)  
 - He easily gets angry and shouts at his children.  
 = He easily becomes angry and shouts at his children.

### Exercise on Vocabulary study

- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. My mother's words ..... me feel good.  
 a. lacked                      b. made                      c. shared                      d. won
2. Influential is to ..... as hostile is to cruel.  
 a. powerless                      b. powerful                      c. enjoyable                      d. fun
3. The problem ..... action films is that they teach children violence.  
 a. at                      b. with                      c. for                      d. on
4. There was a surprising end ..... the film.  
 a. from                      b. with                      c. by                      d. to
5. To me, romantic films are ..... the same. A boy and a girl meet and one of the two families refuse their marriage.  
 a. at                      b. some                      c. all                      d. as
6. My uncle is very happy because he has given ..... smoking since last October.  
 a. back                      b. down                      c. for                      d. up
7. The crown Prince ولي العهد will take ..... only when the King dies.  
 a. part                      b. place                      c. power                      d. turns
8. He is ..... the trumpet.  
 a. playing                      b. doing                      c. telling                      d. having
9. "You're amazing, Sama." This means Sama is .....  
 a. abnormal                      b. ordinary                      c. astonishing                      d. everyday
10. Something that is awful is not .....  
 a. lovely                      b. excellent                      c. serious                      d. a & b
11. When we say someone is cheerful, we mean they are .....  
 a. saddened                      b. distressed                      c. intense                      d. happy
12. "That's annoying." The adjective 'annoying' in this utterance is the antonym of .....  
 a. irritating                      b. displeasing                      c. pleasant                      d. amazing



13. She has ..... to accept or refuse the suggestion.  
 a. right                      b. the right                      c. a right                      d. b & c
14. She is ..... to accept or refuse the suggestion.  
 a. a right                      b. the right                      c. a & b                      d. right

## PART III

# READING & LISTENING

## 1 Reading Texts

### Two Films I have watched

(SB page 57)

I saw a great film last night. It was called "The Boy who **Harnessed**<sup>(1)</sup> the Wind". It was about a boy in Malawi who built a **windmill**<sup>(2)</sup> and helped his village get water. I thought it had a really powerful **message**<sup>(3)</sup> about **positive**<sup>(4)</sup> **thinking**<sup>(5)</sup> and never **giving up**<sup>(6)</sup>.



- (1) يُستخدم - يُسخر
- (2) طاحونة هوائية
- (3) رسالة
- (4) إيجابي
- (5) تفكير
- (6) الاستسلام
- (7) قصة لعبة
- (8) فيلم صور متحركة
- (9) شخصياً
- (10) نهاية

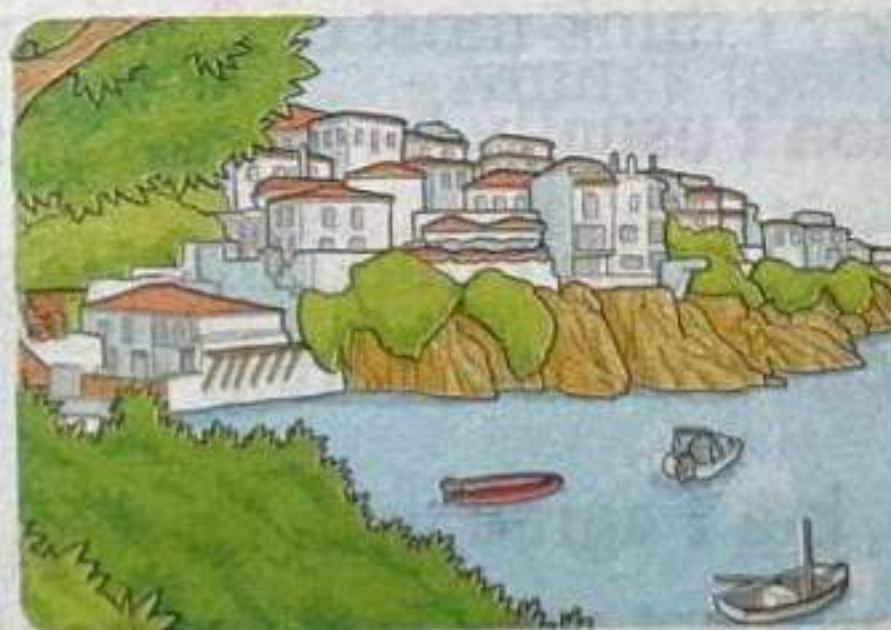
I also saw 'Toy Story<sup>(7)</sup> 4', which was great fun. It's a brilliant **animated film**<sup>(8)</sup>, and **personally**<sup>(9)</sup>, I think that these kinds of films always make people feel good. They're not too long and the stories always have a happy **ending**<sup>(10)</sup>.

### Two Film reviews

(WB page 33)

#### We met in Greece

If you like **musicals**<sup>(1)</sup>, then you'll love the film We met in Greece. It's about a man who travels to a **Greek**<sup>(2)</sup> island and meets the daughter of a hotel **owner**<sup>(3)</sup>.



- (1) أفلام غنائية
- (2) يوناني
- (3) صاحب - مالك
- (4) يسمح - يترك
- (5) رومانسي

At first, the hotel owner is very hostile to the man, but when he realises he's both kind and talented, he **lets**<sup>(4)</sup> his daughter marry him. Then it also becomes a **romantic**<sup>(5)</sup> story!



The music is brilliant and the **scenery**<sup>(6)</sup> on the island is beautiful. I would definitely recommend this film.

Some **comedies**<sup>(7)</sup> are **hilarious**<sup>(8)</sup>, but I didn't think that visit to a farm was funny at all. It's about a young man from the city who goes to help on his uncle's farm one summer.

The young man is **terrible**<sup>(9)</sup> at **farming**<sup>(10)</sup>, and makes lots of mistakes all the time. I'm not sure why this was supposed to be funny. Personally, I thought the man was **annoying**<sup>(11)</sup>!

The farmer is a kind man and some of the acting was quite good, but most of the film was too **stupid**<sup>(12)</sup> to enjoy. I would not recommend this film.

مناظر طبيعية  
أفلام كوميدية  
مضحك جداً  
سوء - فظيخ  
الزراعة  
مزعج  
غبى

## 2 Listening Texts

### People giving their opinions on films

(SB page 56)

**Ramy** : What kinds of film do you like watching Dareen ?  
Romantic ones, like Mum ?

**Dareen** : Not really, most of them are a bit silly. I love comedies, especially the old ones they make me laugh. I always feel happy afterwards. What about you, Tamer ?

**Tamer** : My favourite films are action films. They're really exciting and I love all the car chases and gun fights !

**Dareen** : Really ? I think most of them are really boring and they don't usually have a good story either.

**Tamer** : True, but I don't mind that. It's all about the action for me. You like action films too, don't you Ramy ?

**Ramy** : Some, but I agree with Dareen that they're generally not very interesting. I don't mind some science fiction films, but I enjoy horror films best.

**Dareen** : Aren't you scared ?

**Ramy** : Yes, but that's what I like about them.





- Injy** : What kinds of books do you like reading, Lina ? Science fiction ?  
**Lina** : Not really. Stories about space are boring. Personally, I like historical stories, because they teach you about the past. What do you prefer, Injy ?  
**Injy** : My favourite stories are horror stories. They're really exciting and I love frightening films !  
**Lina** : I disagree. I hate feeling scared. You like romantic stories as well, don't you ?  
**Injy** : I used to like them, but they're all the same : a boy meets a girl and they get married ! You like romantic stories too, don't you Lina ?  
**Lina** : Some, but I agree with you. They're all the same !



## PART IV

## LANGUAGE

### Adjectives and Adverbs

### الصفة والظرف

#### 1 Adjectives الصفات

١ الصفة هي كلمة تصف اسم و تأتي غالبا قبله :

- ex. - He bought an **expensive** mobile yesterday.  
 - I saw a **frightening** animal in the fields.

٢ يمكن أن تأتي الصفة و بعدها الموصوف أو بدون الموصوف بعد:

- **be** - **look** يبدو - **seem** يبدو - **appear** يبدو - **sound** يبدو - **taste** يعطي مذاق  
 يعطي رائحه **smell** - يعطي شعورا أو ملمس **feel**  
 ex. - Leen **felt** cold. - Ahmed **looks** happy. - Mum's food **smells** delicious.

٣ الصفات التالية لا تستخدم قبل الاسم مطلقا :

- حي **alive** - مُضاء **alight** - وحيد **alone** - نائم **asleep** - مستيقظ **awake** - خائف **afraid**  
 ex. - Roaa feels afraid when she is left **alone**.  
 - We were happy that he was **alive**.

٤ تأتي الصفة بعد الكلمات التالية وليس قبلها :

- **someone** - **somebody** - **something** - **somewhere** - **noone** - **nobody** - **nothing**  
 - **nowhere** - **anyone** - **anybody** - **anything** - **anywhere** - **everyone** - **everybody**  
 - **everything** - **everywhere**  
 ex. - I met **somebody** important.  
 - He needs to buy **everything** necessary.



## Mini Test 1

● Apply

● Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. Mariam is a .....  
a. tall                      b. girl tall                      c. tall girl                      d. tall girls
2. Mariam is .....  
a. tall                      b. girl tall                      c. tall girl                      d. tall girls
3. Amr looked very ..... after losing the match.  
a. anger                      b. angry                      c. angrily                      d. b & c
4. This flower smells .....  
a. a well                      b. a good                      c. well                      d. good
5. I saw ..... in front of my shop.  
a. an afraid boy                      b. boy afraid  
c. a boy who was afraid                      d. a & c
6. I enjoy looking at .....  
a. babies asleep                      b. asleep babies  
c. a & b                      d. babies that are asleep
7. There's ..... with my stomach.  
a. something wrong                      b. wrong something  
c. something who is wrong                      d. a & c

## A Comparative adjectives صفات المقارنة

١ تقارن صفة المقارنة بين طرفين في صفة معينة :

- ex. - Arabic is easier than English.  
- A lion is more dangerous than a fox.  
- Chicken is less expensive than meat.

٢ في الصفات القصيرة تتحول الصفة العادية إلى صفة مقارنة بإضافة (er / r / ier) لنهاية الصفة :

- ex. - fast – faster                      - old – older  
- large – larger                      - close – closer  
- easy – easier                      - happy – happier

٣ يُضاعف الحرف الساكن الأخير من الصفة القصيرة إذا كان مسبوقاً بصوت متحرك قصير ثم يُضاف (er) لنهاية الصفة القصيرة :

- ex. - big – bigger                      - thin – thinner

٤ تتحول الصفات الطويلة إلى صيغة المقارنة كالتالي :

- more أكثر / less + adj. صفة

- ex. - beautiful – more beautiful / less beautiful



## ملاحظات عامة على صفات المقارنة

١ يمكن أن نستخدم (less) قبل الصفات القصيرة (ولا يمكن استخدام (more) :  
 ex. - Ahmed is stronger than Ali. - Ali is less strong than Ahmed.

٢ يمكن استخدام الظروف التالية قبل صفات المقارنة لتقوية أو إضعاف الصفة:  
 كثيراً much - كثيراً even - قليلاً a little - قليلاً a bit - بدرجة طفيفة slightly - كثيراً a lot - كثيراً far - .....

ex. - Travelling by train is much slower than travelling by plane.  
 - The weather today is a little colder than yesterday.

٣ لاحظ شكل الضمير بعد (than) : (يُفضل استخدام ضمير فاعل إذا كان بعده فعل و يُفضل استخدام ضمير مفعول في حالة عدم وجود فعل):  
 ex. - He is taller than I am. = He is taller than me.

- We earn more money than they do. = We earn more money than them.

٤ يمكن استخدام (the) مع صفات المقارنة إذا كان بعدها (of) وكانت تشير إلى طرفين:  
 ex. - Hadeer is the taller of the two sisters.

٥ لاحظ استخدام الصيغة التالية بمعنى (كلما ..... كلما .....):

- فعل + فاعل + صفة مقارنة + the ، فعل + فاعل + صفة مقارنة + The

ex. - The taller you are, the faster you run.

- The more you eat, the less fit you are.

٦ نستخدم الصيغة التالية للتعبير عن التساوي:

- as + adj. الصفة + as

ex. - Aya is as old as Nada. They are both 17.

- Drinking fresh juice is nearly as useful as eating fresh fruit.

٧ في حالة النفي نستخدم الصيغة التالية للتعبير عن عدم التساوي:

- not + as / so + adj. الصفة + as

ex. - I am not as old as Omar. = I am not so old as Omar.

### Mini Test 2

Apply

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. My mother is ..... of my parents.

a. kind

b. kinder

c. the kindest

d. the kinder

2. Adel bought a new car for 50000 pounds and sold his old one for 20000. This means that Adel's new car is ..... his old one.

a. slightly more expensive than

b. even more expensive than

c. almost as expensive as

d. is exactly as expensive as

(العاشر من رمضان ٢٠٢٣)

(ساقطة ٢٠٢٣)



- ## B Superlative adjectives صفات التفضيل

**ex.** - Cairo is first largest city in Africa.



٢ لا تستخدم (the) قبل صفة التفضيل عندما يسبقها صفة ملكية أو ('s) الملكية:

- my - his - her - your - our - their - its - ..... 's

ex. - Naguib Mahfouz is **Egypt's best** novelist.  
- Is Ahmed **your youngest** brother?

٣ لاحظ استخدام حروف الجر (in - of) بعد صفات التفضيل:  
(أ) تستخدم (in) قبل الأسماء المفردة:

ex. - He is **the best** player in the team.  
- Everest is **the highest** mountain in the world.

(ب) تستخدم (of) قبل الأسماء الجمع:

ex. - Sama is **the cleverest** of her sisters.

(ج) يُفضل استخدام (of) قبل السنوات:

ex. - The death of my uncle is **the worst** event of 2016.

### Mini Test 3

Apply

• Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

- This is ..... picture I have ever seen. (منشئة أبو عامر ٢٠٢٣)  
a. nice                      b. nicer                      c. nicest                      d. the nicest
- I remember my graduation day. It was ..... wonderful day I have ever had. (شربين ٢٠٢٣)  
a. more                      b. most                      c. the more                      d. the most
- He is the team's ..... player. (النبوب ٢٠٢٣)  
a. the best                      b. best                      c. the better                      d. better
- Water is the ..... expensive of all liquids.  
a. most                      b. least                      c. less                      d. more
- This is my first ..... successful book.  
a. more                      b. most                      c. the most                      d. the least

## 2 Adverbs - الظروف - الحال

مقدمة عن أنواع الظروف

|                           |   |
|---------------------------|---|
| 1. Manner<br>ظروف الكيفية | - تستخدم ظروف الكيفية لوصف كيفية حدوث الفعل، غالبًا يوضع ظرف الكيفية في نهاية الجملة أو بعد الفعل أو قبل الصفة:<br>ex. - I dressed <b>quickly</b> .<br>- She is <b>beautifully</b> dressed.   |
| 2. Place<br>ظروف المكان   | - غالبًا يأتي ظرف المكان في نهاية الجملة وقد يأتي في بدايتها:<br><b>here - there - inside - outside - upstairs - downstairs ...</b><br>ex. - Can you sit over <b>there</b> .<br>- <b>Outside</b> , there was a small pond.                    |
| 3. Time<br>ظروف الزمان    | - غالبًا يأتي ظرف الزمان في نهاية الجملة وقد يأتي في بدايتها للتركيز على معنى الظرف:<br><b>now - then - yesterday - tomorrow - today ...</b><br>ex. - I'm going to the cinema <b>tomorrow</b> .<br>- <b>Today</b> , we're seeing our cousins. |



|  |  |
|--|--|
| <p><b>4. Frequency</b><br/>ظروف التكرار</p>        | <p>غالبًا يأتي ظرف التكرار قبل الفعل أو بعد تصريفات (be) والأفعال المساعدة :<br/><b>always – often – usually – sometimes – rarely – scarcely – seldom – occasionally – never ...</b><br/><b>ex.</b> - They <b>often</b> have homework.<br/>- My dad <b>usually</b> goes to the cinema on Saturday.<br/>- She <b>never</b> eats meat.<br/>- He is <b>rarely</b> later for school.</p> |
| <p><b>5. Adverbs of degree</b><br/>ظروف الدرجة</p> | <p>يأتي قبل الصفة ويحدد قوتها أو ضعفها مثل :<br/><b>very, quite, rather, even, a lot, a bit ...</b><br/><b>ex.</b> - She is <b>very</b> tall.<br/>- The weather is <b>quite</b> hot.</p>   |

### **A** كيفية تكوين ظروف الكيفية How to form adverbs of manner

ظرف الكيفية : وهو يصف كيفية حدوث الفعل و يجب عن السؤال بـ (How) :

**ex.** - A: How does Aya speak?

B: She **speaks clearly**.

- A: How do you drive a car?

B: I **drive carefully**.

- يأتي ظرف الكيفية بعد الفعل أو بعد المفعول:

**ex.** - She **walks slowly**.

- The teacher **called** our names **loudly**.

- يتكون ظرف الكيفية غالباً بإضافة (y / ly / ily) إلى الصفة:

(أ) بصفة عامة يتم تكوين ظرف الكيفية بإضافة (ly) إلى الصفة

• slow - **slowly** • quick - **quickly** • safe - **safely** • strong - **strongly**

(ب) وتُضاف (ly) حتى وان كانت الصفة منتهية بحرف (l)

• beautiful - **beautifully**

• cheerful - **cheerfully**

(ج) الصفة المنتهية بـ (le) يتم حذف حرف (e) وإضافة (y)

• probable - **probably**

• sensible - **sensibly**

(د) الصفة المنتهية بـ (y) مسبق بحرف ساكن تتحول إلى (ily)

• easy - **easily** • happy - **happily** • lazy - **lazily** • crazy - **crazily**

(هـ) غالباً الصفة المنتهية بـ (ly) تتحول إلى ظرف باستخدام (in a ..... way / manner)

• friendly - **in a friendly way** • cowardly - **in a cowardly manner**

(و) هناك ظروف غير منتظمة مثل:

• good - **well** • fast - **fast** • hard - **hard** • late - **late** • early - **early**



## Mini Test 4

● Apply

● Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. The footballer played ..... today. He scored three goals! (الدقائق ٢٠٢٣)  
a. brilliantly      b. brilliant      c. badly      d. lovely

2. We were ..... exhausted after a three-day journey without sleeping. (النوبارية ٢٠٢٣)  
a. very      b. completely      c. quiet      d. quite

3. Mohamed Salah is a/an ..... famous footballer. (النوبارية ٢٠٢٣)  
a. local      b. national      c. international      d. globally

4. He can ..... see anything without his glasses. (ادكو ٢٠٢٣)  
a. nearly      b. hardly      c. wrong      d. hard

5. I phoned my brother and told him it was raining ..... (شمال بورسعيد ٢٠٢٣)  
a. heavily      b. heavy      c. heavier      d. heaviest

6. Everybody at the party was ..... dressed.  
a. colourful      b. colourfully  
c. quite a colourful      d. a quite colourfully

7. Father was ..... respected by those who worked with him.  
a. great      b. greatness      c. greatly      d. greatest

8. Amir is a quick runner. He .....  
a. quick runs      b. runs quick      c. quickly run      d. runs quickly

9. Unit 11 is quite easy. I can .....  
a. easily it study      b. it study easily  
c. study it easily      d. study easily it

10. He played the match very ....., so he lost it.  
a. bad      b. badly      c. well      d. good

11. This girl behaves in a ..... way.  
a. friends      b. friendship      c. friendly      d. pen friends

12. It is raining .....  
a. heavy      b. heavily      c. heaviness      d. heavenly

13. Ali is a very ..... driver. He makes a lot of accidents.  
a. good      b. well      c. bad      d. badly

14. He answered nearly all the questions ..... He got low marks.  
a. well      b. bad      c. right      d. wrong

15. You should climb the stairs .....  
a. careful      b. care      c. carefully      d. carelessly

16. Now, my secretary does the office work more ..... than before.  
a. friendly      b. efficiently      c. lately      d. well



## B Using adverbs of degree with adjectives استخدام ظروف الدرجة مع الصفات

| No. | Type النوع                            | Notes ملاحظات  |
|-----|---------------------------------------|--|
| 1   | Ordinary adjectives<br>الصفات العادية | <p>١. الصفات العادية هي صفات ذات معني عادي مثل :</p> <p>- hot, tired, cold, angry, old, dirty .....</p> <p>٢. تُستخدم ظروف الدرجة التالية قبل الصفات العادية:</p> <p>حقاً really - جداً very - إلى حد ما rather/quite - قليلاً a bit/little - للغاية extremely</p> <p>ex. - The water is very hot. - I'm extremely tired.</p> <p>٣. يمكن أن تُستخدم الصفات العادية في المقارنة والتفضيل:</p> <p>ex. - Ahmed is older than Sama.</p> <p>- Omar is the tallest student at school.</p>  |
| 2   | Extreme adjectives<br>الصفات القوية   | <p>١. هي صفات ذات معني قوي مثل :</p> <p>- gigantic ضخم - furious ساخط - ancient عتيق/قديم جداً - hilarious مضحك جداً - brilliant رائع</p> <p>٢. تُستخدم ظروف الدرجة التالية قبل الصفات القوية:</p> <p>- absolutely مطلق - utterly/entirely كلياً - completely حقاً really - بشدة awfully - كلياً / تماماً totally - تماماً</p> <p>ex. - This engine is absolutely excellent.</p> <p>- The temple is utterly ancient.</p> <p>٣. في الغالب لا تُستخدم الصفات القوية في المقارنة والتفضيل:</p> <p>ex. - Alexandria is more ancient than Cairo. (X)</p> <p>- This is the most boiling water. (X)</p> |
| 3   | Absolute adjectives<br>الصفات المطلقة | <p>١. هي صفات ذات معني مطلق ، بمعنى أنها موجودة أو غير موجودة مثل :</p> <p>- dead ميت - main أساسي - final نهائي - impossible مستحيل</p> <p>٢. لا تُستخدم أي ظروف درجة قبل الصفات المطلقة:</p> <p>ex. - He is extremely dead. (X) - That is very final. (X)</p> <p>٣. لا يمكن أن تُستخدم الصفات المطلقة في المقارنة والتفضيل:</p> <p>ex. - My grandfather is deader than my grandmother. (X)</p> <p>- My grandfather is the deadest in the family. (X)</p>   |



## Mini Test 5

Apply

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. Sama didn't come to school today because she had a/an ..... bad headache.

- a. very      b. absolutely      c. completely      d. utterly

2. Mr Mohammed is an ..... amazing teacher. We all love him.

- a. absolute      b. absolutely      c. absent-minded      d. absently

3. Ali said that he was ..... sorry to be late for the meeting.

- a. easily      b. awfully      c. slightly      d. hardly

4. He couldn't buy the suit because it was ..... expensive.

- a. rather      b. quiet      c. never      d. hardly

5. We used to live in a very ..... house in the countryside.

- a. huge      b. enormous      c. big      d. gigantic

6. We like our English teacher. He is ..... a good person.

- a. quite      b. rather      c. never      d. hardly

7. The weather is ..... hot today.

- a. completely      b. absolutely      c. entirely      d. very

8. He has no money at all. He is ..... poor.

- a. rather      b. fairly      c. quiet      d. extremely

## C Important Notes ملاحظات هامة

1 verb فعل + **adverb** ظرف = **adjective** صفة + **noun**

ex. - He is a good swimmer.

= He swims well.

- He runs quickly.

= He is a quick runner.

2 verb فعل + **adverb** ظرف = **adjective** صفة + **in/at ... + (inf. + ing)**

ex. - Mum cooks well.

= Mum is good at cooking.

- Mai is slow when walking.

= Mai walks slowly.

3 An **extreme adjective** صفة قوية = **extremely/very + ordinary adjective** صفة عادية

ex. - He is starving.

= He is very hungry.

- This water is extremely hot.

= This water is boiling.

4 **adverb** ظرف = **in + adj. صفة + way/manner.**

ex. - His talk was friendly.

= He talked in a friendly way.

- He behaves in a simple manner.

= He behaves simply.



**5** It is + adj. صفة = **adverb** ظرف

- ex.** - It is surprising that he has come first.  
= Surprisingly, he has come first.  
- Interestingly, he can speak four languages.  
= It is interesting that he can speak four languages.

**6** be + **adverb** ظرف + adj. صفة = have + adj. صفة + noun .....

- ex.** - She was extremely ill.  
= She had an extreme illness.  
- My sister is clearly intelligent.  
= My sister has clear intelligence.

**7** Subject + never/rarely/hardly/no sooner .... + verb .....

= Never / Rarely / Hardly / No sooner .... + فعل مساعد/ناقص + subject + verb ....

- ex.** - We have never seen such bad manners.  
= Never have we seen such bad manners.  
- My mum rarely left the house.  
= Rarely did my mum leave the house.

### Mini Test 6

Apply

• Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

- How ..... do you run?  
a. quick                      b. quickly                      c. quickness                      d. quickest
- How ..... are you at running?  
a. quick                      b. quickly                      c. quickness                      d. quickest
- She was ..... intelligent.  
a. clear                      b. clearly                      c. a clearly                      d. more clearly
- She had ..... intelligence.  
a. clear                      b. clearly                      c. a clearly                      d. more clearly
- After the training, I feel ..... exhausted.  
a. quite                      b. very                      c. real                      d. extremely
- You have to work very ..... with the other members of your team.  
a. wonderful                      b. excellent                      c. hard                      d. gorgeous
- To work with others, train yourself to be .....  
a. intolerance                      b. tolerance                      c. tolerantly                      d. tolerant



8. Hassan Shehata was the coach of the National Team from 2006 to 2011. He was ..... at coaching.
- |                           |                           |
|---------------------------|---------------------------|
| a. brilliantly absolutely | b. absolutely brilliantly |
| c. brilliant absolutely   | d. absolutely brilliant   |

### General Exercise On Language

● Apply

★ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

#### Check your understanding

1. I have never seen such an intelligent young man. This exactly means .....
  - a. This young man is very intelligent.
  - b. This is the first time I have ever seen such an intelligent man.
  - c. I have never seen intelligent young men before.
  - d. I haven't ever seen intelligent young men before.
2. If you go on eating a lot of rice, you will put on even more weight. This means .....
  - a. the more rice you eat, the less weight you put on.
  - b. the more rice you eat, the more weight you put on.
  - c. the less rice you eat, the more weight you put on.
  - d. the more rice you eat, the more weight you lose.
3. Naglaa is clever, but Esraa is cleverer. This means .....
  - a. Esraa is less clever than Naglaa.
  - b. Naglaa is much cleverer than Esraa.
  - c. Naglaa isn't as clever as Esraa.
  - d. Naglaa is as clever as Esraa.
4. Rokaya has the same cleverness as Leen. This exactly means .....
  - a. both rokaya and leen are clever.
  - b. neither rokaya nor leen is clever.
  - c. Rokaya isn't so clever as Leen.
  - d. Rokaya is as clever as Leen.
5. "He is exhausted." What does this mean?

|                          |                           |
|--------------------------|---------------------------|
| a. He is tired.          | b. He is very tired.      |
| c. He is very exhausted. | d. He is quite exhausted. |
6. "The scene was extremely surprising." This means .....

|                                   |                             |
|-----------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| a. it was absolutely astonishing. | b. it was very astonishing. |
| c. it was astonishing.            | d. it was not astonishing.  |



7. "My elder brother was furious." What does this mean?  
 a. He was angry. b. He was annoyed.  
 c. He was quite annoyed. d. He felt too much anger.
8. "We were lucky to meet him." What does this mean?  
 a. Luckily, we meet him. b. Luckily, we never meet him.  
 c. Luckily, we met him. d. Luckily, we never met him.
9. "Surprisingly, she agreed to marry him." This means .....  
 a. she was surprised to marry him  
 b. she was a surprise to marry him  
 c. it was surprised that she agreed to marry him  
 d. it was surprising that she agreed to marry him
10. "He is a coward." This means .....  
 a. he is a cowardly b. he behaves cowardly  
 c. he behaves in a cowardly way d. he shows no cowardice
11. "He is a good teacher." This is equal in meaning to .....  
 a. he teaches well b. he teaches good  
 c. he teaches goodly d. he teaches badly
12. "He types perfectly on the computer." This means .....  
 a. he is perfectly at typing on the computer  
 b. he is perfect at typing on the computer  
 c. he types perfect at typing on the computer  
 d. he is not perfect at typing on the computer

## A week is enough

مراجعة المنهج  
 والتمكن منه في اسبوع واحد فقط







## PART I LANGUAGE HINTS

### The police الشرطة

١. كلمة (police) جمع دائماً وتأخذ فعل جمع (are – were – have – don't) :

- ex. - The police were looking for the thieves. (Not: The police was ...)  
- The police keep the whole society safe. (Not: The police keeps ...)

٢. كلمة (police) يعود عليها ضمير جمع (they – them – their – theirs...) :

- ex. - We are grateful for the police because they keep us safe.

٣. كلمة (police) لا تأخذ أدوات التذكير (an - a) :

- ex. - The police arrested some criminals. (Not: A police ...)

٤. عند التحدث عن رجال الشرطة بشكل مستقل يمكن أن نقول :

- a police officer / police officers ضابط / ضباط الشرطة
- a policeman / policemen رجل / رجال الشرطة

### better / best / the best

لاحظ الصيغة التالية مع بعض أفعال المشاعر:

• like / love / admire / enjoy ... + obj. مفعول + better / best / the best

- ex. - I like action films, but I like romantic films better.

- Marwa likes all kinds of food, but she likes kebabs best / the best.

• like / love / admire / enjoy ... + obj. مفعول + more / most / the most

- ex. - I sometimes play handball, but I enjoy football more.

- I sometimes play handball or tennis, but I enjoy football most / the most.

### Like / Unlike

• like مثل X unlike على عكس

- تُستخدم (like / unlike) كحروف جر بمعنى (مثل – على عكس) :

- ex. - Like his father, Ahmed is hardworking. They are similar.

- Unlike her mother, Rody is tall. They are different.



بلفس الكم أو الدرجة **as much**

quite as much = the same quantity / amount of نفس الكم / المبلغ

**ex.** - Organic farming doesn't make quite as much money as inorganic farming.

= Organic farming doesn't make the same amount of money as inorganic farming.

**public**

كلمة (public) عندما تستخدم كصفة بمعنى عام تأتي قبل الاسم دائماً :

**ex.** - It is better if we use transport which is public. (X)

- It is better if we use public transport. (✓)

### General Exercise on Language Hints

☉ ☆ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. I don't mind comedies, but I like musicals .....  
a. better      b. best      c. the best      d. b & c
2. I don't mind comedies or romantic movies, but I like musicals .....  
a. better      b. best      c. the best      d. b & c
3. .... her father, Leen has a serious character. They both work hard.  
a. Once      b. As      c. Unlike      d. Like
4. .... her mother, Aya has long hair. Her mother's is short.  
a. Once      b. As      c. Unlike      d. Like
5. The remake looks marvellous, but it just isn't ..... fun and it's difficult to know why.  
a. as much      b. like much      c. as many      d. like many
6. .... police chased some terrorists.  
a. A      b. An      c. The      d. a & c
7. .... policeman chased some terrorists.  
a. A      b. An      c. The      d. a & c
8. The police ..... citizens from criminals.  
a. protect      b. protects      c. are protected      d. is protecting



## 1 Reading

- ★ Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

It was just before bedtime. Sally was reading a hair-raising ghost story. She loved the excitement of scaring herself before a good night's sleep. She was reading the story halfway when she suddenly heard the squeaky opening of her front door. She was surprised by the scary sound. She felt something was wrong. Sally gently pushed the warm blanket aside and slowly crept out of her bed. She walked down the stairs. Even her very own footsteps on the creaky stairs scared her. She heard the soft sound of footsteps in the kitchen and she stopped to listen. It was surely a ghost from the past since everyone she knew was in their beds fast asleep at this hour. The darkness also frightened her, but she wanted to find out what was making the strange noise. She turned to enter the kitchen where the noise seemed to be coming. Suddenly, she walked right into a dark figure. The dark figure stretched out a hand and quickly turned on the bright kitchen lights. It was Sally's elder brother Ken! He could not help laughing at poor Sally. He had been out late that night with his friends and had just returned home. Sally felt silly to have thought it was a ghost. She had a good laugh, too.

- ★ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

- Sally ..... reading ghost stories.  
a. enjoyed                      b. didn't enjoy      c. feared                      d. avoided
- Who does the underlined phrase "The dark figure" refer to?  
a. The strange noise                      b. Sally  
c. Sally's brother                      d. The ghost
- Sally realized the dark figure was not a ghost when her brother .....  
a. woke up her                      b. turned on the lights  
c. walked down the steps                      d. laughed
- ..... scared Sally so much.  
a. Reading                      b. Excitement      c. Bright light                      d. Voices
- The best title for the passage is .....  
a. Reading                      b. The dark colours  
c. The kitchen ghost                      d. Ken and Sally
- Ken had been .....  
a. out with friends                      b. out alone  
c. asleep deeply                      d. in the garden



7. Sally ..... Ken.

- a. was angry with  
c. was not angry with

- b. had had a look at  
d. had an idea about

8. Finally, Sally felt ..... to have thought the dark figure was a ghost.

- a. cold                      b. foolish                      c. frightened                      d. nothing

## 2 Review Writing كتابة العروض النقدية

Write a review of about (180) about a film you have recently watched. It can be a film you liked very much or didn't like at all.

### The Blue Elephant

The Blue Elephant (Arabic: Al Fil Al Azraq) is an Egyptian horror and mystery film which was produced and directed by Marwan Hamed in 2014. The story was adapted from an Arabic novel written by the famous Egyptian writer Ahmed Mourad.

The film was starred by the Egyptian actors: Karim Abdel Aziz, Khaled El-Sawy and Nelly Karim. It talks about a man called Yehia, who unwillingly comes out of isolation العزلة after five years, to resume يستأنف his work in El-Abbaseya Psychiatric نفسي Hospital. Yehia is in charge of evaluating تقييم the mental العقلية health of the insane مجنون criminals.

Between 2018 and 2019, there has been a sequel named The Blue Elephant 2. According to Ahmed Mourad, the writer of the original Arabic novel, the book and the film hold two different endings. The director changed the closing scene of the movie to allow the film to satisfy a large number of viewers.

The Blue Elephant received mixed reviews but performed well in the Egyptian market during Eid time. The film did not follow the formula of the recent slew of Egyptian comedies, yet it managed to win over audiences across the Arab region. I really recommend this film.

## 3 Speaking skill مهارة التحدث

عندما تشارك آرائك مع الآخرين، استمع جيدًا لما يقولون، وقل لهم هل تتفق معهم أم لا، وإذا كنت لا تتفق أخبرهم بأدب واذكر أسبابك، وا طرح عليهم أسئلة لمعرفة المزيد عن آرائهم، ويمكنك استخدام تعبيرات مثل:

Why do you think ...?

What do you prefer?

I agree with you.

I disagree, because ...

I'm not sure.

Personally, I like ...

لماذا تظن أن ...؟

ماذا تفضل؟

إنني أتفق معك.

إنني لا أتفق معك أن ...

لست على يقين.

شخصياً، أفضّل ...



#### 4 الترجمة Translation

##### 1 Choose the correct Arabic translation from a, b, c or d:

1. Egyptian investors and businessmen have a great responsibility to finance new inventions. This can lead to great progress for Egypt and reasonable economic benefits for them. (فارسكور ٢٠٢٣)

- a. يمتلك المستثمرون ورجال العمل المصريين مسئوليات كبيرة لتمويل الاختراعات الجديدة، وهذا قد يؤدي إلى تطور كبير لمصر وفوائد مالية معقولة لهم.
- b. لدى المستثمرين ورجال الأعمال المصريين مسئوليات كبيرة لتمويل الاختراعات الجديدة، وهذا قد يؤدي إلى تقدم كبير لمصر وفوائد اقتصادية معقولة لهم.
- c. المستثمرون ورجال الأعمال المصريين يمتلكون مسئوليات كبيرة تجاه الاستكشافات الجديدة، وهذا قد يؤدي إلى نمو كبير لمصر ومنافع مالية معقولة لهم.
- d. المستثمرون ورجال الأعمال المصريين يمتلكون مسئوليات كبيرة تجاه تمويل المخترعين الجدد، وهذا قد يؤدي إلى قدم كبير لمصر ومنافع اقتصادية معقولة لهم.

2. We all must realize that life is a combination of highs and lows, happiness and sadness. The wisest and most successful person is the one who benefits from their mistakes to improve their life in the future. (قلين ٢٠٢٣)

- a. علينا جميعاً أن ندرك أن الحياة مزيج من النجاح والإخفاق والسعادة والحزن وأن أقل الناس حكمة وأقلهم نجاحاً هو ذلك الشخص الذي يستفيد من أخطائه ليحسّن حياته في المستقبل.
- b. علينا جميعاً أن ندرك أن الحياة مزيج من الفشل والإخفاق والسعادة والفرح وأن أكثر الناس حكمة وأكثرهم نجاحاً هو ذلك الشخص الذي يستفيد من أخطائه ليحسّن حياته في المستقبل.
- c. علينا جميعاً أن ندرك أن الحياة مزيج من النجاح والإخفاق والسعادة والحزن وأن أكثر الناس حكمة وأكثرهم نجاحاً هو ذلك الشخص الذي قد يستفيد من أخطائه ليحسّن حياته في المستقبل.
- d. علينا جميعاً أن ندرك أن الحياة مزيج من النجاح والإخفاق والسعادة والحزن وأن أكثر الناس حكمة وأكثرهم نجاحاً هو ذلك الشخص الذي يستفيد من أخطائه ليحسّن حياته في المستقبل.

##### 2 Choose the correct English translation from a, b, c or d:

١. لقد أصبح التعليم مدى الحياة ضرورة للاستمرار في العمل وهو هام لجعلك صالحاً لأي وظيفة وذلك بسبب التطور المستمر في مجال العمل. (السويس ٢٠٢٣)

- a. Lifelong learning has become a necessity to stay in business and it is important to be fit for any job due to the continuous developments in the field of business.
- b. Lifelong learning has become a necessity to stay in business and it is important to be fit for any job due to the continuous developing in the field of business.
- c. Lifelong learning has become a necessity to stay in business and it is unimportant to be fit for any job due to the continuous development in the field of business.
- d. Lifelong learning has become a necessity to stay employable and it is important to be fit for any job due to the continuous development in the field of business.



٢ يفضل الكثير من الناس مشاهدة المسرحيات على مشاهدة الأفلام السينمائية لأنهم يستطيعون رؤية الممثلين أنفسهم على خشبة المسرح.  
(النزهة ٢٣-٢٠)

- 1**
- A few people prefer watching plays to watching movies as they can see the actors themselves on the stage.
  - A lot of people prefer watching plays to watching moves as they can see the actresses themselves on the stage.
  - A lot of people prefer watching plays to watching movies because they can see the actors themselves on the page.
  - A lot of people prefer watching plays to watching movies since they can see the actors themselves on the stage.

### PART III JUST FOR ADVANCED LEVEL

١ للفائقين فقط

#### animation

- **animate = living (adj)** جماد - لا حياة فيه inanimate ≠ حي - نابض بالحياة  
 - Man is an **animate** being. كائن حي.  
 - Rock is an **inanimate** object. شيء جامد لا يتحرك.  
 يملأ بالحيوية - ينعش
- **animate(d) (v)**  
 - Laughter **animates** your face. الضحك يحرك (الرسوم أو الصور في أفلام الكرتون)
- **animate(d) (v)**  
 - In recent cartoons, pictures are **animated** by the computer. مفعَّم بالحيوية والطاقة
- **animated (adj)**  
 - The match was followed by an **animated** discussion among the fans. لاحظ التعبيرات التالية:  
 فيلم رسوم متحركة  
 نقاش / حوار ساخن  
 أفلام أو برامج الرسوم المتحركة (اسم معدود)
- animated cartoon / film
- animated discussion / conversation
- **animation (n)**  
 - Children are attracted by **animations**. الحيوية (اسم غير معدود)
- **animation (n)**  
 - The students were talking with **animation** about the school trip. تحريك الرسوم (اسم غير معدود)
- **animation (n)**  
 - The **animation** in the film is made with the help of the computer.

#### comedy

- **comedy (n)** الكوميديا - عمل أدبي أو فني مضحك  
 - **Comedy** becomes better when it has a message.  
 - Adel Imam was the hero in a lot of **comedies**.
- **comedian(n)** ممثل كوميدي  
 - Ahmed Helmy is my favourite **comedian**.
- **comic(adj)** كوميدي / فكاهي  
 - I enjoy watching **comic** plays because they make me laugh a lot.



• **comical = funny (adj)**

- I enjoy watching **comical** plays because they make me laugh a lot.

مضحك / هزلي / مثير للسخرية

• **comic (comics) (n)**

- When he was younger, he used to write for **comics**.

مجلات (فكاهية) مُصورة

**horror**

• **horror (n)**

- My sister screamed in **horror** when she saw a mouse in the kitchen.

الرعب - الدُعر

• **horrors (n)**

- Syrian people have suffered the **horrors** of war for years.

أهوال (غالباً جمع)

- have a horror of

لاحظ التعبيرات التالية:

- give someone the horrors

يخاف بشدة من

• **horrify(ied) (v)**

- The details of the crime **horrified** many people.

يخيف شخص بشدة

يُرعب - يُصيب بالذعر - يصدّم

• **horrific = horrifying (adj)**

- I saw a **horrific** (=horrifying) car accident on my way home.

سيء جداً - مُرعب

**musicals**

• **music (n)**

- I heard loud **music** coming from a neighbouring villa.

الموسيقي

• **music (n)**

- I can play the guitar, but I can't read **music**.

النوتة الموسيقية

- play music

لاحظ التعبيرات التالية:

- write / compose music

يعزف علي آلة موسيقية

- make music = play / compose music

يؤلف موسيقي

- the music business / industry

يعزف أو يؤلف موسيقي

- a piece of music

النشاط الاقتصادي المتعلق بالموسيقي

- classical music

مقطوعة موسيقية

موسيقي كلاسيكية

• **musical (n)**

- Some famous singers are usually the heroes of **musicals**.

فيلم غنائي أو استعراضية / مسرحية استعراضية

• **musical (adj)**

- The piano is my favourite **musical** instrument.

مُوسيقيّ - مُتعلق بالموسيقي (صفة تُستخدم قبل الاسم فقط)

• **musical (adj)**

- Girls, by nature, are more **musical** than boys.

مُحب / مهتم بالعزف أو الغناء

• **musical (adj)**

- Sama has a **musical** voice.

ذو صوت جميل

• **musician (n)**

- My brother is a talented **musician**.

عازف موسيقيّ



## remake

يعيد إنتاج (فيلم / أغنية)

## • remake - remade (v)

- I think it is not usually a good idea to remake old films.

يعيد تصميم أو بناء

## • remake - remade (v)

- I will remake my wedding dress to fit my sister.

إعادة إنتاج (إنتاج جديد لعمل فني قديم)

## • remake (n)

- The remake of Lion King wasn't as successful as the original one.

## bestselling

الأكثر مبيعاً

## • bestselling (adj)

- This film is adapted from a bestselling book by Mahfouz.

ال... الأكثر مبيعاً

## • bestseller (n)

- This book has been a bestseller for the last six months.

## Advanced Exercise on Vocabulary

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

## ★ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- In the tourist season, tourists ..... the historical sites of Luxor and Aswan.  
a. animate      b. starve      c. adapt      d. demonstrate
- Not everybody that plays a musical instrument can ..... music.  
a. read      b. write      c. a & b      d. hear
- The sudden appearance of the snake ..... me the horrors.  
a. had      b. gave      c. made      d. saw
- Children like reading .....  
a. comic      b. comical      c. comedian      d. comics
- This play is ..... hilarious.  
a. utterly      b. very      c. a bit      d. quite

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

## Advanced Exercise on Language

## ★ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- Nobody has arrived yet, ..... ?  
a. has he      b. hasn't he      c. have they      d. haven't they
- A person with a false beard was arrested, ..... ?  
a. wasn't she      b. wasn't he      c. weren't they      d. were they
- There are some apples in the basket, ..... ?  
a. hasn't it      b. isn't it      c. are there      d. aren't there
- She seldom has lunch outdoors, ..... ?  
a. is she      b. hasn't she      c. does she      d. a & c
- Look at my sister's baby. Cute, ..... ?  
a. will you      b. would you      c. is it      d. isn't it



# Test on Unit 11

• Understand

• Apply

• Create

تنويه

التقييمات  
الشهرية في  
نهاية الكتاب



اختبار إلكتروني

## 1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. An ..... is a film, TV program or a computer game that has pictures, clay and models. (أسوان ٢٠٢٣)

- a. animation      b. intention      c. amusement      d. action

2. How can we ..... this energy effectively for the good of humankind? (ساقلة ٢٠٢٣)

- a. approach      b. connect      c. dismiss      d. harness

3. There are a lot of environments, but the desert is one of the most ..... ones. Living there is very difficult. (رشيد ٢٠٢٣)

- a. host      b. hospitable      c. hostile      d. hostility

4. .... means an intense distressed feeling of fear. (البحيرة ٢٠٢٣)

- a. Amusement      b. Horror      c. Silence      d. Violence

5. That film was the best comedy I've ever seen. It's utterly ..... (المحمودية ٢٠٢٣)

- a. sad      b. upsetting      c. hilarious      d. annoying

6. The best films are ones which have a ..... story to tell. (الزيتون ٢٠٢٣)

- a. poor      b. power      c. silly      d. powerful

7. My daughter read many short stories, ..... she?

- a. doesn't      b. don't      c. isn't      d. didn't

8. I'd better wear a mask in the supermarket, ..... I? (الرحمانية ٢٠٢٣)

- a. had      b. hadn't      c. wouldn't      d. would

9. Mr Hossam hardly visits us, .....? (ادفو ٢٠٢٣)

- a. doesn't he      b. does Hossam  
c. does he      d. doesn't Hossam

10. You like horror films, ..... you? (بيلا ٢٠٢٣)

- a. don't      b. do      c. won't      d. will

11. I don't think he will pass the exam, .....? (البحيرة ٢٠٢٣)

- a. do I      b. won't I      c. will he      d. won't he

12. We arrived 20 minutes ....., but we were able to catch the train. (البحيرة ٢٠٢٣)

- a. late      b. lately      c. latter      d. latest

13. The meeting was very ..... organized. It was fruitful. (بيا ٢٠٢٣)

- a. best      b. well      c. good      d. better

14. My teacher described my essay as a "..... essay". (العاشر من رمضان ٢٠٢٣)

- a. good-written      b. well-writing      c. good-writing      d. well-written



15. Our team played .....

- a. extreme well  
c. extremely good

- b. extreme good  
d. extremely well

(البطل ٢٠٢٣)

2. Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

(السؤال ٢٣ ٢٠٢٣)

Why do so many people feel the need to make fun of and judge others? This question crosses my mind daily. I wonder why we, as humans, feel the need to judge and **degrade** others. It's human nature to compare ourselves to others whether it's to our family members, peers or even celebrities we see in the media. We base our judgments of ourselves and others on these comparisons. Judging others sometimes gives people a sense of prestige because demeaning others can create a false sense of security and identity. No two people are completely alike. We need to accept these differences and stop judging people. It is hurtful to them and makes the people ridiculing them look bad. In fact, I find myself judging others more often than not. I think it's unfair for me to draw conclusions and opinions about others without knowing them. I hear people say things about others all the time without consequences and this encourages them to continue getting their laughs through other peoples' pain. It's hard to listen to, but it can be stopped. As young adults, it's our duty to make a conscience effort to be more accepting towards others' differences, especially at college.

★ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- The best title for this passage would be ".....".  
a. Hard work leads to success      b. Always judge appearances  
c. University life      d. Bullying
- Why do people compare themselves to others?  
a. Because they want to be better.  
b. Because it is our nature as humans.  
c. Because they want to feel powerful.  
d. Because they need to find persons as short or tall as them.
- According to the passage, people are .....  
a. alike      b. different      c. the same      d. twins
- The underlined word "them" refers to those who .....  
a. laugh at people      b. are being laughed at  
c. go to college      d. ridicule people
- The writer wants us to be .....  
a. tolerant      b. aggressive      c. greedy      d. critics
- The word "**degrade**" means to .....  
a. lower dignity      b. give position      c. give prestige      d. honour
- Judging others makes the one who judges feels .....  
a. weak      b. powerful      c. miserable      d. sad



8. At schools, students compare themselves to their .....  
a. peers                      b. families                      c. celebrities                      d. teachers

3. a. Choose the correct Arabic translation from a, b, c or d:

To get a good job, you have to have some basic skills. Large companies usually seek to hire talented people who can use modern technology.

(البساتين ٢٠٢٣)

- a. للحصول على وظيفة جيدة عليك التمتع ببعض المهارات الإضافية، وعادةً ما تسعى الشركات الكبيرة إلى تعيين الكفاءات التي تجيد استخدام وسائل التكنولوجيا الحديثة.  
b. للحصول على وظيفة جيدة عليك التمتع ببعض المهارات الأساسية، وعادةً ما تسعى الشركات الكبيرة إلى تعيين الكفاءات التي تجيد استخدام وسائل التكنولوجيا الحديثة.  
c. للحصول على وظيفة جيدة عليك التمتع ببعض المهارات الفرعية، وعادةً ما تسعى الشركات الكبيرة إلى تعيين الكفاءات التي تجيد استخدام وسائل التكنولوجيا الحديثة.  
d. للحصول على وظيفة جيدة عليك التمتع ببعض المهارات الأساسية، وعادةً ما تسعى الشركات الناشئة إلى تعيين الكفاءات التي تجيد استخدام وسائل التكنولوجيا الحديثة.

b. Read the following and choose the correct English translation from a, b, c or d:

المعلم هو الذي يُشكّل مستقبل الجميع من خلال توفير أفضل تعليم لطلابه لذلك يجب تدريبه بشكل مستمر على أحدث الطرق التدريسية التي تؤهله للقيام بدوره.  
(بناها ٢٠٢٣)

- a. A teacher shapes the future of everyone by providing the best education for his students. Therefore, they must be trained continuously on the latest educational methods that qualify them to play his role.  
b. A teacher shapes the future of everyone by helping the best education for his students. Therefore, he must be learnt continuously on the latest educational methods that testify him to play his role.  
c. A teacher shapes the future of everyone by neglecting the best education for his students. Therefore, he must be trained permanently on the latest educational methods that qualify him to play his role.  
d. A teacher shapes the future of everyone by providing the best education for his students. Therefore, he must be trained temporarily on the latest educational tactics that disqualify him to play his role

4. Answer the following questions :

1. Why do you think that Lear kneels before Cordelia ?

.....

2. Do you think Albany trusts Edmund ? Why ?

.....

3. What does "This" refer to when Edgar says "This is a bitter pill to swallow ?

.....

5. Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED and EIGHTY (180) words on:

"Hard work is the key to success"



## Mini-Test on Unit 11 for Al-Azhar Students

إختبار مصغر لطلاب الأزهر الشريف

### 1. Finish the following dialogue :

Asmaa and Radwa are talking about social media websites.

Asmaa : Hi Radwa. (1) .....

Radwa : Yes, I use social media websites.

Asmaa : Do you have a Facebook account ?

Radwa : Yes. (2) .....

Asmaa : Me, I don't like using them.

Radwa : (3) .....

Asmaa : Because they make me lazy and separate me from the real world.

Radwa : So, how do you communicate with your friends ?

Asmaa : (4) .....

### 2. Write an e-mail of (80) words on science fiction :

Your name is Sara and your email address is sara@gmail.com.  
Your friend's name is Noha and your friend's email address is noha@gmail.com.

### 3. A. Translate into Arabic :

What is learned by experience in sports has a deeper effect on a child's character.

### B. Translate into English :

التسامح مع الآخرين مهم جدًا خاصة عندما تعمل مع فريق.





# UNIT 12

## Achievements and goals

### Objectives :

SB pages 62 : 71

WB pages 36 : 41

- Reading :  
An article about a young entrepreneur
- Writing :  
A report about an experience
- Listening :  
A talk about SMART goals

- Speaking :  
Discussing goals and how to achieve them
- Language :  
Defining and non-defining relative clauses
- Life skills :  
Self-management ; Decision-making ;  
Collaboration





## PART I VOCABULARY

### 1 Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

|                    |                      |                  |  |
|--------------------|----------------------|------------------|--|
| achievable(adj)    | مُفَكِّنُ إِنجَازُهُ | recipe(n)        | وَصْفَةُ طَهْيٍ                          |
| entrepreneur(n)    | رائد أعمال           | relevant (adj)   | ملائم                                    |
| goal /aim (n)      | هدف                  | relevant (adj)   | خاص بـ / مُتَّصِلٌ بِـ / مُتَعَلِّقٌ بِـ |
| honey(n)           | عسل                  | set (a goal)     | يحدد (هدفاً)                             |
| honeybee(n)        | نحلة العسل           | smart (adj)      | ذكي - أنيق                               |
| measurable (adj)   | قابل للقياس - ملحوظ  | specific (adj)   | تفصيلي / دقيق - مُحدَّد                  |
| objective(n)       | هدف                  | time-bound (adj) | موقوت - له خطة زمنية                     |
| profit(ed) (n - v) | فائدة - يستفيد       |                  |  |

### 2 Important Vocabulary المفردات الهامة

|                       |                                 |                      |                         |
|-----------------------|---------------------------------|----------------------|-------------------------|
| adapt(ed) (v)         | يقتبس - ينقل عن                 | magnificent (adj)    | رائع                    |
| architecture(n)       | هندسة معمارية                   | manage(d) (v)        | يتمكن - يدير            |
| business(n)           | شركة - نشاط تجاري               | multi-national(adj)  | متعدد الجنسيات          |
| coach(n)              | مدرب                            | non-essential(adj)   | غير ضروري               |
| definitely (adv)      | بالتأكيد                        | passion(n)           | شغف                     |
| detailed(adj)         | تفصيلي                          | passionate(adj)      | متحمس                   |
| donate(d) (v)         | يتبرع بـ                        | possession (n)       | ملكية - امتلاك          |
| drop(ped) (v)         | يسقط - يخرج (من)                | practise(d) (v)      | يمارس - يتدرب على       |
|                       | تشكيل الفريق                    | presentation (n)     | عرض تقديمي              |
| educate(d) (v)        | يعلم                            | profession (n)       | مهنة                    |
| end date(n)           | تاريخ انتهاء                    | progress(ed) (n - v) | التقدم - يتقدم          |
| essential(adj)        | ضروري - جوهري                   | qualify(ied) (v)     | يتأهل                   |
| experience(d) (v)     | يواجه - يعايش                   | react(ed) (v)        | يتصرف بناءً على         |
| failure (n)           | فشل                             | related(adj)         | مرتبط - ذو صلة          |
| fear (n)              | الخوف                           | sensible(adj)        | عقلاني - حكيم           |
| final (n - adj)       | نهائي                           | series(n)            | سلسلة - مسلسل           |
| finalists(n)          | المتأهلون للنهائيات             | short-term (adj)     | قصير المدى - قصير الأمد |
| fit (ted) in (phr. v) | يتكيف - يكيف - يجد وقتاً لـ ... | stand for (phr. v)   | يمثل - يلوّح عن         |
| forever (adv)         | للأبد                           |                      |                         |



|                      |                         |                         |                         |
|----------------------|-------------------------|-------------------------|-------------------------|
| highlight (ed) (v)   | يلقي الضوء - يبرز       | tutorial (n)            | درس خصوصي - مقرر تعليمي |
| individual (n - adj) | فرد - فردي              | unlikely (adj)          | من غير المحتمل          |
| locally (adv)        | محليا                   | vague (adj)             | غامض                    |
| long-term (adj)      | بعيد المدى - طويل الأمد | whenever (adv. - conj.) | عندما / كلما            |
|                      |                         | winner (n)              | فائز                    |

### 3 Definitions تعريفات

| Memorise                                 | Understand  |
|--|---|
| time-bound (adj)<br>موقوت - له خطة زمنية | requiring completion by a specified deadline<br>مُحدّد موعّد نهائي يتطلب or within a specified period of time   |
| specific (adj)<br>مُحدّد                 | detailed and exact  |
| relevant (adj)<br>ملائم - متعلّق         | directly relating to the subject or problem being discussed or considered   |
| recipe(n)<br>وصفة طهي                    | a set of instructions for cooking<br>مجموعة تعليمات a particular type of food   |
| profit(ed) (n)<br>فائدة - ربح            | money that you gain by selling things or doing business, after your costs have been paid  |
| measurable (adj)<br>قابل للقياس          | able to be measured   |
| honeybee(n)<br>نحلة العسل                | a bee that makes honey  |
| entrepreneur(n)<br>رائد أعمال            | someone who starts a new business or arranges business deals in order to make money , often in a way that involves financial risks<br>صفقات مخاطر مالية |
| achievable (adj)<br>مُمكن إنجازة         | describes a goal that can be reached, especially by making an effort<br>جهد for a long time   |

### Exercise On Vocabulary

#### • Understand

- Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

#### 1 Key vocabulary

1. In order to succeed in your life, you must set ..... and specific goals.

(بيلد ٢٣-٢٢)

- a. awful      b. achievable      c. hilarious      d. imaginary



2. To succeed in life, you must ..... goals for yourself. (القرين ٢٠٢٣)  
a. sit                      b. set                      c. seat                      d. sat
3. My sister is interested in cooking. She has the ..... of hundreds of delicious dishes.  
a. recipes                      b. ranges                      c. accessories                      d. outfits
4. Using informal language in a formal email is not .....  
a. time-bound                      b. specific                      c. relevant                      d. measurable
5. A good objective is one that is ..... and possible to achieve.  
a. non-governmental                      b. tutorial  
c. non-essential                      d. measurable
6. A goal that is ..... requires completion by a specified deadline or within a specified period of time.  
a. time-bound                      b. specific                      c. relevant                      d. measurable
7. Reaching your ..... in life and work is true success.  
a. goal                      b. objective                      c. aim                      d. a, b & c
8. Dr Omar gave ..... examples of the effects of coronavirus on the lungs.  
a. time-bound                      b. specific                      c. achievable                      d. expensive
9. A ..... phone can connect to the internet.  
a. measurable                      b. specific                      c. smart                      d. time-bound
10. A ..... is a very useful insect.  
a. scorpion                      b. mosquito                      c. honeybee                      d. bug
11. As an ambitious ....., he is always dreaming of new projects.  
a. entrepreneur                      b. sleepsuit                      c. filter                      d. cob
12. He makes a lot of ..... from his business. That's why he is wealthy.  
a. donations                      b. mistakes                      c. loss                      d. profits

## 2 Important vocabulary

13. Mr Ayman said he couldn't ..... that day as he had been very busy.  
a. stand me for                      b. fit me in                      c. experience me                      d. share me on
14. The coach ..... Salah from the match as he was badly injured.  
a. dropped                      b. highlighted                      c. qualified                      d. reacted
15. Fear of ..... may lead to it. Trust yourself and learn from your mistakes.  
a. presentation                      b. possession                      c. failure                      d. tutorial
16. He is ..... about where he is, so the police suspect him. يشك فيه.  
a. multi-national                      b. magnificent  
c. sensible                      d. vague



17. He is ..... after the operation. He is much better now.  
a. relating      b. mentioning      c. progressing      d. recording
18. It is kind of you to ..... blood to save the injured man.  
a. consider      b. donate      c. create      d. expand
19. It is ..... to have a time plan to achieve your goals.  
a. governmental      b. non-essential  
c. essential      d. non-governmental
20. In the Tokyo 2021, Ferial Abdelaziz was a/an ..... in Karate.  
a. finalist      b. organiser      c. president      d. inhabitant
21. This team failed to ..... to the quarter-final.  
a. drop      b. highlight      c. qualify      d. react
22. Small group ..... help students learn and get ready for their exams.  
a. individuals      b. possessions      c. failures      d. tutorials
23. Sama looked ..... in her long dress. She looked like a princess.  
a. multi-national      b. magnificent      c. short-term      d. vague
24. He ..... a successful business in manufacturing. He is a successful businessman.  
a. manages      b. mentions      c. progresses      d. stands
25. Most famous novels have been ..... for the cinema.  
a. resigned      b. tricked      c. crawled      d. adapted
26. The players were ..... about winning the final match, so they scored a KO goal in the last few minutes.  
a. passion      b. passionate      c. matching      d. match
27. Sama ..... angrily to her friends negative comment.  
a. dropped      b. highlighted      c. qualified      d. reacted
28. He made a great ..... in the conference.  
a. presentation      b. possession      c. failure      d. tutorial
29. We all support this ..... decision  
a. multi-national      b. lucky      c. sensible      d. vague

### 3 Definitions

30. To be ..... means affording evidence tending to prove or disprove the matter at issue or under discussion. (بورسعيد ٢٠٢٣)  
a. relevant      b. measurable      c. sensible      d. passionate
31. .... means requiring completion by a specified deadline or within a specified period of time.  
a. Measurable      b. Time-bound      c. Relevant      d. Specific



32. .... means detailed and exact.  
a. Measurable      b. Time-bound      c. Relevant      d. Specific
33. A/An ..... is a set of instructions for cooking a particular type of food.  
a. recipe      b. range      c. profit      d. outfit
34. .... is money that you gain by selling things or doing business, after your costs have been paid.  
a. Recipe      b. Range      c. Profit      d. Outfit
35. A/An ..... is someone who starts a new business or arranges business deals in order to make money, often in a way that involves financial risks.  
a. accessories      b. honeybee      c. profit      d. entrepreneur
36. The adjective ..... describes a goal that can be reached, especially by making an effort for a long time.  
a. measurable      b. achievable      c. relevant      d. specific

## PART II

## VOCABULARY STUDY

### 1 Verbal Collocations متلازمات لفظية

|                |                |                     |              |   |
|----------------|----------------|---------------------|--------------|---|
| <b>achieve</b> | goals          | يحقق أهداف          | <b>meet</b>  | an objective / a goal<br>يتوافق مع هدف - يحقق هدف |
| <b>feel</b>    | nervous        | يشعر بالتوتر        | <b>play</b>  | a song<br>يعزف أغنية                              |
| <b>get</b>     | hard           | يصبح أصعب           | <b>reach</b> | the guitar<br>يعزف على الجيتار                    |
| <b>give</b>    | a presentation | يقدم عرضاً توضيحياً | <b>set</b>   | a goal / an objective<br>يحقق هدف                 |
| <b>have</b>    | a time limit   | له حد زمني          | <b>speak</b> | goals for ourselves<br>نضع لأنفسنا أهداف          |
|                | my first sight | أرى للمرة الأولى    | <b>start</b> | = ourselves goals<br>يتحدث على الملأ              |
|                | smart goals    | لديه أهداف ذكية     | <b>take</b>  | in public<br>يلشئ جمعية خيرية                     |
|                |                |                     |              | a charity<br>يستغرق وقت طویل ليكتمل               |

### 2 Synonyms مترادفات

| Word       | Synonym (=Meaning)      |
|------------|-------------------------|
| achievable | ممكن إنجازة             |
| essential  | رئيسي - جوهري           |
| get over   | يتغلب علي               |
| measurable | ملحوظ                   |
|            | attainable, possible    |
|            | fundamental             |
|            | overcome                |
|            | noticeable, significant |



|            |                |                                 |
|------------|----------------|---------------------------------|
| measurable | قابل للقياس    | quantifiable, computable        |
| objective  | هدف            | goal, aim                       |
| profitable | مفيد - مُربح   | beneficial, fruitful, useful    |
| relevant   | ملائم - مُتعلق | related, appropriate            |
| specific   | مُحدّد         | particular, specified, definite |
| specific   | تفصيلي / دقيق  | exact, accurate, precise        |

### 3 المتضادات Antonyms

| Word       | Antonym (= Opposite)       |
|------------|----------------------------|
| achievable | unachievable, unattainable |
| essential  | non-essential              |
| measurable | immeasurable               |
| measurable | negligible                 |
| profitable | unprofitable, profitless   |
| relevant   | irrelevant                 |
| smart      | stupid, dull               |
| specific   | non-specific, general      |
| specific   | non-specific, vague        |

### 4 Derivatives of key vocabulary مشتقات المفردات الرئيسية

| achievable            |                                     |
|-----------------------|-------------------------------------|
| achieve (v)           | يُحقق / يَنجِز                      |
| achievement (n)       | إنجاز - تحقيق                       |
| achievable (adj)      | مُمكن إنجازُه                       |
| entrepreneur          |                                     |
| entrepreneur (n)      | رائد أعمال                          |
| entrepreneurship (n)  | ريادة الأعمال - المجازفة الاقتصادية |
| entrepreneurial (adj) | ريادي - ينطوي على مجازفة            |
| measurable            |                                     |
| measure (v)           | يقيس                                |
| measurement (n)       | القياس                              |
| measurable (adj)      | قابل للقياس - ملحوظ                 |



| objective        |   |   |
|------------------|---|---|
| objective (n)    | هدف   | - I have an <b>objective</b> to achieve.                                  |
| objective (adj)  | موضوعي  | - I learn from <b>objective</b> criticism.                                |
| profit           |   |   |
| profit (v)       | يستفيد  | - Children <b>profit</b> from reading this book.                          |
| profit (n)       | فائدة   | - There are <b>profits</b> for children who read this book.               |
| profitable (adj) | مفيد - مُربح                                  | - Reading this book is <b>profitable</b> .                                |
| relevant         |   |   |
| relevance (n)    | ارتباط - غَلَاقة                              | - This book is of great <b>relevance</b> to children.                     |
| relevant (adj)   | ملائم - خاص بـ / مُتَّصِل بـ / مُتَّعَلِّق بـ | - This book is <b>relevant</b> to children.                               |
| specific         |   |   |
| specifics (n)    | تفاصيل - مُتعلقات                             | - I am not ready to talk about the <b>specifics</b> of the situation now. |
| specific (adj)   | تفصيلي / دقيق - مُحدَّد                       | - He gave us <b>specific</b> orders.                                      |

## 5

## Expressions &amp; Idioms تعبيرات و مصطلحات

|                         |                                  |                         |                      |
|-------------------------|----------------------------------|-------------------------|----------------------|
| a passion for           | شغف بـ                           | ever since              | منذ (ذلك الحين)      |
| a wide range of         | مجال واسع من                     | get over my fear        | أَتَغَلَّب على خوفي  |
| as possible             | قدر الإمكان                      | in front of             | أمام                 |
| be passionate about     | متحمس بشأن                       | in public               | علي الملأ - في العلن |
| be related to           | مُرتبط بـ                        | live in my memory       | تظل في ذاكرتي        |
| be relevant to          | ملائم لـ                         | once a week             | مرة واحدة في الأسبوع |
| be unlikely to          | ليس من الوارد أن                 | start your own business | تبدأ مشروعك الخاص    |
| by this time next month | في مثل هذا الوقت من الشهر القادم | time limit              | الحد الزمني          |
| depending on            | علي حسب                          |                         |                      |

## 6

## Verb + Preposition فعل + حرف جر

|               |                     |               |                     |
|---------------|---------------------|---------------|---------------------|
| depend on     | يعتمد علي           | give up       | يتخلى عن - يتوقف عن |
| donate ... to | يتبرع بـ ... لـ     | look after    | يراعي               |
| fit in        | يشارك في - يُجَرَّب | record ... on | يسجل ... علي        |
| get over      | يتغلب علي           | talk to       | يتحدث إلي / مع      |



## 7 Clear the confusion لاحظ الفرق

### entrepreneur - organisation man / woman

- entrepreneur (n) رائد أعمال (شخص مجازف مبدع يأتي بأفكار جديدة ويلفدها)  
- The success of the company depends on entrepreneurs.
- organisation man / woman (n) شخص تنفيذي (مطيع ويلفد الأوامر والتكليفات فقط)  
- The success of the company needs entrepreneurs as well as organisation men.

## Exercise On Vocabulary Study

★ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. "Poodles are said to be smart dogs." The antonym of "smart" is .....

(امتحان الكتروني ٢٠٢٢ - الفترة المسائية)

- a. clever      b. dull      c. brilliant      d. intelligent

2. One is very happy when they ..... their objectives.

- a. meet      b. set      c. achieve      d. a & c

3. I was playing a/an ..... when you called me.

- a. invention      b. song      c. objective      d. charity

4. This plan has .....

- a. ourselves goals      b. an invention      c. the guitar      d. smart goals

5. "Be specific in the instructions you give to your staff." In this sentence, the adjective 'specific' is an antonym of .....

- a. non-specific      b. accurate      c. exact      d. clear

6. It is impossible to ..... your goals without patience and great will.

(امتحان إلكتروني ٢٠٢٢ - الفترة الصباحية)

- a. score      b. lose      c. sit      d. reach

7. Mr Ayman ..... a good presentation yesterday.

- a. gave      b. broke      c. set      d. spoke

8. He travelled to the USA in 2017. I haven't seen him ..... since.

- a. ever      b. never      c. ago      d. before

9. One of my dreams is to give ..... smoking.

- a. of      b. out      c. up      d. by

10. It is not right to punish children ..... public.

- a. to      b. about      c. at      d. in

11. He told us about the ..... of his new plan.

- a. profit      b. profitable      c. specific      d. specifics

12. What she said has no clear ..... to the topic in hand.

- a. relevance      b. relevant      c. entrepreneur      d. entrepreneurial



## 1 Reading Texts

## Setting goals for success

(SB page 62)

To **succeed**<sup>(1)</sup> in life, it's important to have **specific**<sup>(2)</sup> **aims**<sup>(3)</sup> or **goals**<sup>(4)</sup>. How often have you started something and then **given up**<sup>(5)</sup> because it was **either**<sup>(6)</sup> too difficult or **took**<sup>(7)</sup> too long to complete? It's very easy to give up when things get hard, so how can we make sure we **achieve**<sup>(8)</sup> the goals we **set**<sup>(9)</sup> ourselves? One way, often **mentioned**<sup>(10)</sup> by managers, is to have **SMART goals**<sup>(11)</sup>. These are five different things you need to **consider**<sup>(12)</sup> if you want to meet your goal.



**Whenever**<sup>(13)</sup> you plan to set a goal, you need to ask yourself these questions: Is my goal specific? Is it **measurable**<sup>(14)</sup>? Is it **achievable**<sup>(15)</sup>? Is it **relevant**<sup>(16)</sup>? and finally Is it **time-bound**<sup>(17)</sup>? If you answer 'no' to any of these questions, then you are **unlikely**<sup>(18)</sup> to **reach**<sup>(19)</sup> your goal.

(1) ينجح

(2) محدد

(3) أهداف

(4) أهداف

(5) يستسلم

(6) إما

(7) يستغرق

(8) يحقق / ينجح

(9) يحدد - يعد

(10) يذكر

(11) أهداف ذكية

(12) يفكر في

(13) عندما / كلما

(14) قابل للقياس

(15) ممكن إنجازه

(16) ملائم

(17) موقوت - له خطة زمنية

(18) من غير المحتمل

(19) يحقق - يصل لـ

## My goal!

(WB page 36)

## Tarek

Ever since I saw my cousin **playing**<sup>(1)</sup> the guitar last year, I've wanted to learn too. This year I have some more time, and so I'm going to do it!

I bought a guitar last month and I'm going to **classes**<sup>(2)</sup> **once**<sup>(3)</sup>

a week. I've **set**<sup>(4)</sup> myself one goal which is to be able to play one song by next month. My father says he's sure I can do it. I **practise**<sup>(5)</sup> the song every day for twenty minutes, and this also helps me **relax**<sup>(6)</sup> after studying and revising for all my exams.



(1) يعزف

(2) حصص - دروس

(3) مرة واحدة

(4) يحدد - يعد

(5) يمارس - يتدرب على

(6) يسترخي



## Salma

I want to be a **newsreader**<sup>(1)</sup> when I'm older, so I know I have to **get over**<sup>(2)</sup> my **fear**<sup>(3)</sup> of speaking **in public**<sup>(4)</sup>. The **presentations**<sup>(5)</sup> I have to give at school are useful, but they still make me very **nervous**<sup>(6)</sup>.



(WB page 36)

- (1) قارئ الأخبار
- (2) يتغلب علي
- (3) الخوف
- (4) علي الملأ
- (5) عرض تقديمي
- (6) متوتر - عصبي
- (7) مرأة
- (8) يسجل - يصور
- (9) الحظ

I've been talking in front of the **mirror**<sup>(7)</sup> and **recording**<sup>(8)</sup> myself on video talking in front of the camera. I then watch myself and correct the things I don't like. By doing this once a week,

I hope that by this time next month I won't feel nervous when I have to give a presentation in school about the future of the internet.

Wish me **luck**<sup>(9)</sup>!

## A passion<sup>(1)</sup> for apples

(SB page 64)

Andy Robson, who is **still**<sup>(2)</sup> a teenager, is the **president**<sup>(3)</sup> of Green and Red, which is a small, but successful apple juice **business**<sup>(4)</sup> in Maine. What is **incredible**<sup>(5)</sup> is that Andy was only eight years old when he started selling apple juice outside his home in Auburn, where he still lives with his family.



- (1) شغف
- (2) لا يزال
- (3) رئيس
- (4) شركة - نشاط تجاري
- (5) مذهل - غير معقول
- (6) يفتبس - ينقل عن
- (7) وصفة
- (8) غسل
- (9) سبب
- (10) متحمس
- (11) النحل
- (12) يحمي
- (13) يتبرع بـ
- (14) فوائد - منافع
- (15) صيانة - حماية
- (16) يناضل - يقاتل
- (17) نحلة العسل
- (18) معروف
- (19) سلسلة
- (20) عبر
- (21) يحقق مبيعات
- (22) ذو شعبية - معروف

Andy **adapted**<sup>(6)</sup> a 1920s **recipe**<sup>(7)</sup> that he got from his grandmother, but he added **honey**<sup>(8)</sup> to the juice to make it a little different from his grandmother's. The **reason**<sup>(9)</sup> he decided to add honey was because he is **passionate**<sup>(10)</sup> about helping **bees**<sup>(11)</sup> and wants to help **protect**<sup>(12)</sup> them. His company now **donates**<sup>(13)</sup> 15% of its **profits**<sup>(14)</sup> to bee **conservation**<sup>(15)</sup> groups who are **fighting**<sup>(16)</sup> to save the **honeybee**<sup>(17)</sup>.

Andy, whose picture is on every bottle of apple juice, has become very **well-known**<sup>(18)</sup> in Maine. And Green and Red apple juice, which has been sold in a **range**<sup>(19)</sup> of shops **across**<sup>(20)</sup> Maine for years, is now **selling**<sup>(21)</sup> in some restaurants and is very **popular**<sup>(22)</sup>.



But that's not all. Andy has started his own **charity**<sup>(23)</sup> with Jessica Webb, whom he met at school. Jessica keeps her own bees and is also a young **entrepreneur**<sup>(24)</sup> – she sells her own honey **locally**<sup>(25)</sup>. The two teenagers want to teach children about how to look after bees and about how to become an entrepreneur. They plan to go into schools and share their experiences as well as **educating**<sup>(26)</sup> the children about the **importance**<sup>(27)</sup> of bees and why we need to look after them.

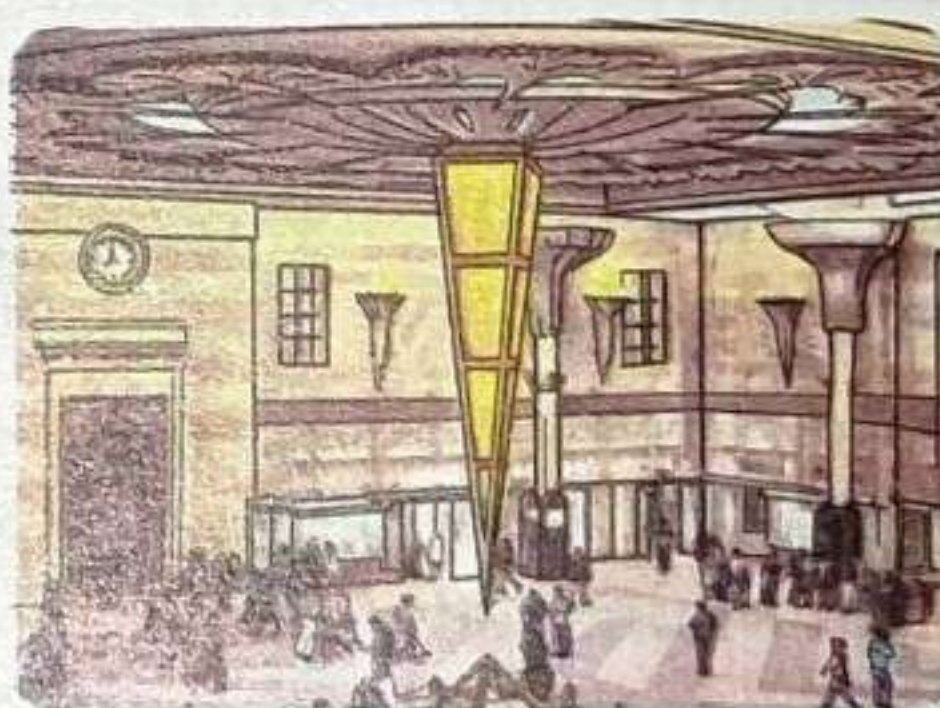
- (23) جمعية خيرية
- (24) رائد أعمال
- (25) محليا
- (26) يعلم
- (27) أهمية

## 2 Listening Texts

### Cairo from a visitor's view

(WB page 37)

Cairo, which is the **capital**<sup>(1)</sup> city of Egypt, is a place which **offers**<sup>(2)</sup> the visitor a wide **range**<sup>(3)</sup> of **experiences**<sup>(4)</sup>. **Therefore**<sup>(5)</sup>, **depending on**<sup>(6)</sup> who you talk to, they will give you a very different picture of the city.



Last year was a time when I decided to **fit in**<sup>(7)</sup> as many different experiences **as possible**<sup>(8)</sup> and so I visited Cairo. I was lucky enough to be invited by a friend whose family lived there and wanted to show me everything the city had to offer. My friend Fares, with whom I had **shared**<sup>(9)</sup> a flat in my first year at university, travelled with me by train to the city. It was at the Ramses **Railway station**<sup>(10)</sup> where I had my first **sight**<sup>(11)</sup> of the **magnificent**<sup>(12)</sup> **architecture**<sup>(13)</sup> the city has to offer. However, this was not the only surprise which the city had for me. In my next **blog post**<sup>(14)</sup> I will tell you about all the wonderful people who I will never forget and the places which will **forever**<sup>(15)</sup> live in my **memory**<sup>(16)</sup>.

- (1) عاصمة
- (2) يقدم - يعرض
- (3) مجال - سلسلة
- (4) تجارب
- (5) بناء على ذلك
- (6) على حسب
- (7) يشارك في / يتكيف مع
- (8) قدر الإمكان
- (9) يشارك في
- (10) محطة سكة حديدية
- (11) منظر - مشهد
- (12) رائع
- (13) هندسة معمارية
- (14) منشور مدونة
- (15) للأبد
- (16) ذاكرة



## SMART goals

(SB page 63)

**Speaker :** Now, let's look at these SMART goals one at a time and check what each one actually means. If you are serious about achieving your goals, you need



(1) عاقل / حكيم

(2) عام

(3) يصبح لائق بدنياً

(4) غير واضح / غامض

(5) أهداف قصيرة المدى

(6) أهداف

(7) سلسلة

to make sure they are **sensible**<sup>(1)</sup> and definitely something you can do, even if they are a little bit difficult. But your goals mustn't be too **general**<sup>(2)</sup> or you'll never reach them. So, if your goal is to **get fit**<sup>(3)</sup> by next month, it's too **vague**<sup>(4)</sup>.

Your goal needs to be much more specific such as, I want to be able to run ten kilometres without stopping in six months' time.

Next, you need to make sure that your goal is measurable. To make sure you keep working towards your final goal, you need to have smaller, **short-term goals**<sup>(5)</sup> along the way. Instead of saying I want to run ten kilometres, start with 1 kilometre. Then, when you can do that, aim for three kilometres and so on until you reach ten. By having smaller **targets**<sup>(6)</sup>, you will find that it is easier to achieve your final goal. So, the "A" in SMART means "achievable", and your goal should never be too easy, but it should always be possible. Now, let's look at the two letters "R" and "T". The "R" stands for relevant. This is about making goals that are important to you, not your family or friends. If you don't really care about last goal, then you're unlikely to succeed. And finally, T is for time-bound, in other words there is a final time when your goal has to be reached. There's no point-saying. "I'm going to run 10 kilometres one day", because you won't. You need to plan it and write down a time when you want to finally be able to achieve this.

So, if you want to achieve your goals, you need to ask yourself a **series**<sup>(7)</sup> of SMART questions.



## PART IV LANGUAGE

### Relative Clauses عبارات الوصل

#### 1 الذى / التى / الذين / اللاتى who / which / whom / that

1 **تُشير (who / that)** الى فاعل عاقل ويأتي بعدهما فعل وفى هذه الحالة لا يمكن حذفها:

- ex.** - I met my pen friend **who / that** lives in London.  
- Teachers are people **who / that** work at schools.

2 **تُشير (who / whom / that)** الى مفعول عاقل فى حالة المبني للمعلوم ويأتي بعدهم فاعل ويمكن حذفها:

- ex.** - The man **who / whom / that** you met with me yesterday is my uncle.  
= The man you met with me yesterday is my uncle.

3 **تُشير (which / that)** الى فاعل غير عاقل ويأتي بعدهما فعل وفى هذه الحالة لا يمكن حذفها:

- ex.** - The dog **which / that** chased me belongs to my neighbours.

4 **تُشير (which / that)** الى مفعول غير عاقل ويأتي بعدهما فاعل ويمكن حذفهما:

- ex.** - The car **which / that** I bought has a problem with the engine.  
= The car I bought has a problem with the engine.

5 **لا تستخدم (that)** كضمير وصل فى الجمل الاعتراضية - أي فى بداية عبارة موصولة بين (....):

- ex.** - Aswan, **which** is in the south of Egypt, is very hot. (Not: that is....)  
- Ismail Yassen, **who** is still a famous actor, died in the 1970s.  
(Not: that is....)

6 **بالنسبة لحروف الجر مع (who / whom / that / which)**:

أ. لا تأتي حروف الجر قبل كل من **(who / that)** بل تأتي بعدهما فى نهاية عبارة الوصل:

- ex.** - This is my friend **who** I play tennis with. (Not: with who....)  
- This is the motorbike **that** I go to school on. (Not: on that....)

ب. يمكن أن تأتي حروف الجر قبل أو بعد كل من **(whom / which)**:

- ex.** - This is my friend **whom** I play tennis with.  
= This is my friend **with whom** I play tennis.  
- This is the motorbike **which** I go to school on.  
= This is the motorbike **on which** I go to school.

#### 2 حيث / حيثما / المكان الذى where

1 **تعود (where)** على المكان ولا يأتي بعدها فعل:

- ex.** - This is the room **where** I sleep.  
- She went to Cairo University **where** she studied Arabic literature.



٢ لاحظ أن:

• **where** = (حرف جر مناسب للمكان + **which**) / (**which** + ... للمكان)

ex. - This is the room in **which** I sleep.

- This is the room **which** I sleep in.

٣ يمكن أن تستخدم (**which**) مع المكان بدون حروف جر عندما يكون المكان مفعول لجمله الوصل - لاحظ الجملتين التاليتين:

ex. - This is the house **where** we live. (المنزل مكان نعيش فيه)

- This is the house **which** we built. (المنزل مفعول، فهو الشيء الذي تم بنائه)

٤ لا تستخدم حروف جر تعود على المكان قبل أو بعد (**where**):

ex. - I went to the room in **which** I sleep. (Not: the room in **where** ....)

- I went to the room **which** I sleep in. (Not: the room **where** .... in)

### 3 حين / حينما / عندما / الوقت when

١ تُشير إلى الوقت أو الزمن ولا يأتي بعدها فعل:

ex. - 2012 is the year **when** Rodayna was born.

- Friday is the day **when** we don't go to school.

- Two o'clock is the time **when** I return home from school.

• **when** = (حرف جر مناسب للتعبير الزمني + **which**) / (**which** + ... الزمني)

ex. - 2012 is the year in **which** Rodayna was born.

= 2012 is the year **which** Rodayna was born in.

- Friday is the day on **which** we don't go to school.

= Friday is the day **which** we don't go to school on.

- Two o'clock is the time at **which** I get up.

= Two o'clock is the time **which** I get up at.

٢ يمكن أن تستخدم (**which** / **that**) مع الوقت عندما يكون الوقت مفعول لجمله الوصل

- لاحظ الجملتين التاليتين:

ex. - August is the month **when** we go to Alexandria.

= We go to Alexandria in August.

- August is the month **which** we spend in Alexandria.

= We spend August in Alexandria.

٣ لا تستخدم حروف جر تعود على التعبير الزمني قبل أو بعد (**when**):

ex. - Friday is the day on **which** my son was born. (Not: the day on **when** ....)

- Friday is the day **which** my son was born on. (Not: the day **when** .... on)



## 4 whose = (Nouns + 's) / my - his - her - its - our - your - their ...

تدل على الملكية للعاقل وغير العاقل ويتبعها اسم (أي لا يأتي بعدها فعل):

**ex.** - I saw an old man whose son was kidnapped.

- She lives in a house whose roof is high.

- انتبه عند استخدام (**whose**) لبعض الكلمات التي تُستخدم كفعل واسم مثل :

- يستورد / واردات imports - يدفع / راتب pay - يزور / زيارة visit - يقيم / إقامة stay
- يكره / الأشياء غير المحببة dislikes - يحب / الأشياء المحببة likes - يُصدر / صادرات exports
- ... etc. يصمم / تصميم design - يسبب / سبب cause

**ex.** - He is an architect whose designs are fantastic.

- China is a country whose exports are more than its imports.

لاحظ أن :

• اسم noun + (صفة) + with = اسم = whose + noun اسم = who / which / that + have / has

**ex.** - The boy who has blue eyes is Spanish.

- The boy whose eyes are blue is Spanish.

- The boy with blue eyes is Spanish.

### ملاحظات هامة Important Notes

• لا يتم ذكر ضمير يعود على نفس الاسم الذي يشير إليه ضمير الوصل:

- This is my friend who I go to school with him. (X)
- This is my friend who I go to school with. (✓)
- I go to a secondary school where I am a student there. (X)
- I go to a secondary school where I am a student. (✓)
- This is the villa which my uncle bought it. (X)
- This is the villa which my uncle bought. (✓)

هناك نوعان من جمل الوصل:

أ. تحدد جملة الوصل الاسم الذي تعود عليه وفي هذا النوع لا نستخدم (,):

**ex.** - The man who/that lives next door works in a bank.

ب. لا تحدد جملة الوصل الاسم الذي تعود عليه بل تعطي معلومة شائعة أو إضافية وفي هذا النوع نستخدم (,):

**ex.** - Aswan, which is in the south of Egypt, is where I was born.

### ملاحظات للمتفوقين Notes for advanced level

يمكن حذف كل من (who - which - that) في الحالات التالية :

أ. يتم حذف كل من (who - which - whom) عندما يحلون محل مفعول (أي إذا جاء بعدهم فاعل):

**ex.** - This is the woman who I helped. = This is the woman I helped.



ب. إذا جاء بعدهم فعل مبنى للمعلوم و في هذه الحالة يتم حذف الضمير و (be) ويتبقى (inf.+ing) :

ex. - The boy who is wearing a red shirt is my son.

= The boy wearing a red shirt is my son.

ج. إذا جاء بعدهم فعل مبنى للمجهول وهنا نحذف أيضا الضمير و (be) ويبقى التصريف الثالث للفعل:

ex. - The criminal who was arrested yesterday is very dangerous.

= The criminal arrested yesterday is very dangerous.

٢ يمكن استخدام (to + inf.) بدلا من عبارة الوصل إذا كان ضمير الوصل في الجملة يحل محل

الفاعل مع كلمات مثل :

The first / the second ..... / the last / the only.....

ex. - I was the first person who left the ship.

= I was the first person to leave the ship.

٣ يمكن استخدام (to + inf.) بدلا من عبارة الوصل للدلالة على الغرض مثل:

ex. - He has some books that he wants to read.

= He has some books to read.

٤ يمكن أن يأتي فعل بعد (whom) إذا جاء قبلها أحد التعبيرات الآتية :

all of, most of, none of, both of, neither of, either of, any of, one of, some of, many of .....

ex. - The house was full of boys, ten of whom are my cousins.

## General Exercise On Language

● Apply

● ☆ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. This is the shop owner ..... wants to marry my sister.

a. who                      b. whom                      c. that                      d. a & c

2. My father welcomed my friends ..... I invited to my birthday.

a. who                      b. whom                      c. that                      d. a, b & c

3. I respect the employer for ..... I work.

a. who                      b. whom                      c. that                      d. a & c

4. I respect the employer ..... I work for.

a. who                      b. whom                      c. that                      d. a, b & c

5. The car ..... I bought for my wife is small in size.

a. which                      b. that                      c. a & b                      d. whom



6. The car in ..... I go to school is modern.  
a. which                      b. that                      c. a & b                      d. whom
7. El-Shennawy, ..... is the captain of the team, made Mo'men Zakaria raise the cup.  
a. that                      b. who                      c. which                      d. a & b
8. The gold medal, ..... is given to the winner, has the championship logo on it.  
a. that                      b. who                      c. which                      d. a & c
9. I like the village ..... I live.  
a. which                      b. that                      c. a & b                      d. where
10. I like the village ..... I visit every summer.  
a. which                      b. that                      c. a & b                      d. where
11. I like the village ..... has a fantastic scenery.  
a. which                      b. that                      c. a & b                      d. where
12. The school, ..... students learn, is very important.  
a. which                      b. that                      c. a & b                      d. where
13. The school, ..... my children attend, is near our house.  
a. which                      b. that                      c. a & b                      d. where
14. The house ..... I was brought up was made from mud bricks.  
a. where                      b. in which                      c. a & b                      d. which
15. The house in ..... I was brought up was made from mud bricks.  
a. where                      b. which                      c. a & b                      d. that
16. The house ..... I was brought up in was made from mud bricks.  
a. that                      b. which                      c. a & b                      d. where
17. Nine o'clock is the time ..... my children go to bed at.  
a. when                      b. which                      c. where                      d. b & c
18. Nine o'clock is the time at ..... my children go to bed.  
a. when                      b. which                      c. where                      d. b & c
19. Nine o'clock is the time ..... my children go to bed.  
a. at when                      b. at which                      c. at that                      d. a & c
20. Spring is the season ..... is full of green colour and flowers.  
a. when                      b. in which                      c. which                      d. where



21. The house ..... door is black belongs to my uncle.  
 a. where                      b. in which                      c. whose                      d. who's
22. The old man ..... hands shake is my grandfather.  
 a. whose                      b. who's                      c. that's                      d. with
23. The old man ..... the shaking hands is my grandfather  
 a. whose                      b. who's                      c. that's                      d. with
24. The engineer ..... designs are ecofriendly has become very popular.  
 a. who                      b. whose                      c. that                      d. a & c
25. The engineer ..... designs ecofriendly factories has become very popular.  
 a. who                      b. whose                      c. that                      d. a & c
26. This is the man whose flat .....  
 a. bought                      b. I bought                      c. I bought it                      d. buying
27. This is the girl ..... my brother wants to marry.  
 a. who                      b. that                      c. no pronoun                      d. a, b & c
28. The man ..... a black bag is my new neighbour.  
 a. is carrying                      b. carrying  
 c. who he is carrying                      d. carried
29. The bridge ..... across the Nile is very important.  
 a. built                      b. building                      c. is built                      d. is building
30. Sama was the third student ..... the class.  
 a. to enter                      b. that entered                      c. a & b                      d. was entered
31. I have a lot of goals .....  
 a. which I want to achieve                      b. which I want to achieve them  
 c. to achieve                      d. a & c
32. I have three cousins, two of ..... are pilots.  
 a. whom                      b. whose                      c. who                      d. that





## PART I VOCABULARY

### 1 Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

|                      |                         |            |              |
|----------------------|-------------------------|------------|--------------|
| accessories(n)       | مُلْحَقَاتُ إِضَافِيَّة | local(adj) | محلي         |
| come across (phr. v) | يصادف                   | minor(adj) | ثانوي        |
| crawl(ed) (v)        | يزحف - يجر              | outfit(n)  | طقم (ملابس)  |
| global(adj)          | عالمي                   | range(n)   | مجال - سلسلة |

### 2 Important Vocabulary المفردات الهامة

|                    |                   |                       |                       |
|--------------------|-------------------|-----------------------|-----------------------|
| accessible(adj)    | سهل المئال - متاح | major(adj)            | أساسي / رئيسي         |
| afford(ed) (v)     | يتحمل تكلفة       | matching(adj)         | متوافق                |
| amongst(adv)       | بين               | motivated(adj)        | متحفز                 |
| attach(ed) (v)     | يربط - يوصل       | neighbourhood(n)      | حي - منطقة سكنية      |
| benefit(ed) (v)    | يُفيد             | non-governmental(adj) | غير حكومي             |
| bleeding(n)        | النزيف            | operation(n)          | عملية جراحية          |
| boil(ed) (v)       | يغلي              | option(n)             | خيار - أحد بدائل      |
| breakthrough(n)    | طفرة / إنجاز      | organisation(n)       | مؤسسة - عملية التنظيم |
| collection(n)      | مجموعة            | organise(d) (v)       | يُنظّم                |
| competition(n)     | مسابقة            | organisers(n)         | المُنظّمون            |
| corn cob(n)        | كوز الذرة         | outline(ed) (v)       | يُلخّص - يوجز         |
| deaths(n)          | الوفيات           | overall(adv)          | في المُجمل - ككل      |
| display(ed) (v)    | يعرض              | pedal-powered(adj)    | تعمل بالدواسة         |
| dried(adj)         | مُجفّف            | percentage(n)         | نسبة مئوية            |
| effort(n)          | جهد - مجهود       | pharmaceutical(adj)   | دوائي                 |
| ensure(d) (v)      | يؤكد - يضمن       | present(ed) (v)       | يُقدّم - يُعرض        |
| entry(n)           | دخلة - دخول       | purpose(n)            | غرض - هدف             |
| everyday (adj)     | يومي              | reduce(d) (v)         | يقلل                  |
| expand(ed) (v)     | يتوسع - يمتد      | remove(d) (v)         | يُزيل                 |
| fast(n)            | الصيام            | sell - sold (v)       | يُحقق مبيعات - يبيع   |
| filter(ed) (n - v) | مُرشّح - يُنقى    | selling point         | عامل جذب للسلعة       |
| governmental(adj)  | حكومي             | sleepsuit(n)          | بدلة نوم              |
| improvements(n)    | تحسينات           | solution(n)           | حل                    |
| innovation(n)      | الابتكار          | sort(ed) out (phr. v) | يفرّز - يُعيد         |
| interest(n)        | اهتمام            | unique(adj)           | فريد - مميز           |
| joint (adj)        | مُشترك - مرتبط    | venue(n)              | قاعة مناسبات          |



life-changing(adj)  
liquid (n - adj)  
loss(n)

مُغَيِّر للحياة  
سائل  
فقدان - خسارة

vote(d) (v)  
well-organised(adj)

يُصَوِّت (في انتخابات)  
حَسَن التنظيم

### 3 Definitions تعريفات

| Memorise                            | Understand   |
|-------------------------------------|--|
| accessories(n)<br>مُلَحَقَات إضافية | bags, hats and shoes which match مع<br>with clothes .                              |
| come across (phr. v) يصادف          | to discover something usually by accident بالصدفة                                  |
| crawl(ed) (v) يزحف                  | to walk on your hands and knees  |
| outfit(n) طقم (ملابس)               | a set مجموعة of clothes worn together, especially<br>for a special occasion مناسبة |
| range(n) تنوع - سلسلة - مجال        | a synonym مرادف for 'variety'  |

### Exercise On Vocabulary

#### • Understand

- Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

#### 1 Key vocabulary

- I have bought a mobile with lots of ..... (السوان ٢٠٢٣)  
a. accessories      b. accents      c. access      d. lashes
- Pollution is a/an ..... issue. The whole world is involved.  
a. achievable      b. global  
c. relevant      d. non-governmental
- I've bought a great new ..... to wear for Sham El-Nassim.  
a. recipe      b. range      c. accessories      d. outfit
- When I was looking for my club ID, I ..... a black and white  
photo of my great grandfather.  
a. came across      b. got over      c. invented      d. sorted out
- The baby lazily ..... out of bed.  
a. resigned      b. tricked      c. crawled      d. adapted
- This clothes shop has a wide ..... of fashionable summer clothes.  
a. recipe      b. range      c. accessories      d. outfit
- This online store has all the home ..... you could imagine.  
a. recipe      b. range      c. accessories      d. outfit



8. The ..... hospital lacks a lot of services, so I had to go to the central one.  
a. local                      b. global                      c. measurable                      d. achievable
9. This is a/an ..... problem; let's look into major ones.  
a. main                      b. essential                      c. important                      d. minor

## 2 Important vocabulary

10. It is a national duty واجب وطني to ..... in the elections الانتخابات.  
a. recycle                      b. ensure                      c. sort out                      d. vote
11. Low price is a good .....  
a. venue                      b. fast                      c. selling point                      d. death
12. Good health care must be affordable and ..... to all citizens.  
a. accessible                      b. pharmaceutical  
c. non-governmental                      d. motivated
13. The ..... of the final match made all the fans angry.  
a. law                      b. trick                      c. treason                      d. loss
14. I bought a green ..... for my little sister.  
a. stretcher                      b. honeybee                      c. corn cob                      d. sleepsuit
15. Charities are ..... organisations that depend on donations.  
a. non-governmental                      b. achievable  
c. non-essential                      d. measurable
16. Riding a/an ..... bike is environmentally friendly and it also helps you keep fit.  
a. joint                      b. pedal-powered  
c. unique                      d. well-organised
17. The bridegroom العريس booked a ..... by the Nile.  
a. venue                      b. fast                      c. selling point                      d. death
18. There has been a/an ..... in the treatment of C virus.  
a. access                      b. neighbourhood                      c. breakthrough                      d. outline
19. It is safe to drink ..... water. It is pure.  
a. filter                      b. filtered                      c. experience                      d. experienced
20. When metals are heated, they .....  
a. donate                      b. consider                      c. create                      d. expand
21. The two friends wore ..... outfits for the party.  
a. passion                      b. non-essential                      c. matching                      d. pedal powered
22. I ate some dates البلح to break my .....  
a. fast                      b. venue                      c. selling point                      d. death



23. Tablets are ..... products.  
a. accessible                      b. pharmaceutical  
c. non-governmental            d. governmental
24. The second section provides a/an ..... of the history of the pharaohs.  
a. access                          b. neighbourhood  
c. breakthrough                 d. outline
25. While I was walking by the Nile, I saw a man selling corn .....  
a. stretchers                    b. honeybees                    c. cobs                          d. sleepsuits
26. The ..... of the festival did their best to make it as perfect as possible.  
a. finalists                        b. organisers                    c. presidents                   d. inhabitants
27. Controlling COVID-19 pandemic جائحة needed ..... effort between governmental and non-governmental organisations.  
a. age                              b. aged                          c. join                          d. joint
28. The good news is that there are no ..... in the accident.  
a. venues                         b. fasts                          c. selling points                d. deaths
29. I've ..... the things that will be thrown away.  
a. attended                        b. sorted out                    c. benefited                    d. voted

### 3 Definitions

30. .... means bags, hats and shoes which match with clothes.  
a. Accessories      b. Honeybees      c. Profits      d. Entrepreneurs
31. To ..... is to walk on your hands and knees.  
a. introduce      b. crawl      c. come across      d. include
32. To ..... is to discover something usually by accident.  
a. introduce      b. crawl      c. come across      d. include
33. A/An ..... is a set of clothes worn together, especially for a special occasion.  
a. recipe      b. range      c. profit      d. outfit
34. The noun '.....' is a synonym for 'variety'.  
a. recipe      b. range      c. profit      d. outfit



## 1 Verbal Collocations متلازمات لفظية

|            |                                       |       |  |
|------------|---------------------------------------|-------|--|
| be         | a great success<br>ينجح نجاحاً باهراً | gain  | access to<br>قادر على الوصول إلى                         |
| break      | fast<br>يفطر (بعد الصيام)             | have  | specific aims<br>لديه أهداف محددة                        |
| build      | a machine<br>يصنع آلة                 | lose  | blood<br>ينزف دم   |
| create     | electricity<br>يُولّد كهرباء          | make  | a difference to<br>يُحسّن                                |
|            | an invention<br>يخترع                 |       | a simple device<br>يصنع جهاز بسيط                        |
|            | real solutions<br>يُوجد حلول حقيقية   |       | recommendations<br>يوصي بـ - يَرْكَبُ                    |
| display    | an invention<br>يعرض اختراع           | offer | a wide range of experiences<br>يتيح مجال واسع من التجارب |
| enter      | a competition<br>يدخل مسابقة          |       | practical solutions<br>يقدّم حلول عملية                  |
| experience | a problem<br>يمر بمشكلة               |       |  |

## 2 Expressions &amp; Idioms تعبيرات و مصطلحات

|   |  |  |   |
|---|--|--|---|
| a solution for/to<br>a synonym for<br>aged between ... and ...  | حل لـ<br>مرادف لـ<br>يتراوح عمره بين ... و ...   | get lots of interest in<br>have experience with<br>joint effort<br>on the side of<br>the second most common cause of<br>unique selling point<br>well-organised<br>with the help of | يجد اهتمام كبير بـ<br>لديه خبرة بـ<br>جهد مشترك<br>على جانب<br>ثاني أكثر أسباب ... شيوعاً<br>عامل جذب فريد للسلعة<br>خسن التنظيم<br>بمساعدة |
| be available to / for<br>be guilty of<br>by accident<br>dairy products<br>due to<br>everyday problems<br>fruity dessert | مُتاح لـ<br>مُذنب بـ / مُدان بـ<br>بالصدفة<br>مُنتجات الألبان<br>بسبب<br>المشكلات اليومية<br>حلوي من الفاكهة |  |   |

## 3 Verb + Preposition فعل + حرف جر

|  |  |  |  |
|--|--|--|--|
| afford to<br>aim at<br>arrest ... for<br>attach ... to | يتحمّل تكلفة أن<br>يهدف إلى<br>يقبض على ... بسبب<br>يربط ... بـ - يُلجق ... بـ | organise for<br>prove ... to<br>punish ... for<br>sort out | يُنظّم لـ<br>يُثبت ... لـ<br>يعاقب ... بسبب<br>يفرّ - يُنظّم |
|--|--|--|--|

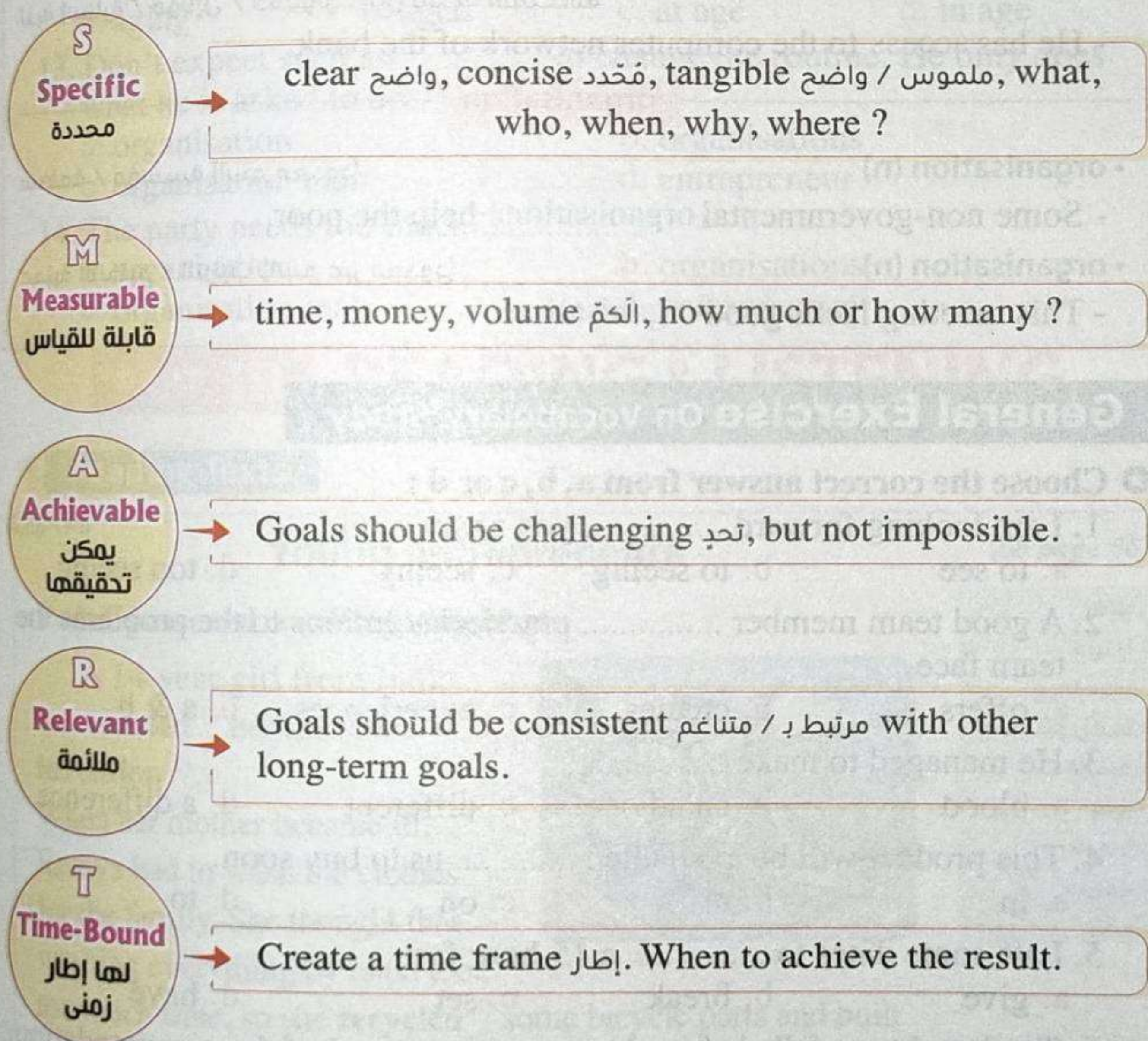


|                   |                 |                |                   |
|-------------------|-----------------|----------------|-------------------|
| carry out         | يُنفَّذ         | stop ... from  | يُمنَع ... من     |
| crawl around      | يرحف حول        | succeed in     | ينجح في           |
| die from          | يموت بسبب       | trick ... into | يخدع ... ليقوم بـ |
| educate ... about | يُعَلِّم ... عن | vote for       | يُصَوِّت لصالح    |
| match with        | يناسب - يلائم   |                |                   |

#### 4 أضف إلى معلوماتك Add to your knowledge

عندما تقرأ (SMART goals) تدرك على الفور أن معناها (الأهداف الذكية) وذلك صحيح بالطبع، لكن لاحظ ما ترمز إليه حروف كلمة (SMART) والتي تمثل أيضا الخصائص الخمسة للأهداف الذكية:

### الأهداف الذكية SMART goals





## 5 Clear the confusion لاحظ الفرق

## accessory - access

## • accessory (n)

إكسسوار - ملحقات - مستلزمات

- This shop sells car accessories.

## • access (to) (n)

صلاحية (حق الدخول إلى مكان أو استخدام شيء أو رؤية شخص... إلخ)

- As the secretary of the manager, she has access to all files on his laptop.

## • access (to) (n)

ممر / مدخل

- Access to the kitchen of the restaurant is through the back door.

## • have access to (a car / a mobile / a computer, etc.)

لديه (سيارة / موبايل / كمبيوتر... إلخ) يمكنه استخدامه

- He has access to the computer network of the bank.

## organisation

## • organisation (n)

منظمة / مؤسسة (اسم معدود)

- Some non-governmental organisations help the poor.

## • organisation (n)

عملية التنظيم / الترتيب (اسم غير معدود)

- This meeting lacks good organisation.

## General Exercise On Vocabulary Study

## ★ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. I am looking forward ..... you again soon.

(ادكو ٢٠٢٣)

a. to see      b. to seeing      c. seeing      d. too seeing

2. A good team member ..... practical solutions to the problems the team face.

a. offers      b. creates      c. experiences      d. a &amp; b

3. He managed to make .....

a. blood      b. an advice      c. different      d. a difference

4. This product will be available ..... us to buy soon.

a. in      b. at      c. on      d. to

5. I ate some dates to ..... a 15-hour fast.

a. give      b. break      c. set      d. have

6. She thought carefully before she ..... a wonderful recommendation.

a. took      b. experienced      c. felt      d. made

7. When you ..... a problem, you should keep calm and think carefully.

a. offer      b. experience      c. gain      d. make



8. The high-pixel camera and the powerful processor are the unique ..... points of this tablet.  
 a. sells                      b. sold                      c. selling                      d. to sell
9. Not all people can afford ..... their children to international schools.  
 a. sending                      b. send                      c. to sending                      d. to send
10. Most American citizens voted ..... Joe Biden in the 2020 elections.  
 a. of                      b. for                      c. in                      d. on
11. The dishonest seller tricked me ..... paying more money for the shirt than it really deserves.  
 a. into                      b. onto                      c. in                      d. for
12. Students join secondary school after prep three, ..... between 15 and 16.  
 a. aging                      b. aged                      c. at age                      d. in age
13. Don't expect such an ..... to change the routine. He only does what he is asked to do.  
 a. organisation                      b. organisations  
 c. organisation man                      d. entrepreneur
14. The party needs too much .....  
 a. organisation                      b. organisations  
 c. organisation man                      d. entrepreneur

### PART III

## READING & LISTENING

### 1 Reading Texts

#### Young entrepreneurs

(SB page 66)

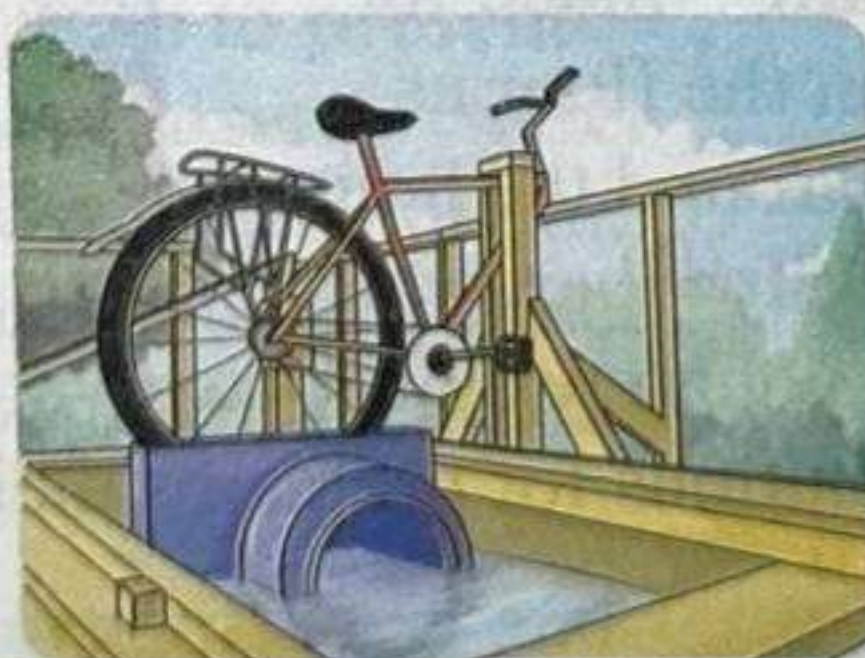
##### Pedal-powered washing machine

A 14-year girl from India has **created**<sup>(1)</sup> her first own **invention**<sup>(2)</sup>.

When her mother became ill, Remya had to wash the clothes for the family. She thought that washing everything by hand took

too much time, so she **recycled**<sup>(3)</sup> some bicycle parts and built a **pedal-powered**<sup>(4)</sup> **washing machine**<sup>(5)</sup> which **saves**<sup>(6)</sup> time and keeps you **fit**<sup>(7)</sup>! Her invention will help families whose homes don't have **electricity**<sup>(8)</sup>.

Her next goal is to make a simple **device**<sup>(9)</sup> that can create electricity to use at home.



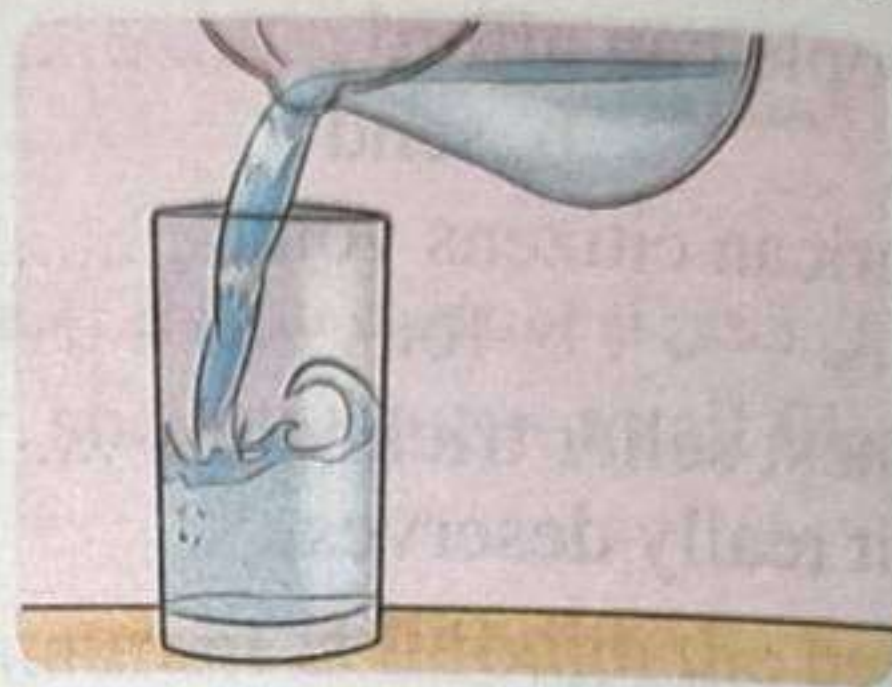
- (1) يبتكر
- (2) اختراع
- (3) يعيد تدوير
- (4) تعمل بالدواسة
- (5) غسالة
- (6) يوفر
- (7) لائق بدنيا
- (8) كهرباء
- (9) جهاز



## Corn cob water filter

11-year-old Lalita knew that many families in her village in Odisha, India couldn't get clean water and they couldn't **afford**<sup>(1)</sup> to buy expensive **filters**<sup>(2)</sup>.

In Odisha, farmers grow a lot of corn, but they only sell part of the plant. The **rest**<sup>(3)</sup> of the **corn cob**<sup>(4)</sup> isn't used.



When she saw all the **dried**<sup>(5)</sup> corn cobs on the side of the road, she **wondered**<sup>(6)</sup> if they could help filter water. Her corn-cob filter **removes**<sup>(7)</sup> 80% of all pollution in the water. The water can then be **boiled**<sup>(8)</sup> to make it safe to drink.

Her goal is to sell the **cheap**<sup>(9)</sup> device to farmers so they can stay healthy.

(SB page 66)

- (1) يتحمل تكلفة
- (2) مرشح
- (3) بقية
- (4) كوز الذرة
- (5) مجفف
- (6) يتساءل
- (7) يزيل
- (8) يغلي
- (9) رخيص

## Real solutions to local problems

We all know the importance of new inventions to make life easier. However, not all **inventors**<sup>(1)</sup> have been successful in finding good **solutions**<sup>(2)</sup> to **everyday**<sup>(3)</sup> problems. Some of the **craziest**<sup>(4)</sup> ideas **include**<sup>(5)</sup> **mini**<sup>(6)</sup> umbrellas to **attach**<sup>(7)</sup> to your shoes or even a **sleepsuit**<sup>(8)</sup> made for babies to clean the floor as they **crawl**<sup>(9)</sup> around the house! However, **luckily**<sup>(10)</sup> enough there are also young people today who are creating and selling real solutions for problems their local community **experiences**<sup>(11)</sup>.



**Several**<sup>(12)</sup> teenagers from Aswan have been **trained**<sup>(13)</sup> to produce and sell their ideas in order to help those that live in their area. The inventions include a **range**<sup>(14)</sup> of useful solutions. One of the **tastiest**<sup>(15)</sup> **options**<sup>(16)</sup> by Azhar is a **fruity**<sup>(17)</sup> **dessert**<sup>(18)</sup> for those who are **breaking fast**<sup>(19)</sup> and don't want to eat **dairy products**<sup>(20)</sup>.

(WB page 38)

- (1) مخترعين
- (2) حل
- (3) يومي
- (4) الأكثر جنونا
- (5) يشمل علي
- (6) مصغر
- (7) يربط - يوصل
- (8) بدلة نوم (سلوبيت)
- (9) يزحف
- (10) لحسن الحظ
- (11) يواجه - يعايش
- (12) عديد - كثير
- (13) يتدرب
- (14) سلسلة
- (15) الأشهى
- (16) خيارات - بدائل
- (17) بلهفة الفاكهة
- (18) الحلوى
- (19) الإفطار (بعد الصيام)
- (20) منتجات الألبان



Eman has created a **collection**<sup>(21)</sup> of clothes with a complete range of **matching**<sup>(22)</sup> **accessories**<sup>(23)</sup> so those in her **neighbourhood**<sup>(24)</sup> do not have to go to several different shops to get the **perfect**<sup>(25)</sup> **outfit**<sup>(26)</sup>. The **unique**<sup>(27)</sup> **selling point**<sup>(28)</sup> of these ideas is that they are offering **practical**<sup>(29)</sup> solutions to real problems, and also help to **reduce**<sup>(30)</sup> pollution, as their **customers**<sup>(31)</sup> do not need to use cars or buses to travel outside their neighbourhoods.

The training project, which a **joint effort**<sup>(32)</sup> between **governmental**<sup>(33)</sup> and **non-governmental**<sup>(34)</sup> **organizations**<sup>(35)</sup>, has been a great **success**<sup>(36)</sup> **amongst**<sup>(37)</sup> both boys and girls. The hope is that it will produce more entrepreneurs who will create real solutions for those **common**<sup>(38)</sup> problems we **come across**<sup>(39)</sup> every day.

- (21) مجموعة
- (22) متوافق
- (23) ملحقات إضافية
- (24) حي - منطقة سكنية
- (25) مكتمل
- (26) طقم (ملابس)
- (27) فريد - مميز
- (28) عامل جذب
- (29) عملي - تطبيقي
- (30) يقلل
- (31) عملاء
- (32) جهود مشتركة
- (33) حكومي
- (34) غير حكومي
- (35) مؤسسات
- (36) نجاح
- (37) بين
- (38) شائع - منتشر
- (39) يصادف

## Report on the Young Inventor's Competition

(SB page 67)

### Introduction<sup>(1)</sup>

The **purpose**<sup>(2)</sup> of this report is to describe my experience at the Young Inventor's **competition**<sup>(3)</sup> and **recommend**<sup>(4)</sup> any changes that could **improve**<sup>(5)</sup> how it worked.

### The organisation<sup>(6)</sup>

I live in Montreal in Canada, and the competition **finalists**<sup>(7)</sup> were invited to go to Toronto to **present**<sup>(8)</sup> their inventions. The competition **organisers**<sup>(9)</sup> were very good at sending me information and helping me to **sort out**<sup>(10)</sup> travel arrangements. They also **organised**<sup>(11)</sup> for my invention to be sent to the competition **venue**<sup>(12)</sup>.

### The competition

The competition was very **well organised**<sup>(13)</sup> and there was **plenty of**<sup>(14)</sup> time for the finalists to **display**<sup>(15)</sup> and talk about their inventions. Lots of companies were invited to **attend**<sup>(16)</sup>, so I was **lucky**<sup>(17)</sup> to get lots of **interest**<sup>(18)</sup> in my invention.

**Suggested improvements**<sup>(19)</sup> Although it was great to meet so many other young inventors from my country, I think that the competition should

- (1) مقدمة
- (2) غرض - هدف
- (3) مسابقة
- (4) يزكي - يوصي بـ
- (5) يحسن
- (6) التنظيم
- (7) المتأهلون للنهائيات
- (8) يعرض - يقدم
- (9) منظمين
- (10) يصنف - ينظم
- (11) ينظم
- (12) محل - مكان - موضع
- (13) حسن التنظيم
- (14) كثير من
- (15) يعرض
- (16) يحضر
- (17) محظوظ
- (18) اهتمام
- (19) تحسينات مقترحة



be **expanded**<sup>(20)</sup> to include teenagers from other countries too.

### Conclusion<sup>(21)</sup>

**Overall**<sup>(22)</sup>, I had a really positive experience and I would really recommend entering the competition.

(20) يتوسع - يمتد  
(21) الخلاصة  
(22) في المجمل - ككل

## 2 Listening Text

### Science report about an invention

(WB page 39)

**Radio announcer** : Welcome to New World, the programme that brings you **detailed information**<sup>(1)</sup> about the latest inventions which aim at improving lives. Today, we hear the story of an invention which is set to save millions of people around the world.

**Radio announcer** : At the age of 15, when she heard that losing blood was the second most common cause of deaths in hospitals, Deena Mousa decided to work on finding a **solution**<sup>(2)</sup> to this life and death problem.

It all started at the age of 5 when Deena, whose parents are Egyptian, **carried out**<sup>(3)</sup> her first experiment on plants. Since that moment, she has not stopped her search for solutions to real problems. Her **objective**<sup>(4)</sup> has always been to find answers to the **everyday issues**<sup>(5)</sup> we all **face**<sup>(6)</sup>.

At fifteen, and with the help of the father, who works in a lab, Deena **gained access**<sup>(7)</sup> to the necessary equipment to start her research.

Twelve years later she had invented Hemostat V-Seal **liquid drops**<sup>(8)</sup>. Before she had made the **breakthrough**<sup>(9)</sup>, the usual time it took for medicines to stop **bleeding**<sup>(10)</sup> in patients was up to 12 minutes. This, Deena says, shocked her into finding a better solution. Her **chemical invention**<sup>(11)</sup> can stop bleeding in as little [adding emphasis] as 10 seconds. This major **innovation**<sup>(12)</sup> means the difference between a patient losing **millilitres**<sup>(13)</sup> or **litres**<sup>(14)</sup> of blood.

Knowing that 35% of people who suffer a serious injury die from uncontrolled loss of blood before they get to hospital means that Deena's



- (1) معلومات مفصلة
- (2) حل
- (3) أُنشِئ
- (4) هدف
- (5) مشاكل يومية
- (6) يواجه
- (7) يحصل على إمكانية الدخول
- (8) نقاط سائلة
- (9) إنجاز وسبق علمي
- (10) أنزف
- (11) اختراع كيميائي
- (12) ابتكار
- (13) مليلتر
- (14) لتر



invention can save a huge number of lives in a **wide range**<sup>(15)</sup> of **contexts**<sup>(16)</sup>. While this is clearly good news for soldiers in the army, surgeons in hospitals are also looking forward to being able to use the liquid **in the case of**<sup>(17)</sup> **unexpected**<sup>(18)</sup> problems during **operations**<sup>(19)</sup> and save more lives.

Deena is now working on the business plan to **ensure**<sup>(20)</sup> her solution reaches as many people as possible at an **affordable price**<sup>(21)</sup>, which is why she is in discussions with **pharmaceutical companies**<sup>(22)</sup>. She hopes it will only cost a few cents to make sure it is **widely accessible**<sup>(23)</sup>.

In a recent interview, Deena said she was very happy to be able to provide a solution for others which has always been her goal in life and that she hopes her discovery will **inspire**<sup>(24)</sup> others to follow their dreams no matter how young or old they are.

|                                      |
|--------------------------------------|
| (15) مدى واسع                        |
| (16) سياق / البيئة المحيطة           |
| (17) في حالة                         |
| (18) غير متوقع                       |
| (19) عمليات جراحية                   |
| (20) يؤكد / يؤمن                     |
| (21) سعر معقول                       |
| (22) شركات أدوية                     |
| (23) يمكن الوصول إليها على نطاق واسع |
| (24) يلهم / يوحى                     |

## PART IV

## LANGUAGE

راجع شرح القاعدة من الدرسين الأول والثاني

تنويه

### General Exercise on Language

● Apply

★ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

#### 1 Getting started: Check what you have learnt

- The woman ..... car was stolen called her husband to look for it. (رشيد ٢٠٢٣)  
a. who                      b. whose                      c. where                      d. when
- I live in a house ..... entrance is guarded by two big dogs. (شمال بورسعيد ٢٠٢٣)  
a. that                      b. where                      c. whose                      d. when
- The mistake ..... Ali made was fortunately not very serious. (بيلد ٢٠٢٣)  
a. whose                      b. which                      c. what                      d. who
- Cairo, ..... we live, is the largest city in Egypt.  
a. whom                      b. which                      c. when                      d. where
- From here we can see the mountain ..... we climbed.  
a. whose                      b. which                      c. who                      d. what
- The house ..... is on the top of the hill was built 5 years ago .  
a. where                      b. who                      c. what                      d. which
- Our exports, ..... include cotton and metal goods, come from all over Egypt.  
a. where                      b. whose                      c. which                      d. that



8. A supermarket is a large shop ..... you can buy many different things.  
a. which                      b. when                      c. what                      d. where
9. A supermarket is a large shop ..... you can buy many different things from.  
a. which                      b. when                      c. what                      d. where
10. Please, arrange a time ..... we can meet for a few hours.  
a. which                      b. where                      c. whose                      d. when
11. Please, arrange a time at ..... we can meet for a few hours.  
a. which                      b. where                      c. whose                      d. when
12. I spent three hours reading the reports ..... Radwa had sent.  
a. whose                      b. that                      c. who                      d. who's
13. The neighbours ..... have just moved into the next flat are a newly-married couple.  
a. which                      b. who                      c. what                      d. where
14. The first one ..... I spoke to today was you, Ahmed.  
a. whose                      b. that                      c. what                      d. when
15. Is that the flat ..... was advertised in the paper last week?  
a. where                      b. which                      c. when                      d. what
16. Egypt is the land ..... people of different cultures can live peacefully.  
a. who                      b. whose                      c. where                      d. which

## 2 Special cases

17. The people ..... in this area suffer from noise. (النوبارية ٢٠٢٣)  
a. which live                      b. who living                      c. lived                      d. living
18. This is the book ..... my favourite character goes to the Arctic. (الشرق مدينة نصر ٢٠٢٣)  
a. which                      b. that                      c. to which                      d. in which
19. Is this the city ..... is smart and sustainable? (الواسطي ٢٠٢٣)  
a. who                      b. where                      c. which                      d. in which
20. The man ..... to hospital doesn't have dangerous injuries.  
a. is taken                      b. taken                      c. taking                      d. is taking
21. I'm saving up for the mobile phone ..... advertised on TV.  
a. where I saw                      b. which I saw it                      c. where I saw it                      d. that I saw
22. Omar is the fifth ..... the office.  
a. reach                      b. to reach                      c. is reaching                      d. reached
23. Rodayna, ..... dislikes are the same as mine, is my best friend.  
a. who                      b. whom                      c. whose                      d. that
24. The necklace ..... at the party was made of glass.  
a. which lost                      b. that loses                      c. she lost                      d. that lost
25. The flat ..... the green balcony is mine.  
a. where                      b. which                      c. whose                      d. with
26. The man whom you ..... is my teacher.  
a. have greeted him                      b. are greeted                      c. greeted him                      d. greeted
27. My parents, ..... help is necessary to me, are old people.  
a. who                      b. whom                      c. that                      d. whose



28. The drinks ..... in this café are all high quality.  
a. sold                      b. are sold                      c. which sell                      d. sells
29. Rokaya has a cousin ..... in this office.  
a. worked                      b. working                      c. is working                      d. works
30. Over there is the mechanic's ..... I usually have my car checked.  
a. where                      b. whom                      c. whose                      d. who
31. The woman ..... the blue blouse is my aunt.  
a. with                      b. who                      c. that                      d. whose
32. This is the production manager ..... pay is the highest in the company.  
a. whose                      b. who                      c. that                      d. whom
33. The place ..... we went yesterday is just around the corner.  
a. to that                      b. which                      c. what                      d. to which
34. The final ..... yesterday was boring.  
a. which played                      b. it played                      c. played                      d. was played
35. The player ..... the most popularity in Egypt is Salah.  
a. who                      b. that                      c. with                      d. whose
36. They live in a flat ..... the Nile.  
a. that overlook                      b. overlooks                      c. overlooking                      d. overlooked
37. He admires the English team .....  
a. which Salah plays                      b. Salah plays  
c. which Salah plays for it                      d. Salah plays for
38. I admire the officer ..... the old man cross the street over there.  
a. to help                      b. helped                      c. helping                      d. is helping
39. Can you suggest a time at ..... I can visit you?  
a. that                      b. which                      c. where                      d. when
40. That is the French tourist ..... stay needs to be extended.  
a. that                      b. whose                      c. whom                      d. who

### 3 Check your understanding

41. "August is the month when I go to Alexandria." This means .....  
a. August is the month which I go to Alexandria.  
b. August is the month at which I go to Alexandria.  
c. August is the month which I go to Alexandria in.  
d. August is the month on which I go to Alexandria.
42. "My car is the one with the silver colour." This means .....  
a. I have one silver car.  
b. There is only one silver-coloured car that we can see right now.  
c. There's only one car we can see.  
d. I have more than one car.
43. "Old people need our help." This means .....  
a. It is old people that need our help.                      b. We need old people who can help us.  
c. Old people never need our help.                      d. It is us who need old people's help.





PART I

LANGUAGE HINTS

sell

- sell – sold (v)

ex. - This shop sells high-quality food products.

يبيع

- sell – sold (v)

ex. - Korean cars sell well in Egypt.

يُحَقَّق مبيعات

make + obj. + inf. / adj.

- make + مفعول + inf.

ex. - My father made me water the trees in the garden.

يجعل / يجبر

- make + مفعول + adj.

ex. - Good news makes us happy.

يجعل

well-known

- well-known to + شخص

ex. - Mohammed Salah is well-known to all Egyptians.

معروف لدى

- well-known for + (inf. + ing) / n.

ex. - My father is well-known for his kind heart.

مشهور بـ

- My daughter is well-known for giving good speeches.

- well-known as + n.

ex. - Mohammed Salah is well-known as a footballer.

مشهور كـ

The reason

- the reason for + noun/(inf. + ing) = the reason (why) + جملة

السبب في

ex. - Do you know the reason for his anger?

- Do you know the reason (why) he is angry?

- The reason ..... be that + جملة

السبب في ... هو أن ...

ex. - The reason for his sadness is that he failed the driving test.

- The reason why she arrived late was that she had missed the train.

What ... be that ما ... هو أن

ex. - What made us happy was that he came first.

- What attracted my attention is that he had red hair.

- What is incredible is that Andy was only eight years old when he started selling apple juice outside his home in Auburn.



## but

يمكن استخدام (but) لربط صفتين أو ظرفين متناقضين:

ex. - She is intelligent but lazy. - She spoke quickly but clearly.

## help

help + (obj.) + inf. / to + inf.

ex. - My mother helps me to do my homework.

= My mother helps me do my homework.

- This device can help filter the water.

## everyday – every day

• everyday (adj)

يومي (صفة تأتي قبل الاسم)

ex. - Going to the club is one of my everyday habits.

• every day (adv)

كل يوم (ظرف زمان يأتي في بداية أو نهاية الجملة)

ex. - I go to the club every day.

## Exercise On Language Hints

• Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. The reason ..... his anger is that I broke his glasses.  
a. for                      b. in                      c. why                      d. from
2. The reason ..... he is angry is that I have broken his glasses.  
a. for                      b. in                      c. why                      d. from
3. .... annoys me is that he always shouts unnecessarily.  
a. For                      b. In                      c. Why                      d. What
4. The way you talked to Yara made her .....  
a. upset                      b. is upset                      c. feel upset                      d. a & c
5. Mr Youssef is well-known ..... a good teacher.  
a. to                      b. as                      c. for                      d. at
6. Mr Youssef is well-known ..... his good teaching skills.  
a. to                      b. as                      c. for                      d. at
7. Mr Youssef is well-known ..... all secondary school students in this area.  
a. to                      b. as                      c. for                      d. at
8. Rodayna is young ..... wise.  
a. and                      b. but                      c. so                      d. although
9. Sea food ..... well in coastal towns and cities.  
a. is sold                      b. sells                      c. a & b                      d. be sold
10. Sometimes, one gets tired of their ..... routine.  
a. today                      b. tonight                      c. every day                      d. everyday



## 1 Reading

★ Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

(درک مطلب)

There are wild dogs and pet dogs. Pet dogs are helpers and friends to people. There were no pet dogs 15,000 years ago. Men and women learned how to work with dogs. Dogs helped humans travel from Asia to North America 10,000 years ago by pulling sleds in the snow. People say dogs are "man's best friend".

They help with farming, hunting and fishing. They can pull things for people. They can help find things. There are many colours of dogs. There are white dogs, gray dogs, black dogs, and brown dogs. A dog's fur can be short or long. Dogs have curly hair or straight fur.

There are very small dogs. They are only 8-6 inches tall. There are very big dogs. They are about 3 feet tall. Some dogs can see well. Some dogs do not see very well. All dogs can hear well. They can hear sounds that people cannot hear. They can hear high sounds and low sounds. They can hear sound very far away. All dogs can smell very well. They can smell 40 times better than humans! Dogs live 5 to 13 years, but some dogs live much longer. One dog lived to be twenty four years old!

★ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d

1. Dogs helped people go to North America by .....  
a. pulling sleds in the snow      b. helping with farming  
c. helping find things      d. none of the previous answers
2. The best antonym for "pet" is ..... animal".  
a. wild      b. domestic      c. large      d. friendly
3. A dog's fur is the dog's .....  
a. nose      b. eyes      c. hair      d. ears
4. Straight hair is .....  
a. curly      b. long      c. brown      d. not curly
5. According to the passage, all dogs do well in .....  
a. hearing      b. smelling      c. seeing      d. both a and b
6. The age of the oldest dog reaches to ..... years old.  
a. 24      b. 20      c. 13      d. 15,000
7. Dogs are useful animals because .....  
a. they have many colours      b. they help with hunting  
c. there are wild dogs and pet dogs  
d. they can play and do nothing for men and women
8. The writer mentions that some dogs can't ..... well  
a. hear      b. run      c. smell      d. see



## 2 Essay Writing كتابة المقال

### Model essay

Write an essay of about (180) words on "What makes a successful person".

#### What makes a successful person

Success is the main goal of nearly all people. Everyone wants to be successful in their work and in their life in general. They try hard to achieve this goal. However, not all people are able to achieve it. How can it be possible for a person to be successful? If you want to be successful, you must have a goal. This goal may be a good job, a nice home, a happy family, a simple life or anything else. A goal has to be reachable not imaginary. Moreover, you should have the abilities that allow you to reach it.

To achieve your goal, you should do your best. Never let anything stop or distract you. You must have determination. Determination gives you the strength needed to face the hardships you face.

You have to plan for your life. Planning makes you ready to step forward without wasting your time or effort. It also enables you to foresee <sup>تنبأ</sup> possible obstacles <sup>عقبات</sup> and pass them. You also need to benefit from the experience of others. This helps you make less mistakes.

Finally and most importantly, do not care about negative criticism <sup>النقد الهدام</sup>. Give your ear to only positive criticism. Have faith in Allah and trust yourself. Be sure that your dreams will come true only when you want and do your best to achieve them.

## 3 Translation الترجمة

1 Choose the correct Arabic translation from a, b, c or d:

1. In fact, we must admit that inorganic farming can be a solution to overcome the problem of food shortage. Inorganic fertilizers are good for the rapid growth of plants. (الشهداء ٢٠٢٣)

a. في الحقيقة لابد أن نعتزف أن في الزراعة العضوية يمكن أن نجد حلاً للتغلب على مشكلة نقص الطعام، فالأسمدة غير العضوية جيدة في النمو الشفاف للنباتات.

b. في الحقيقة لابد أن ننكر أن في الزراعة العضوية يمكن أن نجد حلاً للتغلب على مشكلة نقص الطعام، فالأسمدة غير العضوية جيدة في النمو السريع للنباتات.

c. في الحقيقة لابد أن نعتزف أن الزراعة غير العضوية يمكن أن تكون حلاً للتغلب على مشكلة نقص الطعام، فالأسمدة غير العضوية جيدة في النمو السريع للنباتات.

d. في الحقيقة لابد أن نعتزف أن الزراعة غير العضوية يمكن أن تقترح حلاً للتقليل من مشكلة نقص الطعام، فالأسمدة العضوية جيدة في النمو السريع للنباتات.

2. The act of downloading books illegally from the internet, which is called online book piracy, causes huge financial losses to publishers. (منوف ٢٠٢٣)

a. يتسبب تنزيل الكتب بشكل قانوني من الإنترنت - والذي يُطلق عليه قرصنة الكتب - في خسائر مالية ضخمة للناشرين.

b. يتسبب رفع الكتب بشكل قانوني على الإنترنت - والذي يُطلق عليه قرصنة الكتب - في خسائر مالية ضخمة للناشرين.



c. يتسبب تلزيل الكتب بشكل غير قانوني من الإنترنت - والذي يُطلق عليه قرصنة الكتب - في خسائر مالية ضخمة للناشرين.  
d. يتسبب نشر الكتب بشكل قانوني علي الإنترنت - والذي يُطلق عليه قرصنة الكتب - في خسائر مالية ضخمة للناشرين.

2 Choose the correct English translation from a, b, c or d:

لا تزال أثارنا القديمة من أهم العوامل التي تجذب السائحين، ولذلك يجب الاعتناء بها والحفاظ عليها.  
(الفرج ٢٠٢٣)

- Our ancient monuments are still one of the main factors which attract tourists so we should take care of them and protect them.
- Our ancient monuments are still one of the main factors which attract tourists so we should take to and protect them.
- Our ancient mountains are still one of the main factors which attract tourists so we should take care of them and protect them.
- Our ancient monuments are still one of the main factories which attract tourists so we should take care of them and protect them.

علي الرغم من فوائدها الكثيرة فإن مواقع التواصل الاجتماعي أحياناً تتسبب في نشر الشائعات وخلق الفوضى في المجتمع، لذلك يؤيد الكثيرون فرض الرقابة الحكومية عليها.  
(البياتين ٢٠٢٣)

- Despite the many types of profits, social media sometimes spreads rumours and creates chaos in society. So many supports government protection on it.
- Despite its many benefits, social networking sites sometimes spread rumours and create chaos in society. Therefore, many support the imposition of government censorship on it.
- Despite their great benefits, social networking sites sometimes cause the spread of rumours and create chaos in society. That's why, many people approve of imposing governmental observation on them.
- Despite their great benefits, social networking sites sometimes cause the spread of rumours and create mess in society. That's why, many people approve of imposing governmental conservation on it.

## PART III JUST FOR ADVANCED LEVEL

للفائقين فقط

### achieve

• **achieve(d) (v)**

- Sama **achieved** great success learning new language skills.

يحقق - ينجز

• **achievement (n)**

- This exam measures your **achievements** in maths.

إنجاز - نجاح - تحصيل

لاحظ التعبيرات التالية:

- crowning / supreme achievement

أعظم إنجاز

- outstanding / remarkable achievement

إنجاز بارز

- underachievement إنجاز دون المستوى

≠ overachievement إنجاز يفوق التوقعات



• **achiever (n)**

- A teacher should help his students become **achievers**.

- **underachiever** متفوق  $\neq$  **overachiever** مقصر - دون المستوى

• **achievable (adj)**

ممکن إنجازہ

- A good goal is **achievable**, not imaginary.

**come across**

• **come across = encounter (phr. v)** يصادف (يقابل أو يجد أو يكتشف بالصدفة دون ترتيب)

- While I was in Paris, I **came across** an old schoolmate.

- Rokaya **came across** an old photo album in her desk.

• **come across = come over (phr. v)** يبدو كأنه / يوحى بأنه - يظهر بمظهر طيب

- Omar **comes across** as a very intelligent gentleman.

- She **came across** very well in the interview.

**measure**

• **measure (in) (v)** يقيس (حجم - طول - كمية)

- Try to **measure** the amount of petrol we need for the journey.

- We **measure** long distances in kilometres or miles.

• **measure (d) (v)** يبلغ مقاسه

- This villa **measures** 35 × 43.

• **measure = step (n)** إجراء - خطوة تنفيذية

- We have to take the right **measures** to face the traffic problem.

• **measurement (n)** مقياس (طول - حجم - مقدار) (اسم معدود)

- What is the **measurement** of your feet ?

- The tailor **took** my **measurements**.

• **measurement (n)** عملية القياس (اسم غير معدود)

- The **measurement** of body temperature is necessary every three hours.

• **measurable = noticeable (adj)** ملحوظ - بارز - هام

- The new law has had a **measurable** effect on traffic flow.

• **measurable (adj)  $\neq$  immeasurable** قابل للقياس

- Suffering is not **measurable**. = Suffering is **immeasurable**.

**relevant**

• **relevant (to) (adj)** غير مرتبط  $\neq$  **irrelevant** خاص بـ / متصل بـ / متعلق بـ

- Some laws which were made long ago are not **relevant** to modern societies.

• **relevance (n)** عدم الملاءمة - انعدام الصلة  $\neq$  **irrelevance** ملائمة / ارتباط

- What you say has no **relevance** to the problem we are discussing.



## specific

- **specific (adj)** محدد  $\neq$  **non-specific** غير محدد  
- The students understand better when you give **specific** examples.
- **specific (adj)** واضح - دقيق / تفصيلي  $\neq$  **non-specific / vague** مبهم - غير دقيق  
- The **specific** operation تشغيل instructions are written on the box.
- **specific to (adj)** خاص  
- This disease is **specific to** old people.
- **specifics (n)** التفاصيل  
- I have told you the general idea, Now, let's move to the **specifics**.

## Advanced Exercise on Vocabulary

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

## • Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

- The earthquake ..... 7.2 on the Richter scale.  
a. measured      b. calculated      c. sized      d. sorted
- I asked the student to be ..... about the problems he faces.  
a. non-specific      b. specific      c. measurable      d. immeasurable
- The conference wasn't a success due to poor .....  
a. treason      b. finalists      c. solution      d. organisation
- A villa with a direct ..... to the sea is my dream house.  
a. access      b. objective      c. range      d. corn cob
- The energy in food is measured ..... calories.  
a. on      b. in      c. to      d. from

## Advanced Exercise on Language

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

## • Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

- The student ..... is my brother.  
a. who got full marks      b. , who got the full marks,  
c. , that got the full marks,      d. whose full marks
- This is the house ..... into last night.  
a. breaking      b. broken  
c. which was breaking      d. which it was broken
- Do you see the man ..... ? He is a politician.  
a. who is talking      b. , who is talking,  
c. , that is talking,      d. , which was talking,
- My mother ..... is the best person in the world.  
a. , that I love,      b. , who I love,      c. that I love      d. whose I love
- My name was the second winner .....  
a. announce      b. announcing      c. announced      d. announces



# Test on Unit 12

• Understand

• Apply

• Create

تنويه

التقييمات  
الشهرية في  
نهاية الكتاب



اختبار الكتروني

## 1. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. After long years of hard work, I finally reached .....  
a. a charity      b. my goal      c. my objective      d. b & c
2. "He finds trading in spare parts profitable." Which of the following adjective is antonym for 'profitable'?  
a. Profitless      b. Useful      c. Beneficial      d. Rewarding
3. Something that is ..... is able to be measured.  
a. immeasurable      b. specific      c. relevant      d. measurable
4. It is known that ..... live in very organised groups.  
a. stretchers      b. honeybees      c. corn cobs      d. sleepsuits
5. The ..... efforts of the engineers and the workers played an important role in the success of the project.  
a. joint      b. pedal-powered  
c. profitless      d. irrelevant
6. He is too young to ..... such a difficult situation on his own.  
a. filter      b. weave      c. experience      d. pirate
7. The company ..... he works for imports cotton from Egypt.  
a. when      b. where      c. which      d. who
8. The bus which I ..... every day was very late today, so I missed my first class.  
a. go to school      b. go to on school  
c. on go to school      d. go to school on
9. All my friends like the food ..... in this restaurant.  
a. serves      b. is served  
c. which it is served      d. served
10. The exam paper ..... the least mistakes will get the best mark.  
a. whose      b. with      c. which      d. that
11. We thanked the official ..... visit solved a lot of problems in our area.  
a. where      b. to      c. with      d. whose
12. I don't think much of the young people ..... torn trousers.  
a. wearing      b. are wearing      c. wear      d. worn



2. Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

A large, simply outlined bird shows a clear thinker with a very demanding conscience and definite ideas of right and wrong. A flying bird signifies someone who is tolerant and broad-minded. High flying gulls are the sign of a relaxed, easy going person.

Boxes piled neatly on top of one another show a person who is tidy and well-organised. Boxes within boxes shout “let me out” and suggest that you are feeling trapped.

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d:

- 298



5. What are doodles ? .....
  - a. Some meaningful lines
  - b. Some meaningful lines but have interpretations
  - c. Graphic lines with certain tools
  - d. Random lines and shapes
6. Where do people doodle? - On .....
  - a. clothes
  - b. paper
  - c. air
  - d. water
7. What kind of things does a person draw to express tolerance ?
  - a. A dead bird
  - b. A flying bird
  - c. A line
  - d. A circle
8. What would a person in prison draw ?
  - a. Boxes within boxes
  - b. Squares
  - c. Triangles with squares
  - d. Circles

**3. a. Choose the correct Arabic translation from a, b, c, or d:**

If you are passionate about a goal or dream of yours, then don't stop until you achieve it. Persistence in the face of adversities is what builds champions.

- a. إذا كنت شغوفاً بهدف أو حلم لك ، فلا تتوقف حتى تحققه. الإصرار في مواجهة المحن لا يصنع الأبطال.
- b. لو كنت شغوفاً بهدف أو حلم لك ، فلا تتوقف بعد تحقيقه. الإصرار في مواجهة الصعاب هو ما يصنع الأبطال.
- c. إذا كنت شغوفاً بهدف أو حلم لك ، فلا تتوقف حتى تحققه. الإصرار في مواجهة الأخطار هو ما يصنع الأبطال.
- d. إذا كنت شغوفاً بهدف أو حلم لك ، فلا تتوقف حتى تحققه. الإصرار في مواجهة المحن هو ما يصنع الأبطال.

**b. Choose the correct English translation from a, b, c, or d:**

هناك معايير للهدف الجيد، وهي أن يكون محدداً وقابلًا للقياس ومن الممكن إنجازه، ولا بد أيضاً أن يكون الهدف ملائماً ومرتبطة بخطة زمنية.

- a. There are criteria for a good goal. It must be specific, measurable, and achievable. The goal must also be appropriate and linked to a time plan.
- b. Their are criteria for a good goal. It must be specific, measurable, and achievable. The goal must also be appropriate and linked to a time plan.
- c. There are criterion for a good goal. It must be specific, measurable, and achievable. The goal must also be appropriate and linked to a time plan.
- d. There are criteria for a good goal. They must be specific, measurable, and achievable. The goal must also be appropriate and linked to a time plan.

**4. Answer the following questions :**

1. Did you expect Regan and Goneril to die ? Why ?

2. Who was your favourite character in the play ? Give reasons ?

3. What is the moral lesson in King Lear in your opinion ?

**5. Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED and EIGHTY (180)**

**words on the following topic:**

**'The qualities of good future goals'**



## Mini-Test on Unit 12 for Al-Azhar Students

إختبار مصغر لطلاب الأزهر الشريف

### 1. Finish the following dialogue :

Ahmed and Saeed are discussing a film shown on TV called "The Gang".

Ahmed : What a strange film ! Did you watch it ?

Saeed : (1) ..... How long did it last ?

Ahmed : (2) .....

Saeed : (3) ..... ?

Ahmed : The actors performed well.

Saeed : (4) ..... ?

Ahmed : Of course the violence. There was much violence that I didn't like.

### 2. Write a paragraph of (60) words on :

"An interesting trip you will never forget"

### 3. A. Translate into Arabic :

In the future, there will be more vaccinations and many diseases will not be spreading as rapidly as they do today.

### B. Translate into English :

يجب أن يكون لديك الطموح الكافي لتحقيق آمالك.



# Revision 4

Based On Units 10, 11 & 12

SB pages 72 : 77 WB pages 42 : 45

## READING

### Reading Texts

#### The world of News

(SB page 72)

Nowadays<sup>(1)</sup>, so many people write 'news' stories<sup>(2)</sup> and blogs<sup>(3)</sup>. We decided to interview three professionals<sup>(4)</sup> involved<sup>(5)</sup> in the world of news to find out<sup>(6)</sup> what they think about the stories.

(1) حالياً

(2) موضوعات إخبارية

(3) مدونات

(4) محترفين

(5) مشاركين

(6) يكتشف

#### Anya :

I'm a news reporter<sup>(1)</sup> for a national<sup>(2)</sup> television channel and my job is really interesting, but it can also be difficult to find real<sup>(3)</sup> stories. I believe that it is very important to have good sources<sup>(4)</sup> which you can trust<sup>(5)</sup>. Nowadays there is so much news on the internet. It's difficult to know which facts<sup>(6)</sup> are true<sup>(7)</sup>, and which are not true, which is why all facts must be checked<sup>(8)</sup> carefully.



(1) مراسل صحفي

(2) قومي / وطني

(3) حقيقي

(4) مصادر

(5) يثق بـ

(6) حقائق

(7) صحيح

(8) يتحقق من

#### Haruki :

As the editor<sup>(1)</sup> of a local newspaper, it is essential<sup>(2)</sup> that all my journalists<sup>(3)</sup> write stories that interest<sup>(4)</sup> our readers<sup>(5)</sup>. The national newspapers have stories which are about the whole<sup>(6)</sup> country, but we like to focus<sup>(7)</sup> on happier news happening in our area<sup>(8)</sup>.



(1) رئيس التحرير

(2) ضروري - جوهري

(3) صحفيين

(4) يجذب اهتمام

(5) قراء

(6) بالكامل

(7) يركز

(8) منطقة



## Nashwa :

I'm a **photographer**<sup>(1)</sup> and I work with a reporter who writes about **crime**<sup>(2)</sup>. We usually travel **together**<sup>(3)</sup> so I can take photos and he can talk to the police and people who saw anything.



(SB page 72)

- (1) مصور فوتوغرافي
- (2) جريمة
- (3) معاً - سوياً
- (4) مقال
- (5) عنوان رئيسي

When he finishes his **article**<sup>(4)</sup>, he sends it to the newspaper with my pictures which go under the **headline**<sup>(5)</sup>.

## Square eyes; Are we watching too much TV; Is TV good or bad ?

Nowadays, many parents are worried about the **amount**<sup>(1)</sup> of time their children **spend**<sup>(2)</sup> watching television, but in fact the amount of time children **actually**<sup>(3)</sup> sit in front of the TV is less than it used to be. A **recent**<sup>(4)</sup> **survey**<sup>(5)</sup> in the UK found that children watch TV for about thirteen hours a week. However, they spend more than fifteen hours a week on the internet, and this is increasing. It seems that most children **connect**<sup>(6)</sup> to the **media**<sup>(7)</sup> from their tablets and phones, which is where they get their **entertainment**<sup>(8)</sup>, news and music.



(SB page 74)

- (1) كمية
- (2) يقضي وقت
- (3) في الحقيقة
- (4) حديث
- (5) دراسة استطلاعية
- (6) يتصل بـ
- (7) وسائل التواصل
- (8) الترفيه
- (9) إيجابي
- (10) معتاد
- (11) أفلام كوميدية
- (12) مسلسلات
- (13) الواقع
- (14) عروض / برامج
- (15) محبوب / منتشر
- (16) عادي
- (17) الحياة الواقعية
- (18) ينخر

However, sitting watching television together can be a very **positive**<sup>(9)</sup> way of spending time with your family. There are a lot of channels on TV nowadays, so there are plenty of different kinds of programmes to choose from.

As well as the **usual**<sup>(10)</sup> programmes, such as **comedies**<sup>(11)</sup> and **dramas**<sup>(12)</sup>, there are a huge number of **reality**<sup>(13)</sup> **shows**<sup>(14)</sup>, which have become very **popular**<sup>(15)</sup>. These are shows where **ordinary**<sup>(16)</sup> people appear in **real-life**<sup>(17)</sup> or everyday situations, or in situations or competitions which the programme makers have **created**<sup>(18)</sup>.



Television also **offers**<sup>(19)</sup> people the **opportunity**<sup>(20)</sup> to learn new things, not just about the news, but about the world around them. **Documentaries**<sup>(21)</sup> about animals, the environment, history or culture are an excellent way to teach both children and **adults**<sup>(22)</sup> things they may not have learnt at school. And if everyone is finding out new information together, it's a great way to **discuss**<sup>(23)</sup> new ideas and **share**<sup>(24)</sup> opinions.

(19) يمنح - يعرض

(20) الفرصة

(21) الأفلام الوثائقية

(22) الكبار

(23) يناقش

(24) يشارك

## Green World

(SB page 75)

Green World is a new television **series**<sup>(1)</sup> about some of the most amazing and beautiful places around the world. I loved the first programme, which was about the Kalahari desert in **southern**<sup>(2)</sup> Africa and



the people and animals that live there. The programme was **introduced**<sup>(3)</sup> by Marcus Thompson, a journalist who had lived in the Kalahari for years, and it was **obvious**<sup>(4)</sup> that he loves the place. I'm **glad**<sup>(5)</sup> they used someone who really knew about the place and not a famous **celebrity**<sup>(6)</sup>. The **photography**<sup>(7)</sup> was **outstanding**<sup>(8)</sup> with **brilliant**<sup>(9)</sup> photos of the desert, which were taken during **the day**<sup>(10)</sup> and at night.

I watched the programme with my two children, and we all learnt a lot of things we hadn't known about the Kalahari desert. We also enjoyed discussing the programme **afterwards**<sup>(11)</sup>, and my son **looked up**<sup>(12)</sup> more information on the internet. I'm **pleased**<sup>(13)</sup> that there are going to be some magazines to **go with**<sup>(14)</sup> the series too. I'd certainly **recommend**<sup>(15)</sup> this series to anyone interested in the natural world.

The next programme is about the Rocky Mountains in Canada, and I hope it's as good as the first one.

(1) سلسلة - مسلسل

(2) جنوبي

(3) يُقدِّم

(4) واضح

(5) سعيد

(6) شخصية مشهورة

(7) نجم

(8) التصوير

(9) بارز - هام

(10) رائع

(11) النهار

(12) فيما بعد

(13) يتحقق من

(14) مسرور

(15) يُصاحب

(16) يوصى بـ - يُزكى



# Monthly assessments

## 1. February test

تقييمات شهرية - اختبار فبراير

### 1. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. To try very hard to achieve something that is very difficult means to .....  
a. struggle      b. suspect      c. respect      d. follow
2. The government plans to ..... a new train line to connect all the cities around the country.  
a. destroy      b. travel      c. commute      d. build
3. We went down a secret passage. Another word for "secret" is .....  
a. tidy      b. hidden      c. long      d. wide
4. Hany got a reward from his father because his exam results were .....  
a. boring      b. satisfactory      c. dishonesty      d. impolite
5. I asked my brother to pick me ..... from the railway station.  
a. with      b. down      c. of      d. up
6. I often ..... notes during my English lecture.  
a. spell      b. speak      c. make      d. see
7. I can't drink this tea. It ..... too sweet.  
a. taste      b. is tasting      c. tastes      d. is tasted
8. When ..... ?  
a. will your homework have been done  
b. your homework have been done  
c. will have been done our homework  
d. have your homework will been done
9. Listen! They ..... again.  
a. have shouted      b. shout      c. were shouting      d. are shouting
10. In three days' time, we ..... our flat.  
a. will have painted      b. will be painted  
c. will being painted      d. will have painting
11. What ..... now?  
a. you are doing      b. doing you are      c. are you doing      d. are doing you
12. By next Friday, the dressmaker ..... my sister's wedding dress.  
a. will be made      b. will have made  
c. is making      d. is going to make



13. You can't talk to Hamza now. He .....  
 a. isn't sleeping    b. slept    c. is sleeping    d. was sleeping
14. My lunch ..... before I go home.  
 a. will have cook    b. will have cooked  
 c. will being cooked    d. will have been cooked
15. My friend's brother ..... to London tomorrow. He has got his ticket.  
 a. is flying    b. is going to flying  
 c. flies    d. will fly

2. Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

A lot of people like to keep a pet. However, those pets sometimes put their owners in embarrassing situations. That's what exactly happened to us.

Our dog, Rex, is a nice little one, which we have had for almost five years. He has soft and white hair, which is so smooth that every one of the family enjoys moving his hand on him. Rex is now convinced that he is actually a member of the family, and so has equal rights. It is his rights that Rex insists on but duties he has none. One day we were expecting some guests for dinner. Mother woke up early to prepare food before the guests arrived. Rex followed her and started barking asking for some food. Mother dismissed him from the kitchen, closed the door and carried on her cooking in peace. The guests arrived; took their seats around the table and started eating. All of a sudden Rex jumped in front of one of the guests. The lady was so frightened that she screamed loudly. In spite of Rex's strong resistance, my sister took him away. He kept shouting when he was locked up in a room. Finally, my mother gave him something to eat. One of the good things about Rex is that he forgets our little cruelties to him. Anyhow, he looked up at my mother gratefully, and ate with great appetite.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Rex jumped in front of the lady to .....  
 a. welcome her  
 b. show her that he had equal rights  
 c. make her scream  
 d. take food from her plate
2. One of the good things about Rex is that he .....  
 a. remembers cruelties    b. doesn't remember unkindness  
 c. was ugly    d. helps everyone



3. Rex has ..... duties.  
a. lots of                      b. many                      c. no                      d. not
4. The underlined word 'equal' in the passage can be replaced by .....  
a. the same                      b. same                      c. alike                      d. different
5. Rex looked up at my mother gratefully; this means he wanted to say .....  
a. it isn't fair                      b. thank you  
c. you are ungrateful                      d. it's not my fault
6. Rex ..... my sister strongly when she took him away.  
a. resisted                      b. loved                      c. protested                      d. grabbed
7. What do people like most about Rex ?  
a. curly hair                      b. straight hair                      c. fluffy hair                      d. dirty hair
8. The words rights and duties are .....  
a. synonyms                      b. of the same meaning  
c. antonyms                      d. alike

3. a. Choose the correct Arabic translation from a, b, c or d :

People need to do exercise regularly to keep fit and healthy. In case of being busy all the time doing their work, everyday walking can be the best for them.

- a. يحتاج الناس لممارسة تدريبات رياضية بشكل مستمر ليحافظوا على لياقتهم البدنية وصحتهم في حالة إنشغالهم بالعمل طول الوقت، فالمشي اليومى من الممكن ألا يكون أفضل لهم.
- b. يحتاج الناس لممارسة تدريبات رياضية بشكل منتظم ليحافظوا على لياقتهم البدنية وصحتهم في حالة إنشغالهم بالعمل طول الوقت، فالمشي اليومى من الممكن أن يكون أفضل لهم.
- c. يحتاج الناس لممارسة تدريبات رياضية منتظمة ليحافظوا على لياقتهم البدنية وصحتهم. في حالة عدم إنشغالهم بالعمل طول الوقت، فالمشي اليومى من الممكن أن يكون أفضل لهم.
- d. يحتاج الناس لممارسة تدريبات رياضية بشكل منظم للحفاظ على لياقتهم البدنية والصحية. في حالة إنشغالهم بالعمل طول الوقت، فالمشي اليومى من الممكن أن يكون أفضل لهم.

b. Choose the correct English translation from a, b, c or d :

شهد كأس العالم في قطر كثيرًا من المفاجآت حتى الآن مثل فوز السعودية على الأرجنتين وتونس على فرنسا، وتأهل المغرب والسنغال لدور الستة عشر.

- a. The World Cup in Qatar this year has witnessed a lot of surprises up till now as the win of Saudi Arabia over Argentina, Tunisia over France and the qualification of Morocco and Senegal to the round of 16.



- b. The World Cup in Qatar this year was witnessed a lot of surprises up till now as the win of Saudi Arabia over Argentina, Tunisia over France and the separation of Morocco and Senegal to the round of 16.
- c. The World Cup in Qatar this year has witnesses a lot of surprises up till now as the win of Saudi Arabia over Argentina, Tunisia over France and the qualification of Morocco and Senegal to the round of 16.
- d. The World Cup in Qatar this year is witnessing a lot of surprises up till now as the loss of Saudi Arabia against Argentina, Tunisia over France and the qualification of Morocco and Senegal to the round of 16.

• **4. Answer the following questions :**

1. In what way were Gloucester and King Lear alike ?

.....

2. Do you think most people disagree with friends and family sometimes ?

.....

3. What did Edmund, Goneril and Regan have in common ?

.....

• **5. Write an e-mail of about ONE HUNDRED and EIGHTY (180) words on the following :**

**To your friend Adam to tell him about how building new cities is a good way to solve many problems.**

**Your name Ali and your email address is ali2000@yahoo.com.**

**Your friend's email address is adam2323@yahoo.com.**

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....



# Monthly assessments

## 2. March test

تقييمات شهرية - اختبار مارس

1. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. To ..... means to have enough money to pay for something.  
a. afford      b. adjust      c. advance      d. admire
2. Something is hard or difficult, but it is interesting to do. It is .....  
a. disappointing      b. relaxing      c. exhausting      d. challenging
3. To succeed, you should be confident. The synonym of "confident" is .....  
a. hopeless      b. well-built      c. self-assured      d. careful
4. I don't think the money you gave him was ..... He was angry.  
a. boring      b. rewarding      c. terrifying      d. frightening
5. They tried to ..... revenge on their enemy.  
a. speak      b. take      c. wear      d. spray
6. People must wear face masks in ..... transport.  
a. public      b. popular      c. formal      d. natural
7. When I saw him, he reminded me ..... my English teacher.  
a. by      b. on      c. of      d. with
8. When ..... your task?  
a. you will have done      b. you have will written  
c. you have will done      d. will you have done
9. It was Soha's habit to bite her nails in the past. This means that .....  
a. she used to do it.      b. she is used to doing it.  
c. she no longer do it.      d. she often does it.
10. Ahmed and Tamer are twins. Ahmed is ..... Tamer.  
a. slightly older      b. far older      c. much older      d. as old as
11. A cheese sandwich ..... for me at the moment.  
a. is making      b. is being made      c. was made      d. has made
12. By 2025, my brother ..... from the university.  
a. will have graduated      b. will be graduated  
c. will have been graduated      d. will be graduating



13. Mustafa ..... to his work every day when he was working in that office.  
 a. used to walking                      b. using to walk  
 c. used to walk                          d. using to walking
14. Look! Your son ..... alone on the stage.  
 a. is dancing                      b. is danced                      c. was dancing                      d. dances
15. Manal is 174 cm tall, but her daughter is 173 cm tall. Manal's daughter is ..... her.  
 a. exactly the same as                      b. slightly taller than  
 c. almost as tall as                          d. much taller than

2. **Read the following passage, then answer the questions :**

Once Wealth and Poverty approached a merchant and introduced themselves as **visitors**. The merchant offered his salutations to both of them and said: "May I know what brings you to my humble shop?" Wealth said: "We want you to judge and tell us who is more beautiful between us two?" The merchant was in a **fix**. If he were to declare wealth as more beautiful than poverty, it would curse him. If he were to declare poverty as more beautiful than wealth, wealth would forsake him. However, he regained his composure and said: "I have great respect for you both. Would you please act according to my instructions? Then only I can judge properly." The visitors agreed. He said: "Mother wealth, would you please go to the entrance (gates) and walk into the house? Mother, poverty! Would you please walk from here towards the gates? I can have a good look at you both, from near and far." The two visitors did walk as the merchant wished them to. Then the merchant happily declared: "Mother wealth! You appear very beautiful when you enter the house. Mother poverty! You look very beautiful when you leave the house."

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. The word "**visitors**" refers to .....  
 a. wealth and poverty                      b. the wisdom  
 c. the problems                              d. the merchants
2. The way to solve a problem is to .....  
 a. stop thinking                              b. hesitate  
 c. think calmly                                d. rush
3. The underlined word "**fix**" can be replaced by .....  
 a. repair                                      b. mend                                      c. mess                                      d. miss



4. Which of the following is the best title for the passage?  
 a. Poverty wins  
 b. Wealth wins  
 c. Both wealth and poverty lose  
 d. A wise reaction
5. Poverty was beautiful when she .....  
 a. got ill  
 b. left the house  
 c. entered the house  
 d. stood at the gates
6. If the merchant declared poverty as more beautiful than wealth, wealth would ..... him.  
 a. abandon  
 b. marry  
 c. delete  
 d. cancel
7. What is the personification mentioned in the passage ?  
 a. The merchant gave wealth and poverty the image of visitors.  
 b. The merchant gave wealth and poverty the image of criminals.  
 c. The merchant gave wealth and poverty the image of animals.  
 d. The merchant gave wealth and poverty the image of teachers.
8. The merchant was .....  
 a. not clever  
 b. cunning  
 c. a thief  
 d. ugly

3. a. Choose the correct Arabic translation from a, b, c or d :

The 27<sup>th</sup> United Nations Climate Change conference was held from 6 to 18 November, 2022 in Sharm El Sheikh, Egypt. It was the first climate summit held in Africa since 2016.

- a. تم إنعقاد مؤتمر الأمم المتحدة لتغير المناخ من ٦ - ١٨ نوفمبر ٢٠٢٢ في شرم الشيخ بمصر. وكانت أول قمة مناخ تم إنعقادها في أفريقيا منذ ٢٠١٦.
- b. انعقد مؤتمر الأمم المتحدة لتغير المناخ من ٦ - ١٨ نوفمبر ٢٠٢٢ في شرم الشيخ بمصر. وكانت أول مناظرة مناخ سيتم إنعقادها في أفريقيا منذ ٢٠١٦.
- c. إن إنعقاد مؤتمر الأمم المتحدة لتغيير المناخ من ٦ - ١٨ نوفمبر ٢٠٢٢ في شرم الشيخ بمصر. وكانت أول قمة مناخ تم إنعقادها خارج أفريقيا منذ ٢٠١٦.
- d. الدعوة لإنعقاد مؤتمر الأمم المتحدة لتغير المناخ في الفترة من ٦ - ١٨ نوفمبر ٢٠٢٢ في شرم الشيخ بمصر فهو يمثل أول قمة مناخ تم إنعقادها في أفريقيا منذ ٢٠١٦.



**b. Choose the correct English translation from a, b, c or d :**

تفتقد معظم الأسر لجو الدفء العائلي حيثما تتجمع الأسرة سوياً، فقلما يجتمع الأفراد جميعاً إلا في يوم العطلة الأسبوعية إذا لم يذهب الوالدان للعمل أيضاً.

- a. Most families lose the warm atmosphere where the family members get together. The family members rarely meet together except at the weekend unless the parents go to work as well.
- b. More families miss the warm atmosphere where the family organs get together. The family members rarely meet together except at the weekend unless the parents go to work as well.
- c. Most families miss the warm atmosphere where the family members get together. The family members rarely meet together except at the weekend unless the parents go to work as well.
- d. Most families lost the warm atmosphere where the family members get together. The family members usually meet together except at the weekend unless the parents go to work as well.

**4. Answer the following questions :**

1. "When you have nothing, there's nothing left to lose." What do you think Edgar means by this ?  
.....
2. "Look at yourself, Goneril! Evil hides inside you." Was Albany right to say this ? Why/Why not ?  
.....
3. Do you think that Gloucester still believes his son Edgar has been cruel to him ? Why ?  
.....

**5. Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED and EIGHTY (180) words on the following topic :**

**"A friend in need is a friend indeed." To what extent, do you believe in this proverb مثل ؟**

.....

.....

.....

.....

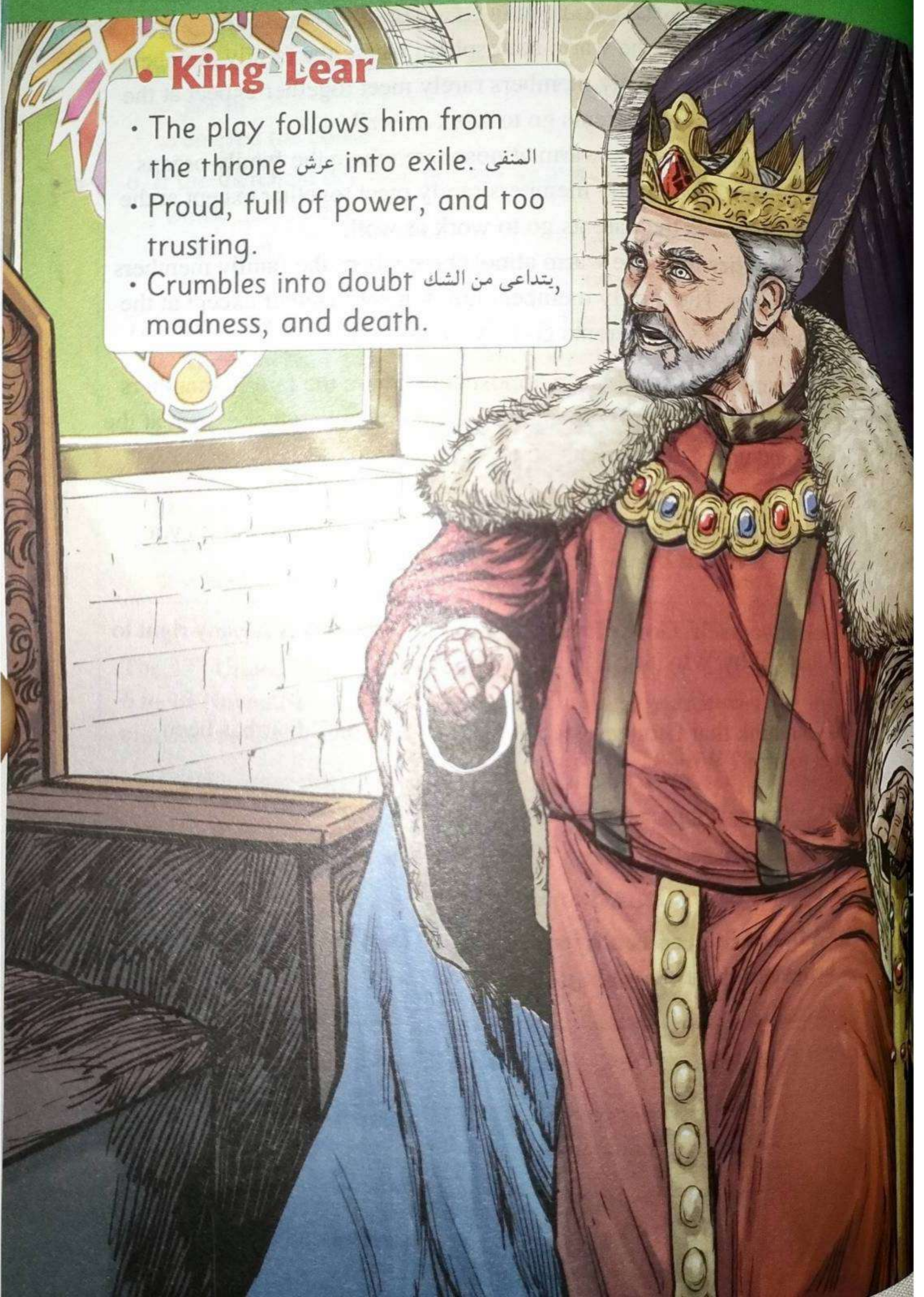
.....



# King Lear

## • King Lear

- The play follows him from the throne عرش into exile. المنفى
- Proud, full of power, and too trusting.
- Crumbles into doubt يتداعى من الشك, madness, and death.





# Characters in the play

شخصيات المسرحية

## • Edmund

- Schemes against his brother Edgar and betrays his father.
- Killed by his virtuous brother, Edgar.



## • Edgar

- Loyal but naive.
- Banished by his father because of his brother's scheme.
- Disguises himself as Poor Tom.
- Loyally cares for his father.
- Gets revenge on Edmund.



## • Earl of Gloucester

- Older nobleman; loyal to King Lear.
- Father of Edgar and Edmund.
- Deceived and betrayed by Edmund.



## • Cordelia

- King Lear's good daughter.
- Marries the King of France.
- Loyal to her father until the end.



## • Goneril

- A true villain.
- Erodes her father's loyalty and position.
- Married to the Duke of Albany.
- Poisons her sister and stabs herself.



## • Regan

- A true villain like her sister.
- Kills a servant who tries to save Gloucester.
- Poisoned by her sister.







### I Vocabulary

#### Key Vocabulary

|                    |                   |                       |                |
|--------------------|-------------------|-----------------------|----------------|
| spy (n)            | جاسوس             | betray (ed) (v)       | يخون           |
| revenge (n)        | انتقام / ثأر      | prove (d) (v)         | يثبت / يبرهن   |
| traitor (n)        | خائن              | cure (d), (v - n)     | يعالج / علاج   |
| carriage (n)       | عربة تجرها الخيول | authority (n)         | سلطة           |
| madness (n)        | جنون              | kneel (v) (knelt)     | يركع           |
| deceive (d) (v)    | يخدع              | enemy (n)             | عدو            |
| interrupt (ed) (v) | يقاطع             | stand for (v) (stood) | يؤيد / يرمز لـ |

#### Words and their definitions

- ▶ **take revenge for** : to do something bad because someone has done something bad to you ينتقم لـ
- ▶ **kneel (v) (knelt)** : to be or move to a position into which your body is supported on your knees, with the lower legs bent back يركع
- ▶ **betray (ed) (v)** : to give information about somebody or something to an enemy يخون
- ▶ **treason (n)** : the crime of doing something that could cause danger to your country such as helping its enemy during a war خيانة
- ▶ **authority (n)** : the power to give orders to people سلطة
- ▶ **deceive (d) (v)** : to make somebody believe something that is not true يخدع

#### Verbal Collocations & expressions متلازمات لفظية وتعبيرات

|                  |             |                |            |
|------------------|-------------|----------------|------------|
| take revenge for | ينتقم لـ    | get rid of     | يتخلص من   |
| wait for         | ينتظر       | take away      | يبعد       |
| have revenge     | ياخذ بالثأر | send a message | يرسل رسالة |



## II Text of Act III

Act

III

Scene v

*[In Gloucester's Castle. Cornwall enters with Edmund.]*

**CORNWALL:** Listen, Edmund. I'll have my revenge before I leave Gloucester's house.

**EDMUND:** I'm sorry, Cornwall, because the truth is so sad. This is the letter that my father Gloucester told me about. It proves that he's a spy, and that he's writing to the King of France. Oh, I wish he weren't guilty! It's very difficult for me to discover this terrible truth.

**CORNWALL:** We'll go and see Regan.

**EDMUND:** If the letter is true, you have work to do to stop him.

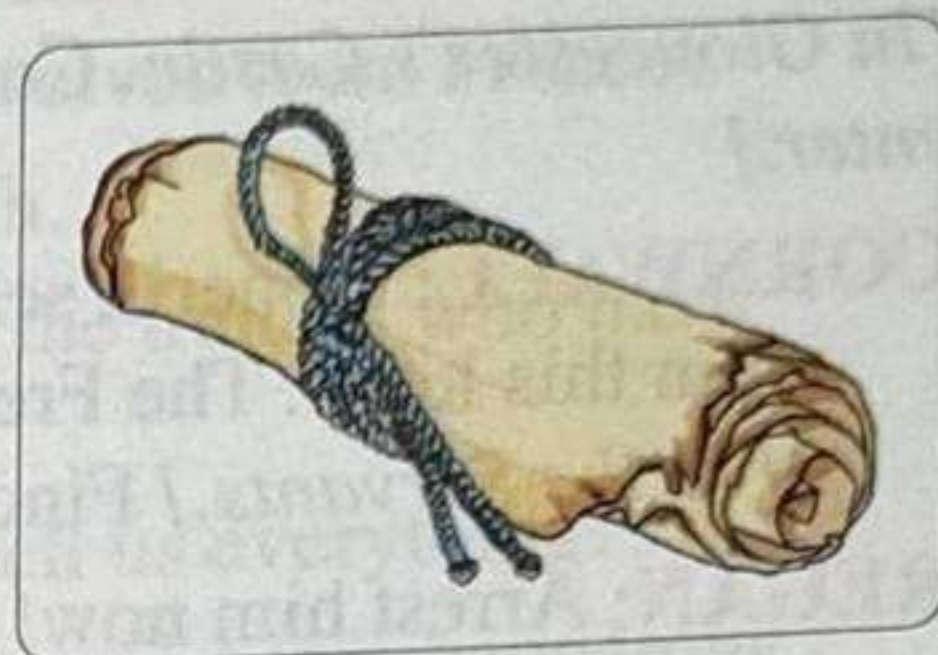
**CORNWALL:** If it is true or false, it has made you the next Duke of Gloucester. Find your father and then we can arrest him.

**EDMUND:** *[To himself.]* If I find him helping the King, Cornwall will think he is even more guilty.

*[To Cornwall.]* I'll continue to show you my loyalty, although it hurts me to do this to my father.

**CORNWALL:** I trust you, Edmund, and you'll find me to be a better father than he is.

*[They exit.]*



Act

III

Scene vi

*[Gloucester enters.]*

**GLOUCESTER:** My friend, where's the King?

**KENT:** He's here, sir; but be quiet, he's sleeping.

**GLOUCESTER:** Good friend, I've heard that there's a plan to get rid of him. There's a carriage waiting for you; help the King into it and drive to Dover, where you'll find people to help you. Go now. If you wait half an hour, you may both be killed. Follow me.

**KENT:** *[To Lear.]* You're sleeping now. This rest might help you, although it will be difficult to cure your madness.

*[To the Fool.]* Come, help me to carry the King.



**GLOUCESTER:** Hurry up! We must leave now.  
*[They all exit except for Edgar.]*

**EDGAR:** The poor King! His children have done to him what my father has done to me!  
*[He exits.]*

Act

III

Scene vii

*[In Gloucester's Castle. Cornwall, Regan, Goneril, Edmund and Servants enter.]*

**CORNWALL:** Goneril, send a message to your husband Albany and show him this letter. The French army has arrived in England.  
*[To the Servants.]* Find the traitor, Gloucester.

**REGAN:** Arrest him now!  
*[Some of the Servants exit.]*

**CORNWALL:** Leave him to me. Edmund, stay with Goneril. You shouldn't see what we'll do to your father, the traitor. Goodbye, my dear Goneril. Goodbye, Edmund, the new Duke of Gloucester.  
*[Oswald enters.]*

Where's the King?

**OSWALD:** The Duke of Gloucester has taken him away, sir. About thirty-five of his soldiers have gone with him. They're going to Dover, where they say they have some powerful friends.

**CORNWALL:** Get horses for Regan. Goodbye, Edmund.  
*[Goneril exits with Edmund, and Oswald.]*

Go and find that traitor, Gloucester. Bring him to us like a thief.  
*[The other Servants exit.]*

I can't kill Gloucester because I don't have the authority, but I can punish him. And although people won't like this, they can't stop us.

*[Gloucester enters, brought in by two or three men.]*

Who's there? Is that the traitor, Gloucester?

**REGAN:** It's him.

**CORNWALL:** Make him kneel in front of me.

**GLOUCESTER:** What are you doing? Good friends, you're in my house. Don't do this.





**CORNWALL:** Make him kneel, I said!  
*[The Servants make him kneel.]*

**REGAN:** You cruel man. You've deceived your son Edmund.

**GLOUCESTER:** You, my lady, are the one who's cruel, not me.

**REGAN:** You are a traitor!

**GLOUCESTER:** Cruel lady, what are you saying?

**CORNWALL:** What letters have you recently received from France?

**REGAN:** Give us your answer. We know the truth.

**CORNWALL:** And what have you planned with the traitors who have recently arrived in the kingdom?

**REGAN:** Who have you sent the mad King to? Tell us everything.

**GLOUCESTER:** Listen, I got a letter that explained what is happening.

It came from someone who is neither a friend nor an enemy.

**CORNWALL:** That's clever.

**REGAN:** And untrue.

**CORNWALL:** Where have you sent the King?

**GLOUCESTER:** To Dover.

**REGAN:** Why have you sent him to Dover? I told you not to help him. ...

**CORNWALL:** *[He interrupts Regan.]* Why Dover? Let him answer that first.

**GLOUCESTER:** Because I didn't want to see his daughters continue to be so cruel to him.

**CORNWALL:** You will never see that! *[Picks up a sword.]* Come! Fight me!

*[Gloucester tries to fight, but Cornwall hits his face with his sword.]*

**GLOUCESTER:** Oh, help me! My eyes!

**SERVANT 1:** Stop, my lord!

Stop now.

**CORNWALL:** Stop? Never! You can fight me too.

**SERVANT 1:** Very well, come on.

*[They fight and the servant badly wounds Cornwall.]*

**REGAN:** *[To a soldier.]* Give me your sword. A servant will not fight my husband like this! I won't stand for it!

*[She takes a sword and kills the servant.]*





**SERVANT 1:** Oh, I'm going to die!

*[He dies.]*

**GLOUCESTER:** Everything is black now and I can't see! Where's my son Edmund? You must take revenge for this terrible thing.

**REGAN:** Don't call for your son Edmund. He hates you. Edmund told us that you betrayed us. He will not help you.

**GLOUCESTER:** Oh, I've been so stupid! Edgar is the one I should trust, not Edmund!

**REGAN:** Throw him out of the palace, and let him find his way to Dover.

*[Two Servants help the now blind Gloucester from the stage.]*

*[To Cornwall.]* What's the matter, my lord?

**CORNWALL:** I've been hurt. Regan! Look at all this blood! Give me your arm.

*[Regan helps Cornwall off the stage. They exit.]*

### III Main points of Act III Scenes (V, VI & VII)

1. Edmund tells Cornwall that his father the Duke of Gloucester is disloyal خائن and writes letters to the King of France. Cornwall is upset and wants revenge الانتقام.
2. Cornwall says that Edmund will be the next Duke of Gloucester. Edmund promises to show loyalty الولاء to Cornwall through proving إثبات that his father is guilty مُذنب.
3. Gloucester tells Kent to take the King quickly to Dover where some people can help them. Edgar says the King's children have done to their father what his father has done to him.
4. Cornwall asks Goneril to tell her husband about Gloucester being a traitor خائن and about the French army. Cornwall orders the servants to arrest يقبض على Gloucester.
5. Cornwall orders Edmund, the new Duke of Gloucester, to stay with Goneril in order not to see what will happen to his father.
6. Cornwall can't kill Gloucester because he has no authority سلطة but he can punish him.
7. Gloucester is arrested and brought in front of Cornwall and Regan. They accuse يتهم him of being a traitor.
8. Cornwall fights Gloucester and hits his face. Gloucester is blind now. A servant fights Cornwall and he wounds him badly.



9. Regan kills the servant who wounded Cornwall and tells Gloucester that his son Edmund hates him and told them that his father betrayed them.
10. Gloucester regrets trusting Edmund. He knows it is Edgar whom he should trust. Regan orders the servants to throw Gloucester out of the palace. She exits with her badly-wounded husband.

#### IV Questions and answers

##### A. Critical Thinking Questions & Suggested Answers:

##### 1. Edmund was an evil traitor. Explain giving two points.

- لقد كان «إدموند» خائناً شريراً. وضح مع ذكر سببين.
- He plotted against his brother, Edgar, which made their father angry with Edgar. He told Cornwall and Regan that his father was a spy to the French King.
- لقد تأمر على أخيه «إدجار» مما أثار غضب والدهم منه، وأخبر «كورنوال» و «ريجان» أن والده كان جاسوساً للملك الفرنسي.

##### 2. Why do you think Edmund had so evil a character?

- برأيك، لماذا كان «إدموند» ذو شخصية شريرة إلى هذا الحد؟
- I think he was a selfish person who cared only for himself. He wanted to take everything at the expense of anybody.
- أعتقد أنه كان شخصاً أنانياً لا يهتم إلا بنفسه. أراد أن يأخذ كل شيء على حساب أي شخص.

##### 3. Do you think Gloucester was really a traitor? Why/Why not?

- هل تعتقد أن «جلوستر» كان حقاً خائناً؟ لماذا/ لماذا لا؟
- No, I don't think so. He was loyal to the legal King.
- لا، لا أعتقد ذلك. كان مخلصاً للملك الشرعي.

##### 4. In your opinion, how were Gloucester and King Lear alike?

- في اعتقادك، كيف كان «جلوستر» والملك «لير» متشابهين؟
- They were both betrayed by their children. King Lear was betrayed by his two daughters: Goneril and Regan. Gloucester was betrayed by his younger son, Edmund.
- كلاهما تعرض للخيانة من قبل أبنائهم. تعرض الملك «لير» للخيانة من ابنتيه: «جونيريل» و «ريجان». تعرض «جلوستر» للخيانة من قبل ابنه الأصغر «إدموند».

##### 5. Do you think Gloucester deserved what happened to him? Why/Why not?

- هل تعتقد أن «جلوستر» يستحق ما حدث له؟ لماذا/ لماذا لا؟
- No, he didn't deserve it. He did what was right and legal. He only tried to help the king.
- لا، لم يكن يستحق ذلك. لقد فعل ما هو صحيح وقانوني. لقد حاول فقط مساعدة الملك.

##### 6. In your opinion, what can help people to stop disagreeing and be friendly again? (SB)

- في اعتقادك، ما الذي يمكن أن يساعد الناس على التوقف عن الخلاف والعودة إلى الصداقة مرة أخرى؟



- People must be patient and support what is right and legal.

يجب على الناس التحلي بالصبر ودعم ما هو صحيح وشرعي.

**7. What do you think Edmund, Goneril and Regan have in common?**

في اعتقادك ما هو الشيء المشترك بين «إدموند» و «جونيريل» و «ريجان»؟

- They were not loyal to their fathers.

لم يكونوا مخلصين لأبائهم.

**8. What did Edgar and Cordelia have in common?**

ما هو الشيء المشترك بين «إدجار» و «كورديليا»؟

- They both were loyal to their fathers.

كلاهما كانا مخلصين لوالديهما.

**9. Do you think most people disagree with friends and family sometimes?**

(SB)

هل تعتقد أن معظم الناس يختلفون مع الأصدقاء والعائلة في بعض الأحيان؟

- Yes, I think so.

## B. Factual questions & Answers for Al Azhar students :

تدريبات لطلاب الأزهر الشريف

**1. What did Edmund accuse his father of?**

بما اتهم «إدموند» والده؟

- He accused him of being a spy to the French King.

لقد اتهمه بالتجسس لصالح ملك فرنسا.

**2. What reward did Edmund get for plotting against his father?**

ما المكافأة التي حصل عليها «إدموند» نظير التآمر على والده؟

- He was promised to be the next Duke of Gloucester.

لقد حصل علي وعد بأن يكون دوق «جلوستر» القادم.

**3. Who helped with taking the King to Dover?**

من ساعد في نقل الملك إلى «دوفر»؟

- Gloucester, Kent and Edgar with others.

«جلوستر» و «كينت» و «إدجار» مع آخرين.

**4. How did Cornwall describe Gloucester?**

كيف وصف «كورنوال» «جلوستر»؟

- He described him as a traitor.

لقد وصفه بالخائن.

**5. Why couldn't Cornwall kill Gloucester?**

لماذا لم يتمكن «كورنوال» من قتل «جلوستر»؟

- Because he didn't have the authority.

لأنه لم تكن لديه السلطة.

**6. Who is really cruel, Regan or Gloucester? Why?**

من هو القاسي حقاً، «ريجان» أم «جلوستر»؟ لماذا؟

- Regan was cruel. She took half of her father's kingdom and then plotted against him.

«ريجان» كانت قاسية. لقد أخذت نصف مملكة أبيها ثم تآمرت عليه.



7. How did Regan describe her father?

- She described him as the 'mad king'.

- كيف وصفت «ريجان» والدها؟

- وصفته بالملك المجنون.

8. How did Gloucester lose his sight?

- Cornwall hit him with his sword.

- كيف فقد «جلوستر» بصره؟

- لقد ضربه «كورنوال» بسيفه.

9. Who was Cornwall badly wounded by?

- A servant.

- من أصاب «كورنوال» بجروح بالغة؟

10. When did Gloucester know that he should have trusted his son Edgar?

- When Regan told him that his son Edmund told them that his father betrayed them.

- متى عرف «جلوستر» أنه كان عليه أن يثق بابنه «إدجار»؟

- عندما أخبرته «ريجان» أن ابنه «إدموند» أخبرهم أن والده خانهم.

11. "I trust you, Edmund, and you'll find me to be a better father than he is." Who is the speaker? Why do they say this? (WB)

- «أنا أثق بك يا «إدموند»، وستجدني أباً أفضل منه.» من هو المتحدث؟ لماذا يقول هذا؟

- Cornwall says this to Edmund because he thinks his father Gloucester is a traitor. Of course, he is wrong to trust Edmund.

- قال «كورنوال» هذا لـ «إدموند» لأنه يعتقد أن والده «جلوستر» خائن. بالطبع، هو مخطئ في الثقة بـ «إدموند».

12. "The poor King! His children have done to him what my father has done to me!" Who is the speaker? Why do they say this? (WB)

- «الملك المسكين! لقد فعل به أبنائه ما فعل بي أبي!» من هو المتحدث؟ لماذا يقول هذا؟

- Edgar says this to himself when Kent starts to take the King to Dover. He realises that the King's daughters are as cruel to Lear as Gloucester has been to him.

- يقول «إدجار» هذا لنفسه عندما يبدأ «كينت» بأخذ الملك إلى «دوثر». لقد أدرك أن بنات الملك يتعاملن بقسوة مع «ليار» كما فعل «جلوستر» معه.

13. "I'm sorry, Cornwall, because the truth is so sad." Who is the speaker? Why do they say this? (WB)

- «أنا آسف يا «كورنوال»، لأن الحقيقة مُحزنة للغاية.» من هو المتحدث؟ لماذا يقول هذا؟

- Edmund says this to Cornwall because he says he has a letter that proves Gloucester is a spy.

- قال «إدموند» هذا لـ «كورنوال» لأنه قال إن لديه رسالة تثبت أن «جلوستر» جاسوس.

14. "Edmund told us that you betrayed us. He will not help you." Who is the speaker? Why do they say this? (WB)

- «أخبرنا «إدموند» أنك خنتنا. فهو لن يساعدك.» من هو المتحدث؟ لماذا يقول هذا؟

- Regan says this to Gloucester when he asks Edmund to help him.

- قالت «ريجان» هذا لـ «جلوستر» عندما طلب «جلوستر» من «إدموند» مساعدته.



# General Exercises

## on Act III Scenes (V, VI & VII)

Answer the following questions:

1. Edmund was a man of no principles. Do you agree with this sentence? Why / Why not?  
.....
2. "It's very difficult for me to discover this terrible truth." Do you think Edmund was telling the truth? Why / Why not?  
.....
3. Do you think Edmund benefited from his lies? How?  
.....
4. "I'll have my revenge before I leave Gloucester's house." What does Cornwall mean by these words?  
.....
5. Gloucester proved that he was a good friend to the King. Do you agree? Why / Why not?  
.....
6. "If you wait half an hour, you may both be killed. Follow me." Who would be killed? Why?  
.....
7. "His children have done to him what my father has done to me!" What do you think Edgar mean by these words?  
.....
8. "Find the traitor, Gloucester." Do you think he is really a traitor? Why / Why not?  
.....
9. Why do you think Gloucester and the King went to Dover?  
.....
10. What do you think of the way Cornwall dealt with Gloucester on meeting him?  
.....
11. How did Gloucester lose his sight?  
.....
12. Although Edmund didn't see what happened to his father, he is responsible for all of it. Do you agree? Why / Why not?  
.....



# ACT IV

## Scenes (I, II & III)



### I Vocabulary

#### Key Vocabulary

|                  |                  |                   |               |
|------------------|------------------|-------------------|---------------|
| cliff (n)        | جرف / منحدر صخري | beggar (n)        | متسول         |
| pretend (ed) (v) | يتظاهر بـ        | camp (ed) (v - n) | يعسكر / معسكر |
| rule (d) (v - n) | يحكم / قاعدة     | bleed (bled) (v)  | يدمي / ينزف   |

#### Words and their definitions

|                       |  |               |
|-----------------------|--|---------------|
| rule (d) (dv)         | : to control, or have an authority over a country, or a group of people, etc.                    | يحكم          |
| cliff (n)             | : a high area of rock with a very steep side, often the edge of the sea or ocean                 | منحدر صخري    |
| beggar (n)            | : a person who lives by asking people for food or money  | متسول / شحاذ  |
| bleed (ed) (v)        | : to lose blood, especially from a wound or an injury  | ينزف دم       |
| pretend (ed) (v)      | : to behave in a particular way in order to make other people believe something that is not true | يتظاهر بـ     |
| camp (ed) (v)         | : to put up a tent and live in it for a short time   | يقيم معسكر    |
| fall apart (fell) (v) | : when someone is finding life very difficult because something bad has happened                 | ينهار - ينكسر |

#### Verbal Collocations & expressions متلازمات لفظية وتعابير

|                    |                     |                 |                                |
|--------------------|---------------------|-----------------|--------------------------------|
| remind me of ..... | يذكرني بـ           | fall apart      | ينكسر / يعاني من (أزمة عاطفية) |
| hungry for power   | مشتاق / تواق للسلطة | take revenge on | ينتقم من                       |
| angry with         | غاضب من             | cruel to        | قاسي مع                        |
| find the way       | يلتمس الطريق        | make ...mad     | يصيب بالجنون                   |



## II Text of Act IV

ACT  
IV

Act

IV

Scene i

*[In the countryside. Edgar enters.]*

**EDGAR:** When you have nothing, there's nothing left to lose.

*[Gloucester enters led by an Old Man.]*

But what's happened? Are my father's eyes  
bleeding?

**GLOUCESTER:** Go away, good friend. You  
can't help me now.

**OLD MAN:** But I want to help you, sir. You  
can't see. You can't find your way.

**GLOUCESTER:** I don't need any eyes. When  
I had eyes, I couldn't see what I most needed to see. Oh, my dear son  
Edgar. I wish I could hold you, then I would say that I needed eyes  
again!

**OLD MAN:** Who's there?

**EDGAR:** *[To himself.]* Oh, now I feel worse than I ever did before.

**OLD MAN:** Look, it's poor, mad Tom. Where are you going, Tom?

**GLOUCESTER:** Is it a beggar in front of us?

**OLD MAN:** Yes, he's a mad man and a beggar.

**GLOUCESTER:** I saw a beggar in last night's storm. He reminded me of  
my son, but I had no good thoughts about my son then. Now, however,  
I know the truth.

**EDGAR:** *[To himself.]* My father is so sad, he has fallen apart. I wish  
I didn't have to pretend to be a beggar

*[To Gloucester, his father.]*

Hello, sir!

**GLOUCESTER:** Is that the mad beggar?

**OLD MAN:** Yes, it is, my lord.

**GLOUCESTER:** If you really want to help me, bring some clothes for this  
poor beggar. I'll ask him to take me to Dover.

**OLD MAN:** He can't help you, sir. He's mad!

**GLOUCESTER:** Please, help him.

**OLD MAN:** OK, I'll bring him the best clothes that I can find, sir.  
*[He exits.]*





**GLOUCESTER:** Come here, my friend.

**EDGAR:** Are your eyes OK? They're bleeding.

**GLOUCESTER:** Do you know the way to Dover?

**EDGAR:** Yes, sir.

**GLOUCESTER:** Here, take this money. All men should help each other. The rich especially should help the poor. There is a very high cliff in Dover. Take me to the top of it. You don't need to take me anywhere else.

**EDGAR:** Of course. Poor Tom will take you there.

*[They exit.]*

**Act**

**IV**

**Scene ii**

*[In front of the Duke of Albany's Palace. Goneril enters with Edmund.]*

**GONERIL:** Welcome, Edmund.

*[Oswald enters.]*

Where's my husband, Oswald?

I haven't seen him.

**OSWALD:** Madam, he's inside, but he's changed. I told him that the French army had arrived. He smiled. Then I told him you were coming. His answer was, "That is not good."

**GONERIL:** I told him that Gloucester had deceived us and that Edmund had been good to us. Then he told me that I had got everything wrong.

*[To Edmund.]* You shouldn't come in. My husband is angry with you. Go back to Cornwall. Get his army together and help him.

*[Edmund exits.]*

**GONERIL:** *[To herself.]* Edmund, Duke of Gloucester, is hungry for power. Perhaps I should use him to help me.

**OSWALD:** Madam, here comes your husband.

*[The Duke of Albany enters.]*

**ALBANY:** Oh Goneril, I'm starting to feel frightened of you. You are evil!

**GONERIL:** Be quiet! Don't say anything more.

**ALBANY:** What have you done? You and Regan are tigers, not daughters. You've been cruel to your father, a kind old man. How could Cornwall allow you to do this? He has had so much from your father!

**GONERIL:** Soldiers are here from France, but all you do is sit here and cry, "Oh, why is he doing this?" Where is your sword?





**ALBANY:** Look at yourself, Goneril! Evil hides inside you.

*[A messenger enters.]*

**ALBANY:** What is the news?

**MESSENGER:** Oh, my lord, the Duke of Cornwall was killed by his servant after he fought Gloucester, and now Gloucester can't see.

**ALBANY:** Gloucester can't see! Poor Gloucester!

**MESSENGER:** Regan wants a quick answer to this letter.

**GONERIL:** *[To herself.]* In one way, this is good news. Without Cornwall, it's more likely that I can rule over all the kingdom. But now Edmund has gone to my sister's. I don't want him to help her soldiers. I'll read the letter and send her an answer.

*[Goneril exits.]*

**ALBANY:** Where was Gloucester's son Edmund when he fought with Cornwall?

**MESSENGER:** He was travelling here with my lady.

**ALBANY:** But he's not here.

**MESSENGER:** No, my lord. I met him travelling back again.

**ALBANY:** Does he know what has happened?

**MESSENGER:** Yes, my lord. Edmund told us about his father. Edmund left the house so that the Duke of Cornwall could punish Gloucester.

**ALBANY:** *[To himself.]* Gloucester, I thank you for the love you have shown the King, and I'll take revenge for what has happened to you.

*[To the Messenger.]* Come here, friend. Tell me what else you know.

*[They exit together.]*

Act

IV

Scene iii

*[The French camp near Dover. Kent enters with a Gentleman.]*

**KENT:** Tell me sir, why has the King of France returned so suddenly to his country?

**GENTLEMAN:** He had something important to do there.

**KENT:** Did the letters make Queen Cordelia very sad?

**GENTLEMAN:** Yes, sir. She read them while I was there, and I saw that she was crying. But she was not angry.





**KENT:** Did she say anything?

**GENTLEMAN:** Yes, once or twice she called out her father's name. She said, "Sisters, sisters! You left your father outside in the storm! In the night! What have you done?" And after that, she left the room because she wanted to be alone.

**KENT:** Have you spoken to her since then?

**GENTLEMAN:** No.

**KENT:** Well, sir, the poor unhappy King is here, but he does not want to see his daughter.

**GENTLEMAN:** Why, sir?

**KENT:** Because he was so unkind to her before. He sent Cordelia to France and gave everything to her cruel sisters. This has made him mad.

**GENTLEMAN:** The poor man!

**KENT:** Do you have any news of Albany and Cornwall's armies?

**GENTLEMAN:** They are nearby.

**KENT:** Well, sir, I will take you to King Lear.

*[They exit.]*

### **III Main points of Act IV Scenes (I, II & III)**

1. Gloucester led by an old man meets Edgar. Gloucester says he doesn't need eyes because when he had eyes, he couldn't see what he needed to see.
2. Gloucester asks the old man to get some clothes for the poor beggar (Edgar) to take him to Dover.
3. Gloucester gives some money to the mad man (Edgar) to take him to a high cliff in Dover.
4. Goneril arrives with Edmund. Oswald tells her that her husband has changed. Goneril sends Edmund to help Cornwall get the army ready because her husband was angry with him. Goneril plans to make use of Edmund.
5. Goneril's husband Albany tells her that she and Regan are tigers, not daughters. They have been cruel to their father. She criticizes him for not preparing to fight the French army.
6. Cornwall is killed by his servants. Albany is sad to know Gloucester has become blind. Goneril is happy about the death of Cornwall and thinks she can rule with the help of Edmund.



7. Albany is surprised to know that Edmund left the house so that Cornwall can punish his father. Albany says he will revenge for what has happened to Gloucester.
8. Kent knows that the King of France has returned so suddenly to his country for something important.
9. The Gentleman tells Kent that the letters made Queen Cordelia sad. She was upset of her sisters who left their father out during the storm.
10. Kent tells the gentleman that King Lear was there but doesn't want to see Cordelia because he was cruel to her.

#### IV Questions and answers

##### A. Critical Thinking Questions & Suggested Answers :

1. "When you have nothing, there's nothing left to lose." What do you think Edgar means by this?

- «عندما لا يكون لديك شيء، فليس هناك ما تخسره». برأيك، ماذا يعني «إدجار» بهذا؟

- I think he means that a person who has lost everything is so desperate that he is ready to do anything.

- أعتقد أنه يقصد أن الشخص الذي فقد كل شيء يكون يائس للغاية لدرجة أنه مستعد لفعل أي شيء.

2. "I don't need any eyes. When I had eyes, I couldn't see what I most needed to see." Why do you think Gloucester says this? (WB)

- «لست بحاجة إلى أي عيون. عندما كان لدي عيون، لم أتمكن من رؤية ما كنت بحاجة لرؤيته».

في اعتقادك لماذا يقول «جلوستر» هذا؟

- Gloucester says this because he realises that he could not see that Edgar was a good son and not Edmund.

- يقول «جلوستر» هذا لأنه أدرك أنه لم يستطيع أن يرى أن «إدجار» كان هو الابن الصالح وليس «إدموند».

3. The Duke of Gloucester was the victim of his loyalty and trust in his son. Explain.

- كان دوق «جلوستر» ضحية ولاءه وثقته بابنه. كيف؟

- Gloucester was tricked by his younger son Edmund. Edmund plotted against his elder brother Edgar. Edmund also plotted against Gloucester himself. Gloucester's loyalty to King Lear made Cornwall hit him on the face with his sword, which made him go blind.

- لقد خدعه ابنه الأصغر «إدموند». تأمر «إدموند» ضد أخيه الأكبر «إدجار». كما تأمر «إدموند» ضد «جلوستر» نفسه. ولاء «جلوستر» للملك «ليار» جعل «كورنوال» يضربه على وجهه بسيفه، مما أصابه بالعمى.



4. If you were Edgar, would you reveal your true identity to your father, Gloucester, to comfort him? Why/Why not?

- لو كنت مكان «إدجار»، هل ستكشف عن هويتك الحقيقية لوالدك «جلوستر» لتهدئته؟ لماذا / لماذا لا؟
- Perhaps I would if that wouldn't put anyone in danger. Duke Gloucester was sad and desperate and he needed emotional support after he had known the truth.
- ربما سأفعل لو أن ذلك لا يعرّض أي شخص للخطر. كان الدوق «جلوستر» حزيناً ويائساً وكان بحاجة إلى الدعم العاطفي بعد أن عرف الحقيقة.

5. "There is a very high cliff in Dover. Take me to the top of it. You don't need to take me anywhere else." Why does Gloucester say this to Edgar and what is he planning to do? (WB)

- «يوجد منحدر مرتفع جداً في «دوفر». خذني إلى قمته. لا تحتاج أن تأخذني إلى أي مكان آخر.» لماذا يقول «جلوستر» هذا لـ «إدجار» وما الذي يخطط للقيام به؟
- Gloucester says this because he wants Edgar to take him to the cliffs, and he is planning to jump from it.
- يقول «جلوستر» هذا لأنه يريد من «إدجار» أن يأخذه إلى المنحدرات، وهو يخطط للقفز منها.

6. Goneril was neither a loving daughter nor a good wife. Explain.

- لم تكن «جونيريل» ابنة مُحبة ولا زوجة صالحة. وضح ذلك.
- She was cruel to her old father and plotted against him. Her husband, Albany, was afraid of her.
- كانت قاسية مع والدها العجوز وتأمرت عليه. وكان زوجها «ألباني» يخاف منها.

7. "You and Regan are tigers, not daughters." Do you think the word 'tigers' really describes the two sisters? Why? (WB)

- «أنت و «ريجان» نمور ولستما فتيات.» هل تعتقد أن كلمة «النمور» تصف الأختين حقاً؟ لماذا؟
- Yes, I think so because they are dangerous and very cruel to their father.
- نعم، أعتقد ذلك لأنهما خطيرتان وقاسيتان جداً مع والدهما.

8. If you were the Duke of Albany, would you fight the French soldiers? Why/Why not?

- لو كنت دوق «ألباني» هل ستقاتل الجنود الفرنسيين؟ لماذا / لماذا لا؟
- No, I wouldn't. They came to support the old King against his two cruel daughters.
- لا، لن أفعل. لقد جاؤوا لدعم الملك العجوز ضد ابنتيه القاسيتين.

9. "Look at yourself, Goneril! Evil hides inside you." Was Albany right to say this? Why/Why not?

- «انظري إلى نفسك يا «جونيريل»! الشر يختبئ بداخلك.» هل كان «ألباني» على حق في قوله هذا؟ لماذا / لماذا لا؟
- Yes, he was. Goneril was all evil. She lied to her father saying she loved him very much. After he had given her half of his kingdom, she plotted against him.
- نعم كان محقاً. كانت «جونيريل» شريرة تماماً. لقد كذبت على والدها قائلة إنها تحبه كثيراً، وبعد أن أعطاه نصف مملكته تأمرت عليه.



## 10. "What do you think of Albany?"

ما رأيك في «ألباني»؟

- He wasn't happy with his wife's evil plans. He showed loyalty to the King.

لم يكن سعيداً بخطط زوجته الشريرة، وأظهر الولاء للملك.

## 11. "He does not want to see his daughter ... because he was so unkind to her before." Who is Kent talking about? Do you think the King regrets the decisions he made against his daughter? Why? (WB)

«لا يريد أن يرى ابنته ... لأنه كان قاسياً معها من قبل.» من الذي يتحدث عنه «كينت»؟ هل تعتقد أن الملك نادم على القرارات التي اتخذها ضد ابنته؟ لماذا؟

- He is talking about Lear and Cordelia. I think so because he finally realises that Cordelia is the one who really loves him the most, but he was unkind to her before.

يتحدث عن «ليار» و «كورديليا». اعتقد ذلك لأنه أدرك أخيراً أن «كورديليا» هي من تحبه أكثر حقاً، لكنه كان قاسياً معها من قبل.

## B. Factual questions & Answers for Al Azhar students :

تدريبات لطلاب الأزهر الشريف

### 1. Who is Poor Tom? Who does the Duke of Gloucester think he is? (SB)

من هو «توم المسكين»؟ ماذا كان يعتقد دوق «جلوستر» في «توم»؟

- Edgar disguises himself as Poor Tom. The Duke of Gloucester thinks he is a mad beggar.

يتنكر «إدجار» في هيئة «توم المسكين». يعتقد دوق «جلوستر» أنه متسول مجنون.

### 2. Why does Albany feel frightened of Goneril? (SB)

لماذا يشعر «ألباني» بالخوف من «جونيريل»؟

- Because he thinks Goneril is evil.

لأنه يعتقد أن «جونيريل» شريرة.

### 3. What does Goneril tell Edmund to do? What does she plan to do? (SB)

ماذا طلبت «جونيريل» من «إدموند» أن يفعل؟ ما الذي تخطط للقيام به؟

- To go back to Cornwall, get his army together and help him. She is planning to use Edmund to help her, as he is hungry for power.

أن يعود إلى «كورنوال» ويجمع جيشه ويساعده. إنها تخطط لاستخدام «إدموند» لمساعدتها، لأنه متعطش للسلطة.

### 4. Why does Goneril think it will be easier for her to rule over the whole kingdom now? (SB)

لماذا تعتقد «جونيريل» أنه سيكون من الأسهل عليها أن تحكم المملكة بأكملها الآن؟

- Because Cornwall is dead.

لأن «كورنوال» مات.



5. Why has the King of France returned to his country? (SB)

- لماذا عاد ملك فرنسا إلى بلاده؟

- Because he had something important to do there.

- لأن لديه شيئاً مهماً للقيام به هناك.

6. Where are Cornwall and Albany's armies? (SB)

- أين جيوش «كورنوال» و «ألباني»؟

- Near Dover.

- بالقرب من «دوفر».

7. "My father is so sad; he has fallen apart. I wish I didn't have to pretend to be a beggar." Who says this? Why was he sorry for pretending to be a beggar? What does it tell you about him? (WB)

- «والدي حزين للغاية، لقد انهيار. ليتني لم أظاهر بأنني متسول.» من يقول هذا؟ لماذا كان نادماً لتظاهره بأنه متسول؟ بماذا يخبركم هذا الكلام عنه؟

- Edgar says this. He regrets his disguise because he wants to tell his father the truth. It tells us he doesn't like deceiving his father and that he is not a bad person.

- «إدجار» يقول هذا نادماً على تنكره لأنه يريد أن يخبر والده بالحقيقة. يخبرنا ذلك أنه لا يحب خداع والده وأنه ليس شخصاً سيئاً.

8. "You shouldn't come in. My husband is angry with you. Go back to Cornwall. Get his army together and help him." Who says this and why? (WB)

- «لا ينبغي أن تدخل. زوجي غاضب منك. ارجع إلى «كورنوال» واجمعوا جيشه وساعده.» من يقول هذا ولماذا؟

- Goneril says this to Edmund. She says that Albany is angry with him so he should use Cornwall's army to help them.

- تقول «جونيريل» هذا لـ «إدموند»، تقول إن «ألباني» غاضب منه لذا يجب عليه استخدام جيش «كورنوال» لمساعدتهم.

9. "You and Regan are tigers, not daughters." Who says this and why? (WB)

- «أنت و «ريجان» نمور ولستما فتيات.» من يقول هذا ولماذا؟

- Albany says this to Goneril when he realises she plans to get power from Lear. Albany is talking about the way Regan and Goneril have treated their father Lear.

- يقول «ألباني» هذا لـ «جونيريل» عندما يدرك أنها تخطط للحصول على السلطة من «ليار». «ألباني» يتحدث عن الطريقة التي تعاملت بها «ريجان» و «جونيريل» مع والدهما «ليار».



# General Exercises

## on Act IV Scenes (I, II & III)

Answer the following questions:

1. "When you have nothing, there's nothing left to lose." What does the speaker mean?  
.....
2. "I wish I didn't have to pretend to be a beggar." Why do you think the speaker said that?  
.....
3. "All men should help each other." What does this quotation tell us about the speaker?  
.....
4. Do you think Albany is pleased with Goneril's behaviour? Why / Why not?  
.....
5. In your point of view, why would Albany be angry with Edmund?  
.....
6. "Edmund, Duke of Gloucester, is hungry for power." What does Gloucester mean?  
.....
7. Do you think being hungry for power is something good or bad? Why?  
.....
8. "I'm starting to feel frightened of you. You are evil!" What can we infer نستنتج from this quotation?  
.....
9. "You and Regan are tigers, not daughters." What do you think of this description?  
.....
10. Although the messenger الرسول told Albany that Cornwall was killed, he was interested in Gloucester who couldn't see. What does this show?  
.....
11. What do you think of the way Goneril received the death of her sister's husband?  
.....
12. The King didn't want to see Cordelia. Why do you think so?  
.....



# ACT IV

## Scenes (IV, V & VI)



### I Vocabulary

#### Key Vocabulary

|              |                |                 |            |
|--------------|----------------|-----------------|------------|
| steep (adj)  | شديد الانحدار  | edge (n)        | حافة       |
| flat (adj)   | مستو / مسطح    | reward (ed) (v) | يكافئ      |
| duty (n)     | واجب           | valuable (adj)  | قيم / ثمين |
| scared (adj) | مرعوب          | war (n)         | حرب        |
| jewels (n)   | مجوهرات        | strange (adj)   | غريب       |
| alive (adj)  | على قيد الحياة | dress (ed) (v)  | يرتدى      |
| purse (n)    | كيس نقود       |                 |            |

#### Words and their definitions

|                 |   |                  |
|-----------------|---|------------------|
| reward (ed) (v) | : to give something to somebody because they have done something good, worked hard, etc   | يكافئ            |
| flat (adj)      | : having a level surface, not curved or sloping   | مسطح             |
| edge (n)        | : the outside limit of an object, a surface or an area; the furthest part from the centre | حافة             |
| duty (n)        | : something that you feel you have to do because it is your moral or legal responsibility | واجب             |
| purse (n)       | : a small bag made of leather, plastic, etc. for carrying coins, paper money, cards, etc  | كيس نقود         |
| jewel (n)       | : a shiny stone that is used in necklaces or bracelets                                    | جوهرة / حجر كريم |

#### Verbal Collocations & expressions متلازمات لفظية وتعبيرات

|                |                        |                    |                       |
|----------------|------------------------|--------------------|-----------------------|
| cruel to       | قاسى مع                | take power         | يتولى السلطة          |
| close to       | قريب من                | rule over          | يسيطر على             |
| feel sorry for | يشعر بالأسى والحزن على | my blood runs cold | التابلى حالة من الرعب |



## II Text of Act IV

ACT  
IV

Act

IV

Scene iv

*[In the French camp. Cordelia, a Doctor and Soldiers enter.]*

**CORDELIA** : I've heard that my father is now mad. Look for him in every field and bring him to me.

*[An Officer exits.]*

Can anyone cure him? I wish I could make him feel better again.

**DOCTOR** : There is a cure, madam. He needs lots of rest.

**CORDELIA** : Find him quickly! I don't want him to hurt himself first.

*[A Messenger enters.]*

**MESSENGER** : I have some news, madam. The British army is coming here.

**CORDELIA** : Our French army is ready for war. Oh dear father, I haven't returned to England to take power for myself. I only fight for love, and as a duty to my father.

*[They exit.]*

Act

IV

Scene v

*[In Gloucester's Castle. Regan enters with Oswald. Oswald has a letter.]*

**REGAN** : Oswald, what do you think is in my sister's letter to Edmund?

**OSWALD** : I don't know, madam.

**REGAN** : *[To herself.]* It was foolish to let Gloucester live, although he's blind. Wherever he goes, people feel sorry for him and angry with us.

**OSWALD** : I must give this letter to Edmund.

**REGAN** : Our army is going tomorrow. Stay with us.

**OSWALD** : I can't stay, madam. My lady Goneril has told me to return to her.

**REGAN** : Why would Goneril write to Edmund? Let me open the letter.

**OSWALD** : Madam, you can't ...

**REGAN** : Listen! My husband is dead and I'm worried that Goneril wants to rule over all of the kingdom. Without a husband, I need the help of a clever man like Edmund. When you see him, give him this.

*[She gives him a letter.]*

If you see the blind traitor, remember this : There will be a reward for the man who kills him.



**OSWALD** : If I meet old Gloucester, madam, I'll show you which lady I follow.  
*[They exit.]*

**Act**

**IV**

**Scene vi**

*[In the countryside near Dover, Gloucester enters with Edgar. Edgar is dressed as a beggar but speaks as himself, not as Poor Tom.]*

**GLOUCESTER** : When will I get to the top of this hill?

**EDGAR** : You're climbing up the hill now.

**GLOUCESTER** : But, I'm sure the ground is flat here.

**EDGAR** : No, it's very steep. Listen, can you hear the sea?

**GLOUCESTER** : No, I can't. But I think your voice has changed. You don't speak like a poor beggar now.

**EDGAR** : You're wrong. Nothing has changed.

**GLOUCESTER** : I think that you speak like an important person.

**EDGAR** : Come on, sir; here's the place. Be careful. It's very high here. The fishermen that walk along the beach look like mice from up here; I can't look down any more, because my blood runs cold, I'm scared that I might fall.

**GLOUCESTER** : Is it very high? Then put me where you are standing now.

**EDGAR** : Give me your hand. You are now very close to the edge of the cliff.  
*[They are on flat ground.]*

**GLOUCESTER** : Let go of my hand. Here's a purse for you, my friend. Inside the purse is a valuable jewel. Leave me here; say goodbye to me and let me hear you walk away.

**EDGAR** : Goodbye, sir.

*[To himself.]* I hope this will help to cure him of his madness.

**GLOUCESTER** : I say goodbye to this world, and I only hope that Edgar is alive. So, goodbye, my friend.  
*[He falls forward onto the ground.]*

**EDGAR** : Goodbye, sir.

*[To himself.]* If he had been where he thought he was, he would be dead now.  
*[To Gloucester in a different voice.]* Hello, sir, are you alive or dead? Can you hear me, sir?





*[To himself.]* He may be dead. No, he's waking up. Who are you, sir?

**GLOUCESTER** : Go away and let me die.

**EDGAR** : You aren't bleeding and you can talk. But you've fallen from the top of a high cliff. It's amazing that you are alive. Say something.

**GLOUCESTER** : But have I fallen or not?

**EDGAR** : Yes, you fell from the top of this white cliff. Look how high it is. Look up.

**GLOUCESTER** : Sadly, I can't. I'm blind.

**EDGAR** : Give me your arm. Stand up. Can you feel your legs?

**GLOUCESTER** : I can.

**EDGAR** : This is very strange. Who was that man that left you on the top of the cliff?

**GLOUCESTER** : He was a poor beggar.

**EDGAR** : As I stood here below, I thought I saw a mad man. Perhaps he wanted to kill you. You're lucky to be alive. You've been saved.

**GLOUCESTER** : I remember now. I thought the beggar was a good man. He took me to that cliff top because I wanted him to.



**EDGAR** : Don't feel guilty or sad now.

*[King Lear enters. He is mad and he is wearing strange things. He is wearing wild flowers in his hair.]*

But who is this man? Only a mad person would dress like that.

**KING LEAR** : I am the King.

**EDGAR** : Oh, what a terrible sight!

**KING LEAR** : Life is more terrible than art is. Here's your money.

*[He gives Edgar some flowers.]*

**GLOUCESTER** : Do I know that voice?

**KING LEAR** : Ha! Is this Goneril or Regan? They pretended to be kind to me and told me how wise I was. But when the rain and wind came and the lightning wouldn't stop, I learnt the truth. My daughters are not women who I can trust! They told me I was everything to them. It was a lie.

**GLOUCESTER** : I know that voice. It is the King!



### III Main points of Act IV Scenes (IV, V & VI)

1. Cordelia orders an officer to find her father and wishes for a cure for him. The British army is coming. Cordelia says she only fights for love not for power **السلطة**.
2. Goneril sends a letter to Edmund. Regan wants to read it. Oswald refuses. She tells Oswald that she is worried that without a husband her sister Goneril would like to rule over the kingdom and that's why she needs the help of a clever man like Edmund.
3. Regan offers a reward for anyone who would kill Gloucester. Oswald thinks he will kill him.
4. Edgar tries to convince Gloucester that he is climbing up the hill. Edgar speaks as himself. Edgar tells Gloucester that it is very high up there. Gloucester gives him a purse **حافظة** with a jewel inside. They say goodbye to each other.
5. Gloucester says goodbye to the world hoping Edgar was alive. He falls forward onto the ground.
6. Edgar then speaks to the blind man as if the blind man has fallen from a cliff but he is still alive.
7. Edgar asks Gloucester about the mad man who was on the cliff and if the mad man wanted to kill him.
8. The King enters wearing strange things. Edgar asks who is this man ?
9. "I am the King." Lear replies. The King says, "Here is your money" He gives Edgar some flowers.
10. The King says that Goneril and Regan pretended to love him but he knew the truth during the storm. Gloucester recognises the king's voice.

### IV Questions and answers

#### A. Critical Thinking Questions & Suggested Answers :

1. Do you think that Gloucester still believes his son Edgar has been cruel to him? Why? (SB)

- هل ما زال «جلوستر» يعتقد أن ابنه «إدجار» كان قاسياً معه؟ لماذا؟

- No, I don't think so. Because he says, "I saw a beggar in last night's storm. He reminded me of my son, but I had no good thoughts about my son then. Now, however, I know the truth."

- لا أعتقد ذلك، فهو يقول: «لقد رأيت متسولاً في عاصفة الليلة الماضية. لقد ذكرني بابني، لكن لم تكن لدى أفكار جيدة عنه في ذلك الوقت. أما الآن فقد عرفت الحقيقة.»

2. Of the three daughters of King Lear, only Cordelia loved him. How do you know? Give two clues.

- من بين بنات الملك «ليار» الثلاث، لم تحبه سوى «كورديليا». كيف علمت بذلك؟

- She came back with a French army to help him although he had sent her off and didn't give her any part of his kingdom.

- لقد عادت مع الجيش الفرنسي لتساعده رغم أنه طردها ولم يمنحها أي جزء من مملكته.



### 3. If you were Cordelia, would you go back to England to defend your father? Why/Why not?

- لو كنت «كورديليا»، هل ستعود إلى إنجلترا للدفاع عن والدك؟ لماذا/ لماذا لا؟  
- Of course, I would. After all, we must look after our parents when they get older or need support.

- بالطبع سأفعل. برغم كل شيء، يجب علينا أن نعتنى بوالدينا عندما يكبران أو يحتاجان الدعم.

### 4. If you were Edgar, would you take Gloucester to a high cliff? Why/Why not?

- لو كنت «إدجار»، هل كنت ستأخذ «جلوستر» إلى منحدر مرتفع؟ لماذا/ لماذا لا؟  
- No, I wouldn't. I wouldn't let my father commit suicide.

- لا، لن أفعل. لن أدع والدي ينتحر.

### 5. Why do you think Gloucester wanted to commit suicide?

- برأيك، لماذا أراد «جلوستر» الانتحار؟  
- I think because he was shocked by what his son Edmund had done to him. Perhaps he couldn't accept the fact that he became blind.  
- أعتقد لأنه ضُدم مما فعله ابنه «إدموند» به. ربما لم يستطع قبول حقيقة أنه أصبح كفيفاً.

### 6. Why do you think Lear went mad?

- برأيك، لماذا أصيب «لير» بالجنون؟  
- Perhaps he was shocked by what Goneril and Regan had done to him. Perhaps old age played a role here.  
- ربما صدم مما فعلته «جونيريل» و «ريجان» به. وربما لعبت الشيخوخة دوراً هنا.

### 7. "They pretended to be kind to me and told me how wise I was. But when the rain and wind came and the lightning wouldn't stop, I learnt the truth."

(WB)

- «لقد تظاهروا باللفظ معي وأخبروني كم أنا حكيم. ولكن عندما هطل المطر وهبت الرياح ولم يتوقف البرق، عرفت الحقيقة.»

#### a. What does Lear mean by "rain and wind"?

(WB)

- ماذا يعنى «لير» بـ «المطر والرياح»؟  
- يقصد الخطر.  
- هل تعتقد أن «لير» على حق؟ لماذا؟

#### b. Do you think Lear is right? Why?

- Yes, I think so. Goneril and Regan betrayed his trust and plotted against him.  
- نعم أعتقد ذلك. لقد خانت كل من «جونيريل» و «ريجان» ثقته وتآمروا عليه.

#### c. What truth is Lear talking about?

- عن أى حقيقة يتحدث «لير»؟  
- لا يستطيع أن يثق فى «ريجان» و «جونيريل».

## B. Factual questions & Answers for Al Azhar students :

تدريبات لطلاب الأزهر الشريف

### 1. "Wherever he goes, people feel sorry for him and angry with us." Who is Regan talking about?

(WB)

- أينما ذهب، يشعر الناس بالأسف عليه والغضب منا. من الذى يتحدث عنه «ريجان»؟  
- Gloucester.



2. **"I wish I could make him feel better again." Who is the speaker? Why do they say this?** (WB)

- «أتمنى أن أجعله يشعر بالتحسن مرة أخرى.» من هو المتحدث؟ لماذا يقول/ تقول هذا؟

- Cordelia says this because she now knows her father is mad and wants him to get well again.

- تقول «كورديليا» هذا لأنها تعلم الآن أن والدها مجنون وتريده أن يتعافى مرة أخرى.

3. **"I can't look down anymore, because my blood runs cold, I'm scared that I might fall." Who is the speaker? Why do they say this?** (WB)

- «لا أستطيع أن أنظر إلى الأسفل لأنني تصيبي قشعريرة، وأخاف أن أسقط.» من هو المتحدث؟ لماذا يقول/ تقول هذا؟

- Edgar says this because he wants his father to think he is at the top of a cliff.

- يقول «إدجار» هذا لأنه يريد أن يعتقد والده أنه على قمة المنحدر الصخري.

4. **"There will be a reward for the man who kills him." Who is the speaker? Why do they say this?** (WB)

- «هناك مكافأة للرجل الذي يقتله.» من هو المتحدث؟ لماذا يقول/ تقول هذا؟

- Regan says this because she wants someone to find and kill

Gloucester.

- تقول «ريجان» هذا لأنها تريد أن يجد شخص ما «جلوستر» ويقتله.

5. **"But who is this man? Only a mad person would dress like that." Who is the speaker? Why do they say this?** (WB)

- «ولكن من هذا الرجل؟ المجنون فقط من يرتدى مثل هذه الملابس.» من هو المتحدث؟ لماذا يقول/ تقول هذا؟

- Edgar says this when he sees King Lear wearing wild flowers in his hair.

- يقول «إدجار» هذا عندما يرى الملك «لير» يضع الزهور البرية على شعره.

6. **"I haven't returned to England to take power for myself." Who is the speaker? Why do they say this?** (WB)

- «لم أعود إلى إنجلترا لأستولى على السلطة لنفسى.» من هو المتحدث؟ لماذا يقول/ تقول هذا؟

- Cordelia says this because she wants people to know she has returned to fight for her father not for herself.

- تقول «كورديليا» هذا لأنها تريد أن يعرف الناس أنها عادت للقتال من أجل والدها وليس من أجل نفسها.

7. **"Wherever he goes, people feel sorry for him and angry with us." Why do people feel sorry for Gloucester?** (WB)

- «أينما ذهب يحزن عليه الناس ويغضبون علينا.» لماذا يشعر الناس بالأسف عليه؟

- Because he is blind and they are responsible for it.

- لأنه أعمى وهم مسئولون عن ذلك.

8. **"Wherever he goes, people feel sorry for him and angry with us." Why are people angry with Regan?**

- «حيثما ذهب يشعر الناس بالأسف عليه والغضب منا.» لماذا الناس غاضبون من «ريجان»؟

- Because they think she was cruel to Gloucester.

- لأنهم يعتقدون أنها كانت قاسية مع «جلوستر».



# General Exercises

## on Act IV Scenes (IV, V & VI)

Answer the following questions:

1. "Can anyone cure him? I wish I could make him feel better again."  
What do you think of Cordelia's behaviour towards her father?  
.....
2. "I don't want him to hurt himself first." What does this quotation  
show us?  
.....
3. Do you think Cordelia came back to take revenge on her sisters?  
Why / Why not?  
.....
4. "I only fight for love, and as a duty to my father." Do you think the  
speaker is telling the truth? Why / Why not?  
.....
5. Why do you think Regan said that Gloucester should have been  
killed?  
.....
6. The two sisters wanted to have Edmund's support. What do you  
think of them?  
.....
7. Do you think Edmund is the suitable person to be asked for help?  
Why / Why not?  
.....
8. In your point of view, is it important to offer a reward for the person  
who can kill Gloucester? Why / Why not?  
.....
9. "If I meet old Gloucester, madam, I'll show you which lady I follow."  
What can we infer from these words?  
.....
10. In your opinion, do you think there are similarities between Cordelia  
and Edgar?  
.....
11. "I only hope that Edgar is alive." What can we infer from this  
sentence?  
.....
12. Why do you think Edgar lied to his father and told him that they  
climbed the high cliff?  
.....



# ACT IV

## Scene VI, continued & Scene VII



### I Vocabulary

#### Key Vocabulary

|                        |             |                     |                   |
|------------------------|-------------|---------------------|-------------------|
| creep / crept (up) (v) | يتسلل       | recognize (d) (v)   | يتعرف على         |
| prisoner (n)           | سجين        | right (n / adj)     | حق / صحيح         |
| battle (n)             | معركة       | attendant (n)       | خادم              |
| stage (n)              | خشبة المسرح | tempt to (ed) (v)   | يفتن أن / يجذب لـ |
| judge (d) (v / n)      | يحكم / قاضي | tent (n)            | خيمة              |
| patient (adj)          | صبور        | take out (took) (v) | يخرج              |
| sense (n)              | حاسة / معنى | nonsense            | بلا معنى          |

#### Words and their definitions

|                   |  |             |
|-------------------|--|-------------|
| attendant (n)     | : a person whose job is to serve or help people in a public place                          | خادم        |
| creep (crept) (v) | : to come close to someone, secretly   | يتسلل       |
| sense (n)         | : something that people can understand   | حاسة        |
| battle (n)        | : a fight between two armies   | معركة       |
| drum (n)          | : a musical instrument you play by hitting   | طبل         |
| stage (n)         | : a raised area, usually in a theatre, etc. where actors, dancers, etc. perform            | خشبة المسرح |
| tent (n)          | : a shelter made of a large sheet that is supported by poles and ropes fixed to the ground | خيمة        |

#### Verbal Collocations & expressions متلزمات لفظية وتعابير

|                       |                               |                       |                                    |
|-----------------------|-------------------------------|-----------------------|------------------------------------|
| stay in this disguise | يظل متنكرًا (في ملابس التنكر) | keep an animal inside | يبقى الحيوان بالداخل (حفاظًا عليه) |
|-----------------------|-------------------------------|-----------------------|------------------------------------|



## II Text of Act IV, continued

Act

IV

Scene vi, continued

*[In the countryside near Dover. Edgar is with Gloucester and King Lear.]*

**KING LEAR :** Did you say that you know my voice, oh man without eyes! Yes, I am the King! But, look at you, what have you done?



**GLOUCESTER :** Your majesty, let me kiss your hand!

**KING LEAR :** I must clean it first.

**GLOUCESTER :** Do you not know me, sir?

**KING LEAR :** I don't know your eyes. Read this letter for me, please.

**GLOUCESTER :** But, I can't see it.

**EDGAR :** *[To himself.]* If I read about this in a story, I wouldn't believe it was true. It is so sad.

**KING LEAR :** Read it!

**GLOUCESTER :** But, look at my eyes!

**KING LEAR :** Oh, I understand. You want some money first. You have no eyes in your head and no money in your purse. But, you understand how things work in this world.

**GLOUCESTER :** I feel my way.

**KING LEAR :** But, you can see with your ears. We now know that a judge will punish a poor man's crime before a rich man's crime.

**GLOUCESTER :** Yes, sir.

**KING LEAR :** Rich men are not punished for the same crimes as a poor man is punished for. Why don't you get some glass eyes and pretend to see things that others do not, like a bad judge ?

**EDGAR :** The King is talking both sense and nonsense!

*[Gloucester cries.]*

**KING LEAR :** Wait. I know you : your name is Gloucester. You must be patient.

**GLOUCESTER :** Oh, what a sad day this is!

**KING LEAR :** *[He stands on a rock.]* This rock is like a stage in a theatre. I'll pretend to creep up on my daughters' husbands and kill them!  
*[A Gentleman enters with Attendants.]*



**GENTLEMAN** : Ah, there he is! Quick, get him!

*[To King Lear.]*

Sorry, sir, your dear daughter ...

**KING LEAR** : What? Am I a prisoner now? Be good to me and I'll reward you. But I need a doctor. My head is not right.

**GENTLEMAN** : You shall have anything you want, your majesty. You are the King and we'll do what you say.

**KING LEAR** : I may still live, then. But you'll need to run to get the reward.

*[He exits running. The Attendants run after him. The Gentleman exits.]*

**GLOUCESTER** : Oh, someone kill me before I am tempted to kill myself!

**EDGAR** : Give me your hand, sir. I'll take you to a place where you'll be safe.

**GLOUCESTER** : Thank you.

*[Oswald enters.]*

**OSWALD** : Look, here's the prize! This man without eyes will make me rich!

*[He takes out his sword.]* Get ready to die, you old traitor!

**GLOUCESTER** : I want to die. I hope you're strong enough to do it.

*[Edgar stands between them.]*

**OSWALD** : Who are you? Why are you helping a traitor? Let go of his arm.

**EDGAR** : I will not let go.

**OSWALD** : Let go of this man or you'll die too!

**EDGAR** : Don't come near the old man.

**OSWALD** : Then take out your sword!

*[They fight. Oswald falls.]*

**OSWALD** : Oh, I'm dying! Before you take my purse, give the letters that I'm carrying to Edmund, the Duke of Gloucester. You'll find him with the British army. Oh, goodbye world!

*[He dies.]*

**GLOUCESTER** : Is he dead?

**EDGAR** : Yes. Sit down, sir, and rest.

Let's look in his pockets; these letters may be useful. Let's read them.

*[He finds a letter and reads it.]*

'Remember, Edmund. Do not let Albany win the battle. If you help me, I will give you more power and riches.

Yours

Goneril.'





That evil woman! She wants Edmund to kill her good husband. I will show this letter to the Duke of Albany. It's lucky that I can tell him of their plan to kill him.

*[The sound of a drum.]*

**EDGAR** : *[To Gloucester, his father.]* Come, give me your hand. I'll take you to a friend's house.

*[They exit together.]*

Act

IV

Scene vii

*[A tent in the French camp. Cordelia enters with Kent, a Doctor and a Gentleman.]*

**CORDELIA** : Please put on some better clothes, Kent.

**KENT** : I'm sorry, madam, but I must stay in this disguise. You must pretend that you don't know me until I tell you.

**CORDELIA** : I understand, my lord.

*[To the Doctor.]* How's the King?

**DOCTOR** : Madam, he's still sleeping.

**CORDELIA** : My father has become like a child. Please, doctor, try to cure my father, whose children have made him mad.

**DOCTOR** : If you like, we can wake up the King. He's slept for a long time.

**CORDELIA** : You know what's best for him.

*[Cordelia and the doctor are standing together in a tent in the French camp. Two servants carry King Lear in on a chair. He's wearing a clean shirt and trousers. He is sleeping.]*

**DOCTOR** : Please, play some music.

**CORDELIA** : Oh, my dear father, let my kisses help to make you feel better. My sisters have done you so much damage!

**KENT** : Kind and dear princess!

**CORDELIA** : How could they send your kind face out into a storm? I would even keep an animal inside on a night like that, but you, poor father, had to stay with beggars in old straw. I can't believe you are still alive after all that.

*[To the Doctor.]* He's waking up. How are you, father? Do you recognise me?





### III Main points of Act IV Scene VI, continued & Scene VII

1. The King speaks to Gloucester. He speaks sense and nonsense according to Edgar.
2. The King gives a letter to the blind man Gloucester asking him to read it saying you have no eyes, but you can understand how things work in the world.
3. The King suggests Gloucester put glass eyes and pretend to see things that others do not, like a bad judge.
4. The King remembers Gloucester. The King behaves strangely pretending to be an actor on a stage who creeps up on his daughter's husbands and kills them.
5. Some men appear trying to take the King to Cordelia, but he runs away.
6. Oswald tries to kill Gloucester, but Edgar kills him. Oswald asks them to give the letter he carries to Edmund.
7. The letter is from Goneril asking Edmund to kill her good husband Duke of Albany. Edgar intends to tell Albany about their plan to kill him.
8. Cordelia asks Kent to put on some better clothes, but he refuses saying he must stay in disguise **متنكر**.
9. The doctor offers to wake the King up because he has slept enough. Two servants bring the king wearing better clothes.
10. Cordelia is affected when she sees her kind father asking how can her sisters keep their father out during the storm. She wouldn't leave an animal outside on a night like that. The King is waking up.

### IV Questions and answers

#### A. Critical Thinking Questions & Suggested Answers :

1. "If I read about this in a story, I wouldn't believe it was true. It is so sad." Why do you think Edgar says this?

- «لو قرأت عن هذا في قصة فلن أصدق أنه صحيح، فهو أمر مُحزن». برأيك، لماذا يقول «إدجار» هذا؟
- Because he sees the King asks Gloucester to read a letter for him. However, the King has gone mad and Gloucester has gone blind.
- لأنه يرى الملك يطلب من «جلوستر» أن يقرأ له رسالة. ومع ذلك، فقد أصيب الملك بالجنون وأصيب «جلوستر» بالعمى.

2. "But you can see with your ears. We now know that a judge will punish a poor man's crime before a rich man's crime." What do you think King Lear meant by these words?

- «ولكنك تستطيع أن ترى بأذنيك. نحن نعلم الآن أن القاضي سيعاقب على جريمة الرجل الفقير قبل جريمة الرجل الغنى». في رأيك، ماذا كان يقصد الملك «لير» بهذه الكلمات؟
- He means there was an atmosphere of injustice.
- يعنى كان هناك جو من الظلم.



3. Why do you think Edgar says that King Lear is talking both 'sense and nonsense'?

(SB)

- برأيك، لماذا يقول «إدجار» أن الملك «ليار» يتحدث بـ «المنطق واللامنطق»؟

- Because some of the King's words are rational and logical while other words are irrational and illogical.

- لأن بعض كلام الملك عقلاني ومنطقي والبعض الآخر غير عقلاني وغير منطقي.

4. King Lear says 'This rock is like a stage in a theatre.' What do you think he means when he says this? Do you agree?

(WB)

- يقول الملك «ليار» «هذه الصخرة تشبه خشبة المسرح». ماذا تعتقد أنه يقصد عندما يقول هذا؟ هل توافق؟

- I think he was talking nonsense. He went mad.

- أعتقد أنه كان يقول كلام فارغ. لقد جن جنونه.

5. "Look, here's the prize! This man without eyes will make me rich!" What do you think Oswald means by this?

- «انظر، ها هي الجائزة! هذا الرجل الأعمى سوف يجعلني ثرياً!» في رأيك، ماذا يعني «أوزوالد» بهذا؟

- He meant that he found Gloucester. He was promised to get a reward if he killed Gloucester.

- كان يقصد أنه وجد «جلوستر». لقد وُعد بالحصول على مكافأة إذا قتل «جلوستر».

6. "I want to die. I hope you're strong enough to do it." Do you think Gloucester was threatening Oswald by these words? Explain your answer.

- «أريد أن أموت. أتمنى أن تكون قوياً بما يكفي للقيام بذلك.» هل تعتقد أن «جلوستر» هدد «أوزوالد» بهذه الكلمات؟ وضح إجابتك.

- No, he wasn't. He meant it. He was really desperate and he wanted to die.

- لا، لم يكن يهدد. لقد كان يقصد هذا. لقد كان حقاً يائساً وأراد أن يموت.

7. How do you feel about the death of Oswald? Why do you feel like this?

(SB)

- ما هو شعورك تجاه وفاة «أوزوالد»؟ لماذا تشعر بهذا؟

- He deserved it. He was a bad person who was ready to do anything for money.

- كان يستحق ذلك. لقد كان شخصاً سيئاً وكان مستعداً لفعل أي شيء مقابل المال.

8. What kind of wife was Goneril? How do you know?

- أي نوع من الزوجات كانت «جونيريل»؟ كيف تعرف ذلك؟

- She was a bad wife. She wanted Edmund to kill her husband.

- كانت زوجة سيئة. أرادت من «إدموند» أن يقتل زوجها.

9. "Please put on some better clothes, Kent." Was it necessary for Kent to be in bad clothes? Why/Why not?

- «من فضلك ارتدي ملابس أفضل يا «كينت».» هل كان من الضروري أن يرتدي «كينت» ملابس سيئة؟ لماذا/ لماذا لا؟

- Yes, it was. He was in disguise.

- نعم لقد كان متلصراً.



10. "Please, doctor, try to cure my father, whose children have made him mad." To what extent is that true? Explain.

- «من فضلك أيها الطبيب حاول أن تعالج والدي الذي أصابه ابنتيه بالجنون.» إلى أي مدى هذا صحيح؟ وضح ذلك.

- This is completely true. Goneril and Regan, Lear's daughters, took his kingdom and plotted against him. Only Cordelia supported him.

- هذا صحيح تماما. «جونيريل» و «ريجان»، ابنتا «لير»، استوليتا على مملكته وتآمرا ضده. فقط «كورديليا» دعمته.

## B. Factual questions & Answers for Al Azhar students :

تدريبات لطلاب الأزهر الشريف

1. What does Regan tell Oswald to do if he sees Gloucester? (SB)

- ماذا طلبت «ريجان» من «أوزوالد» أن يفعل إذا رأى «جلوستر»؟

- أن يقتله.

- To kill him.

2. How does Lear think Gloucester can see without his eyes? (SB)

- كيف يعتقد «لير» أن «جلوستر» يستطيع الرؤية بدون عينيه؟

- يعتقد أنه يمكنه أن يرى بأذنيه.

- He thinks he can see with his ears.

3. Who tries to help Gloucester? (SB)

- من يحاول مساعدة «جلوستر»؟

- «إدجار».

- Edgar.

4. What did Cordelia think about her sisters' behaviour towards their father? (SB)

- ما رأى «كورديليا» فى سلوك أختيها تجاه والدهما؟

- She thought that they had treated him like an animal.

- ظنت أنهما عاملتا كحيوان.

5. What does King Lear want Gloucester to read for him? (SB)

- ماذا طلب الملك «لير» من «جلوستر» أن يقرأ له؟

- خطاب.

- A letter.

6. Why does King Lear want a doctor? (SB)

- لماذا يريد الملك «لير» طبيباً؟

- Because he says his head is not right.

- لأنه يقول إنه مشوش العقل.

7. Who is Oswald carrying letters for? (SB)

- إلى من حمل «أوزوالد» الخطابات؟

- Edmund, the Duke of Gloucester.

- إلى «إدموند» دوق «جلوستر».

8. Who are the letters from? (SB)

- ممن كانت هذه الخطابات؟

- They are from Goneril.

- إنهم من «جونيريل».

9. What does Cordelia ask Kent to do? (SB)

- ماذا تطلب «كورديليا» من «كينت» أن يفعل؟

- She asks him to put on some better clothes.

- تطلب منه أن يرتدى ملابس أفضل.



# General Exercises

## on Act IV (Scene VI, continued & scene VII)

Answer the following questions:

1. "Your majesty, let me kiss your hand!" What can this tell us about the speaker?

2. Edgar couldn't believe what happened around him. Illustrate.

3. Do you feel sorry for the King or Gloucester? Why?

4. In your point of view, is the King a victim to his daughters only? Why?

5. "I'll pretend to creep up on my daughters' husbands and kill them!" Do you think Albany and Cornwall deserve what the King said? Why?

6. "Ah, there he is! Quick, get him!" Who does the speaker want to get? Why?

7. Edgar saved His father's life more than once. Illustrate.

8. "Oh, someone kills me before I am tempted to kill myself!" What does this sentence show?

9. "Look, here's the prize!" What does the speaker mean by "the prize"?

10. "This man without eyes will make me rich!" How do you think that man would make the speaker rich?

11. Do you think Cordelia and Edgar could compensate their fathers for what has happened to them? Why / Why not?

12. If you were Cordelia, would you come to help the King in England or would you ask him to live with you in France instead? Why?





### I Vocabulary

#### Key Vocabulary

|                    |           |                 |                     |
|--------------------|-----------|-----------------|---------------------|
| cage (n)           | قفص       | suffer (ed) (v) | يعانى               |
| invade (d) (v)     | يغزو      | trumpet (n)     | البوق               |
| officer (n)        | ضابط      | equal (adj / n) | مساو - متساو / نظير |
| trust (ed) (v / n) | يثق - ثقة | starve (d) (v)  | يجوع - يموت جوعاً   |
| honestly (adv)     | بأمانة    |                 |                     |

#### Words and their definitions

- invade (d) (v)** : to take or send an army into another country in order to get control of it يغزو
- starve (d) (v)** : to suffer or to die because there is not enough food يجوع / يموت جوعاً
- trust (ed) (v / n)** : to be confident that someone or something is honest, fair and reliable يثق / ثقة
- cage (n)** : a container made of wire or metal bars and used for keeping birds and animals in قفص

#### Verbal Collocations & expressions متلازمات لفظية وتعابير

|                 |                      |                          |                                 |
|-----------------|----------------------|--------------------------|---------------------------------|
| take control of | يسيطر على            | win a battle             | يكسب معركة                      |
| go on           | يستمر                | laugh at                 | يسخر من                         |
| put on          | يرتدى (ملابس)        | a bitter pill to swallow | وضع مؤلم لا نملك تغييره         |
| win more power  | يكتسب مزيد من السلطة | take power from          | ينتزع السلطة من                 |
| blow a trumpet  | ينفخ البوق           | go into a battle         | يذهب للمعركة / يشترك في المعركة |
| lose a battle   | يخسر معركة           | feel sorry for           | يشعر بالأسى على                 |



## II Text of Acts IV & V

### Act

### IV

### Scene vii, continued

*[A tent in the French camp. Cordelia talks with Kent, a Doctor and a Gentleman.]*

**KING LEAR :** What are you doing? You shouldn't help me to live. You may be happy, but I feel like I'm on a wheel of fire.

**CORDELIA :** Sir, do you know who I am?

**KING LEAR :** Where am I? Is it day or night?

**CORDELIA :** Look at me, please. No, you don't have to kneel before me.

**KING LEAR :** Lady. I'm a very foolish old man, more than eighty years old, and I think I'm a little bit mad. I think I should know you, and also this man ...

*[He points to Kent.]*

... but I'm not sure. I can't remember putting on these clothes and I don't know where I stayed last night. Don't laugh at me, but is it possible that you're my daughter, Cordelia?



**CORDELIA :** It's true! Yes, I am! I am!

**KING LEAR :** Are you crying? Yes, you are. Please, don't cry. If you have some poison for me, I'll drink it. Your sisters have been cruel to me. You have a good reason to be cruel to me, but they do not.

**CORDELIA :** I'll never be cruel to you, Father.

**KING LEAR :** Am I in France?

**KENT :** No, your majesty. You're in your own kingdom.

**KING LEAR :** This can't be true.

**DOCTOR :** I think it's better to leave now. He needs to sleep.

**KING LEAR :** *[To Cordelia.]* Please, can you forgive me? I'm old and foolish. It's better to forget me now.



*[In the British camp near Dover. Edmund enters with Regan.]*

**REGAN** : Now, Edmund. Tell me honestly, are you working for my sister, Goneril?

**EDMUND** : I am not, madam.

**REGAN** : So, you're not helping her to take my lands from me?

**EDMUND** : No, you mustn't think these things.

**REGAN** : I don't trust my sister. Edmund, please don't work with her.

**EDMUND** : Don't worry. She and her husband the Duke of Albany ...

*[The Duke of Albany enters with Goneril and some soldiers.]*

**GONERIL** : *[To herself.]* I must not let Edmund work for my sister.

**ALBANY** : Regan, have you heard the news? The King is with his daughter, Cordelia, and others who are helping him. We must be ready to fight now because the French army have invaded. But the French are not here to help Lear. I think we have been too cruel to the King.

**REGAN** : Why are you telling me this now?

**GONERIL** : We must join together against the enemy.

**ALBANY** : Let's plan what to do with the officers. Then we can go into battle.

**EDMUND** : I can help you. I'll join you in your tent soon.

**REGAN** : Are you coming with us, Goneril?

**GONERIL** : No.

**REGAN** : Please, come with us.

**GONERIL** : *[To herself.]* Oh, I know why you want me to go. You don't want me to stay here with Edmund.

*[To Regan.]* I'll come soon.

*[As they exit, Edgar enters. He is still disguised as Poor Tom.]*

**EDGAR** : *[To Albany.]* I'm a poor man, but please listen to me. Before you fight the battle with the French, read this letter. If you win the battle, blow your trumpet so I know what has happened. I can prove what is written there. Good luck!

*[Edgar exits. Albany reads the letter and then exits. Then Edmund enters.]*





**EDMUND** : I've told both the sisters that I'll help them to win more power. Now they do not trust each other. So, who should I help the most? Regan? Goneril? Both of them? Or perhaps neither of them. I can't take power if both sisters are living. Let me think ... Goneril still has a husband. I'll use his help to win the battle. But I know that her husband feels sorry for King Lear and Cordelia, so when the battle is over, he must die. Then King Lear and Cordelia will be my prisoners! Now it is time for me to start to **take** control of the kingdom!  
[He exits.]

Act

V

Scene ii

[In a field between the British and the French. There are sounds of a battle. Edgar and Gloucester enter.]

**EDGAR** : King Lear has lost the battle, and he's now a prisoner with his daughter Cordelia. This is a bitter pill to swallow. Quick, we must leave.

**GLOUCESTER** : I can't go on. Leave me. I can die here.

**EDGAR** : No. Remember that we can't choose the time of our death, just as we can't choose the time of our birth.

**GLOUCESTER** : You're right.

**EDGAR** : Let's go.

[They exit.]

Act

V

Scene iii

[In the British camp, near Dover. Edmund enters with King Lear and Cordelia, some soldiers and a Captain. Lear and Cordelia are prisoners.]

**EDMUND** : Guard them carefully until we know what Goneril and Regan want to do with them.

**CORDELIA** : I'm not worried about myself. I only feel sad for the King because he has suffered so much. Father, do you want to see my sisters?

**KING LEAR** : No, I do not! I'd prefer to go to prison. There we can be together. We'll sing like birds in a cage!

**EDMUND** : Take them away from me.





**KING LEAR** : I'm so happy that you're with me, Cordelia. We won't be apart again. Dry your eyes, daughter. Our enemies will **starve** before they make us cry! Let us go.

*[King Lear and Cordelia exit with the guards.]*

**EDMUND** : Come here, Captain. Follow the prisoners to the prison. Read this message and do as it says. If you do this, I'll reward you.

*[Edmund gives the Captain a note.]*

**CAPTAIN** : I'll do what the message says, my Lord.

*[The Captain and the soldiers exit. Albany enters with Goneril, Regan and some soldiers.]*

**ALBANY** : Edmund, you were very brave in battle today and we did well to win. Do you have the prisoners? Bring them to me so I can decide what is best for the future of our kingdom.

**EDMUND** : Albany, I have sent the old King to a prison with a guard. We can't let people see him. He's old, and his age will make the soldiers who see him feel sorry for him. They might want to support him. I've sent Queen Cordelia to prison with him. You can see them tomorrow.

**ALBANY** : Listen, Edmund. You're a good soldier, but you aren't my **equal**. You shouldn't make these decisions.

**REGAN** : I see kind Edmund as an equal. He led our soldiers well today in battle. I think he can call himself equal to you.

**GONERIL** : Wait, sister. I understand what you're planning. You want Edmund to help you to take power from me and my husband. But this won't happen, because first, Edmund will help me to take power from you!

**REGAN** : *[To Edmund.]* Edmund, help me to take power from my evil sister. If you say yes, you won't be the equal of Albany and Goneril, but you'll be their lord and ruler!

### **III** Main points of Act IV&V Scene VII, continued & Scenes (I, II & III)

1. King Lear is awake, he recognises Cordelia and Kent but he can't remember everything.
2. He asks Cordelia to give him some poison to drink. He says she has a good reason to be cruel to him but her sisters don't. He asks Cordelia to forgive him **تسامحه**.
3. Regan asks Edmund if he is helping her sister Goneril to take her lands. Edmund says "No,"



4. Albany enters with Goneril. They plan to fight the French army. Goneril and Regan each wants Edmund to work for her.
5. Edgar gives Goneril's letter to Edmund to Albany. Albany reads the letter.
6. Edmund thinks whom to help. He plans to help Goneril then kill her husband and start to take control of the the kingdom.
7. Edgar tells Gloucester the bad news that King Lear loses the battle and is a prisoner now with Cordelia.
8. The King and Cordelia appear as prisoners. Cordelia is worried about her father. The King prefers to go to prison with Cordelia and sings like birds in a cage.
9. The King is so happy because Cordelia is with him. Edmund orders a captain to take them to prison and hands him a message ordering him to do as it says.
10. Albany asks Edmund to bring the King and Cordelia in front of him to decide about them. Edmund refuses. Regan supports Edmund against Albany and Goneril saying if Edmund helps her, he will be the Lord and the ruler over Albany and Goneril.

#### IV Questions and answers

##### A. Critical Thinking Questions & Suggested Answers :

1. "Lady. I'm a very foolish old man." Do you agree with what Lear says? Give your reason(s).

- «سيدتي. أنا رجل عجوز أحمق للغاية». هل تتفق مع ما يقوله «لير»؟ أذكر أسبابك.

- Yes, I agree. Lear was tricked by false love words from Goneril and Regan. He couldn't understand true love in Cordelia's behaviour. Now, he is the victim of his foolishness.

- نعم أتفق. لقد انخدع «لير» بكلمات الحب الكاذبة من «جونيريل» و «ريجان». لم يستطع فهم الحب الحقيقي في سلوك «كورديليا»، وهو الآن ضحية لحماقته.

2. Why do you think that Lear kneels before Cordelia? (WB)

- «برأيك، لماذا يركع «لير» أمام «كورديليا»؟

- He wants her to forgive him because he knows he was wrong to send her away.

- يريد أن تسامحه لأنه يعلم أنه أخطأ في إبعادها.

3. "Your sisters have been cruel to me. You have a good reason to be cruel to me, but they do not." Why does Lear say this to Cordelia? (WB)

- «لقد قست أختيك عليّ. أنت لديك سبب وجيه لتكوني قاسية عليّ لكنهما ليس لديهما ذلك». لماذا يقول «لير» هذا لـ «كورديليا»؟



- He sent Cordelia away, so he knew she could be angry with him. He cannot understand why his other daughters have been cruel to him.

- لقد قام بإبعاد «كورديليا» لذلك هو يعلم أنها قد تكون غاضبة منه، غير أنه لا يستطيع أن يفهم لماذا تعاملت ابنتيه الأخريتين معه بقسوة.

**4. Why do you think Regan doesn't want Goneril to talk to Edmund?**

(WB)

- في رأيك، لماذا لا تريد «ريجان» أن تتحدث «جونيريل» مع «إدموند»؟

- She is worried that Edmund will help her sister and not her.

- إنها قلقة من أن «إدموند» سيساعد أختها وليس هي.

**5. "The French are not here to help Lear. I think we have been too cruel to the King." What does this tell us about Albany?**

(WB)

- «الفرنسيون ليسوا هنا لمساعدة «لير». أعتقد أننا قسونا جداً على الملك.» بماذا يخبرنا هذا عن «ألباني»؟

- We learn that he is a good man and wants to help Lear. He is starting to see that his wife is not a good person.

- يدل هذا على أنه رجل طيب ويريد مساعدة «لير». لقد بدأ يدرك أن زوجته ليست شخصاً جيداً.

**6. Do you think Albany trusts Edmund? Why?**

(SB)

- هل تعتقد أن «ألباني» يثق بـ «إدموند»؟ لماذا؟

- No, I don't think so. Edmund is a selfish person who is hungry for power at the expense of anything or anybody.

- لا أعتقد ذلك. «إدموند» شخص أناني متعطش للسلطة على حساب أي شيء أو أي شخص.

**7. "I've told both sisters that I'll help them to win more power. Now, they do not trust each other." What does this tell us about Edmund?**

(WB)

- «لقد أخبرت الأختين أنني سأساعدتهما في الحصول على المزيد من السلطة. والآن لا يثقون ببعضهم البعض.» بماذا يخبرنا هذا عن «إدموند»؟

- It tells us that he will do anything to try to take control. He is not an honest man to be trusted.

- يدل هذا على أنه سيفعل أي شيء للوصول للسلطة. إنه ليس رجلاً أميناً يمكن الوثوق به.

**8. What do you think this refers to when Edgar says "This is a bitter pill to swallow"?**

(WB)

- في اعتقادك، إلى ماذا يشير «إدجار» عندما يقول «هذا قرص مرير يجب ابتلاعه»؟

- The fact that they have lost the battle and Lear and Cordelia are now prisoners.

- حقيقة أنهم خسروا المعركة وأصبح «لير» و «كورديليا» سجينين.

**9. Why do you think Edmund says he sent Lear to prison?**

(WB)

- في اعتقادك، لماذا يقول «إدموند» أنه أرسل «لير» إلى السجن؟

- Because he thinks if the soldiers see him, they will feel sorry for him because he's old.

- لأنه يعتقد أن الجنود إذا رأوه سيشعرون بالأسف عليه لأنه كبير في السن.



10. "I see kind Edmund as an equal. He led our soldiers well today in battle. I think he can call himself equal to you." What does this tell us about Regan? (WB)

- «أرى» إدموند» الطيب على قدم المساواة معنا. لقد قاد جنودنا بشكل جيد اليوم في المعركة. أعتقد أنه يمكن أن يضع نفسه على قدم المساواة معك. بماذا يخبرنا هذا عن «ريجان»؟

- It tells us that she is ready to use Edmund to try to take power from Goneril and Albany.

- يدل هذا على أنها مستعدة لاستخدام «إدموند» لمحاولة الاستيلاء على السلطة من «جونيريل» و «ألباني».

## B. Factual questions & Answers for Al Azhar students :

تدريبات لطلاب الأزهر الشريف

1. Why is Goneril unhappy about Edmund working for Regan? (SB)

- لماذا لم تكن «جونيريل» سعيدة بعمل «إدموند» مع «ريجان»؟

- She believes Edmund will work with her sister to take power from her.  
- تعتقد أن «إدموند» سيعمل مع أختها ليأخذ السلطة منها.

2. How does King Lear feel when he meets Cordelia? (SB)

- ماذا كان شعور الملك «لير» عندما يلتقى «كورديليا»؟

- He feels foolish, but he is happy to be with Cordelia. He asks her to forgive him.

- لقد شعر بالحماسة، لكنه كان سعيد بوجوده مع «كورديليا» وطلب منها أن تسامحه.

3. "Now, it is time for me to start to take control of the kingdom!"

What does Edmund mean by this? (SB)

- «الآن حان الوقت لي أن أبدأ في السيطرة على المملكة» ماذا يقصد «إدموند» بهذا؟

- He means that he wants to manage the situation.

- يعنى أنه يريد السيطرة على الوضع.

4. "This is a bitter pill to swallow." What does Edgar mean by this? (SB)

- «هذا وضع مرير» ماذا يعنى «إدجار» بهذا؟

- He means that the situation is difficult, but he has to accept it.

- يقصد أن الوضع صعب ولكن عليه أن يتقبله.

5. What do Regan and Goneril both want Edmund to do? (WB)

- ماذا تريد كل من «ريجان» و «جونيريل» من «إدموند» أن يفعل؟

- They both want him to help them to take power.

- كلاهما تريد أن يساعدها في الإستيلاء على السلطة.



# General Exercises

on Acts IV&V (Scene VII, continued & Scenes I, II & III)

Answer the following questions:

1. "You shouldn't help me to live." What can you infer from this sentence?  
.....
2. "You may be happy, but I feel like I'm on a wheel of fire." What does the King mean?  
.....
3. The King thought that he made a big mistake towards Cordelia and tried treating the situation. Do you agree with what he had done?  
.....
4. Cordelia is a sensitive girl and she was affected by her father's bad condition. Discuss.  
.....
5. Edmund was a big liar and a cheat. To what extent إلى أي مدى do you agree? Give an example.  
.....
6. "I don't trust my sister. Edmund, please don't work with her." What does this quotation show?  
.....
7. In your point of view, who would Edmund help, Regan or Goneril? Why?  
.....
8. The two sisters thought that Edmund would support them. What can we infer about their characters?  
.....
9. What do you think of Edmund's plan after winning the war against the French army?  
.....
10. "This is a bitter pill to swallow." What do you think the speaker wants to say?  
.....
11. "There we can be together. We'll sing like birds in a cage!" How do you think the King's feeling towards Cordelia is different from before? Why?  
.....





### I Vocabulary

#### Key Vocabulary

|                    |             |                    |                   |
|--------------------|-------------|--------------------|-------------------|
| treason (n)        | خيانة       | tear up (tore) (v) | يقطع لأجزاء صغيرة |
| liar (n)           | كاذب        |                    | - يمزق            |
| trick (ed) (v / n) | يخدع - خدعة | laws (n)           | قوانين            |
| resign (ed) (v)    | يستقيل      | stretcher (n)      | نقالة             |

#### Words and their definitions

|                             |   |                   |
|-----------------------------|---|-------------------|
| ▶ <b>laws (n)</b>           | : rules that everyone must follow in your country | قوانين            |
| ▶ <b>stretcher (n)</b>      | : something you can use to carry an ill person    | نقالة             |
| ▶ <b>liar (n)</b>           | : someone who doesn't tell the truth              | كاذب              |
| ▶ <b>resign (ed) (v)</b>    | : to stop working in a job you do                 | يستقيل            |
| ▶ <b>tear up (tore) (v)</b> | : to destroy paper and pull it into small pieces  | يقطع لأجزاء صغيرة |
| ▶ <b>trick (ed) (v)</b>     | : to fool someone into doing something            | يخدع              |
| ▶ <b>treason (n)</b>        | : a crime against your country                    | خيانة             |

#### Verbal Collocations & expressions متلازمات لفظية وتعابير

|                              |                      |                                   |                              |
|------------------------------|----------------------|-----------------------------------|------------------------------|
| My heart is heavy            | قلبي حزين            | the wheel has come full circle    | عدنا لنقطة البداية (كما كنا) |
| punish someone for something | يعاقب شخص على شيء    | arrest someone for something      | يقبض على شخص بسبب شيء        |
| be guilty of doing something | يقر بذنب القيام بشيء | stop someone from doing something | يمنع شخص من عمل شيء          |
| trick someone into something | يخدع شخص بشيء        | prove something to someone        | يثبت شيء لشخص                |



## II Text of Acts V

Act

V

Scene iii, continued

*[In the British camp, near Dover.]*

**GONERIL** : My sister Regan, do you really want Edmund to help you to take my lands?

**ALBANY** : You can't do this, Edmund.

**EDMUND** : You can't tell me what to do, Albany.

**ALBANY** : Yes I can!

**REGAN** : *[To Edmund.]* Prove that you want to help me, Edmund, by fighting Albany!

**ALBANY** : Listen to me. Edmund, I arrest you for treason.

*[He points to Goneril.]* And you, my wife. Were you planning to take Regan's land from her? With Edmund's help? It's not your land to take. It was given equally to you and Regan by your father!



**GONERIL** : But we could have more power, Husband!

**REGAN** : I feel ill. My stomach hurts!

**GONERIL** : *[To herself.]* Good. If you aren't ill, I will never trust poison again.

**ALBANY** : You have a sword, Edmund. I'm ready to fight you, unless anyone else wants to fight you first!

**EDMUND** : I'm happy to fight anyone who calls me a traitor or a liar. Come then, who wants to fight me?

**REGAN** : Help me. I feel worse.

**ALBANY** : Regan isn't well. Take her to my tent.

*[Regan is helped offstage.]*

Now, if any man here will fight Edmund the traitor, come now, or I'll fight him myself.

*[Edgar enters.]*

Who are you?

**EDGAR** : I have lost my name and title to a traitor; but I'm a brave soldier. Where's Edmund, who calls himself the Duke of Gloucester?

**EDMUND** : I'm here.

**EDGAR** : Then take out your sword. You're a traitor to your brother and



your father. I'm ready to fight you to prove you are a liar to everyone you work for.

*[They fight. Edmund falls.]*

**ALBANY** : Edmund is hurt, can you save him? I want to find out what he knows!

**GONERIL** : They **tricked** you into fighting, Edmund.

**ALBANY** : Be quiet, madam, or I will make you be quiet by reading this letter that you wrote to Edmund.

*[He gives Goneril the letter she wrote to Edmund.]*

*[To Goneril.]* No, don't try to **tear up** the letter! You know what you wrote.

**GONERIL** : Husband, it's true that I wanted Edmund to help me take Regan's land. The **laws** of the kingdom are mine, not yours. Who can punish me for it?

**ALBANY** : You're an evil woman!

*[Goneril exits.]*

**EDMUND** : Albany, I'm guilty of wanting to help both Goneril and Regan, and more, much more. This is the end for me now. *[To Edgar.]* But who are you? If you're a good man, I forgive you.

**EDGAR** : Let us forgive each other. My name's Edgar and I'm your brother. Our father has lost his eyes because of you!

**EDMUND** : I was wrong. I thought that I could be the best man in the kingdom, but now I'm the worst. **The wheel has come full circle.**

**ALBANY** : *[To Edgar.]* I thought that you were an important man. I promise you, I never hated you, or your father!

**EDGAR** : I know that, Albany.

**ALBANY** : Where have you been hiding? How did you know what happened to your father?

**EDGAR** : I've been helping him, my Lord. I disguised myself as a beggar, then I met my father, who's now blind. I became his guide, and stopped him from killing himself. I never told him who I was. That was a big mistake. Just an hour ago, I told him everything, but his heart was too weak. He died smiling.

*[An officer enters with a knife covered in blood.]*

**OFFICER** : Help! Oh, help me!

**EDGAR** : What is it? Why is there blood on that knife?

**OFFICER** : It came from the heart of ... Oh, she's dead!



**ALBANY** : Who's dead? Tell us.

**OFFICER** : Goneril, your wife, sir! And her sister Regan. Goneril has killed herself, and she poisoned Regan before she died.

*[Kent enters.]*

**EDGAR** : Here is Kent.

**KENT** : I have come to see the King. Is he here?

**ALBANY** : Tell us, Edmund, where is the King? And where is Cordelia?

*[The bodies of Goneril and Regan are carried in on stretchers by soldiers.]*

**KENT** : Oh, no! What's happened?

**ALBANY** : Cover their faces.

**EDMUND** : I must do one good thing before I die. Quickly, go to the castle; I wrote a message asking for the deaths of King Lear and Cordelia.

**EDGAR** : Who did you write this message to? We must stop it!

**EDMUND** : *[To the Officer.]* Take my sword. Give it the Captain and he'll know that I have changed the order.

**ALBANY** : Run! Quickly!

*[The Officer exits.]*

**EDMUND** : The message tells the Captain to kill Cordelia in the prison. We wanted people to think that she killed herself.

**ALBANY** : Please, let her be safe! Take him away.

*[Edmund is carried off. King Lear enters with Cordelia dead in his arms. Edgar and the Captain follow.]*

**KING LEAR** : Oh, this is terrible. She is gone forever!

**KENT** : Oh, your majesty!

**KING LEAR** : You're all murderers and traitors! We should have saved her; now she's gone forever! Her voice was always soft and gentle.

*[He sees Kent.]* Aren't you Kent?

**KENT** : Yes, I am. And I've followed you since your madness began.

**KING LEAR** : You're welcome here.

**KENT** : My heart is heavy. Your eldest daughters have died, too.

*[The Captain enters.]*

**CAPTAIN** : Edmund is dead, my lord.

**ALBANY** : He isn't important now. My friends, these are my plans. We'll do everything to help King Lear feel better. I will resign and give my power back to the old King. Edgar and Kent, return to your homes and I'll make sure that my friends are rewarded and my enemies punished.



**KING LEAR** : *[To Cordelia.]* Why should a rat have life, and you have no life at all? I'll never see you again.

*[King Lear dies.]*

**KENT** : Oh, my heart will break!

**EDGAR** : He's gone.

**KENT** : He was very ill. I'm surprised that he lived for so long.

**ALBANY** : Carry him out carefully.

*[To Kent and Edgar.]* My friends, without the King, you two will rule this kingdom.

**EDGAR** : We must remember this sad day.

*[He puts on the crown.]*

The oldest man has suffered the most; we young people will never see as much as Lear, nor live as long as this good King.

*[They exit.]*

**THE END**

### III Main points of Act V Scene III, continued

1. Regan asks Edmund to fight Albany. Albany says he arrests Edmund for treason *الخيانة العظمى* and asks his wife if she was planning to take her sister's lands.
2. Regan feels ill. Goneril had put poison *السّم* to her. Albany asks Edmund to fight unless anyone else wants to fight Edgar first.
3. Regan feels worse. Edgar enters to fight Edmund telling him he was a traitor to his father and brother.
4. Albany threatens to read Goneril's letter to Edmund. Edmund admits his mistakes. Edgar tells him he is his brother and says let us forgive each other.
5. Edgar tells Albany where he was hiding and how he helped his father without telling him who he was.
6. Gloucester dies smiling when he knows it's his son Edgar who was helping him. Goneril kills both herself with a knife and her sister with poison.
7. Edmund tries to do one good thing before his death by trying to change his orders to kill the King and Cordelia.
8. It is too late, King Lear enters with Cordelia dead in his arms.
9. Albany tells them his plans :
  1. He'll do everything to help the King.
  2. He will resign.
  3. Edgar and Kent return to their homes
  4. Friends are rewarded and enemies are punished.
10. King Lear dies. Edgar becomes King.



#### IV Questions and answers

##### A. Critical Thinking Questions & Suggested Answers :

1. Why do you think Edmund said, "The wheel has come full circle"? (SB)

- في اعتقادك، لماذا قال «إدموند»: «لقد دارت العجلة دورة كاملة»؟
- Because he believes he started with no power, then had power and then lost it.
- لأنه يعتقد أنه بدأ بلا سلطة، ثم امتلك السلطة ثم فقدتها.

2. Why do you think Kent said, "My heart is heavy"? (SB)

- في اعتقادك، لماذا قال «كينت»: «قلبي منقبض»؟
- Because he was very sad.
- لأنه حزين جدًا.

3. Did you expect Regan and Goneril to die? Why? (SB)

- هل توقعت موت «ريجان» و «جونيريل»؟ لماذا؟
- Yes. They were evil traitors and they had to be punished for the bad things they had done.
- نعم. لقد كانتا خونة أشرار وكان لابد من معاقبتهم على الأشياء السيئة التي فعلوها.

4. How did you feel at the end of the play? Why? (SB)

- ما هو شعورك في نهاية المسرحية؟ لماذا؟
- I felt sorry for the good people who were killed, especially Cordelia. I don't think it was a fair end to such a loving daughter.
- شعرت بالأسف على الأشخاص الطيبين الذين قتلوا، وخاصة «كورديليا». لا أعتقد أنها كانت نهاية عادلة لمثل هذه الابنة المحبة.

5. Who was your favourite character in the play? Give reasons. (SB)

- من هي شخصيتك المفضلة في المسرحية؟ أعط أسباباً.
- Cordelia. She was a loving daughter who sacrificed her life to save her father.
- «كورديليا». لقد كانت ابنة محبة ضحت بحياتها لإنقاذ والدها.

6. Who is your least favourite character in the play? Explain why. (WB)

- من هي شخصيتك الأقل تفضيلاً في المسرحية؟ اشرح السبب.
- Edmund is my least favourite character. His hunger for power turned him into a traitor who plotted against his brother and his father and whoever was in his way.
- «إدموند» هو شخصيتي الأقل تفضيلاً. لقد حوله تعطشه للسلطة إلى خائن يتآمر على أخيه وأبيه وكل من في طريقه.

7. Did you expect such a dramatic end to the play? Why / Why not? (WB)

- هل توقعت مثل هذه النهاية الدرامية للمسرحية؟ لماذا / لماذا لا؟
- Yes. Greed, hunger for power, treason and cruelty must lead to such a tragical end.
- نعم. الجشع والتعطش للسلطة والخيانة والقسوة يجب أن يؤدي كل هذا إلى مثل هذه النهاية المأساوية.

8. What message do you think this final part of the play gives us? (WB)

- ما هي الرسالة التي تعتقد أن الجزء الأخير من المسرحية يقدمها لنا؟



- Everybody will pay for the evils they do sooner or later.

- الجميع سيدفعون ثمن الشرور التي يفعلونها عاجلاً أم آجلاً.

### 9. What is the moral lesson of King Lear in your opinion? (SB)

- ما هو الدرس الأخلاقي في رواية الملك «ليار» برأيك؟

- A person's actions speak louder than their words alone.

- أفعال الإنسان أبلغ من أقواله وحدها.

## B. Factual questions & Answers for Al Azhar students :

تدريبات لطلاب الأزهر الشريف

### 1. What does Albany say he will do to Edmund? (SB)

- ماذا يقول «ألبنى» أنه سيفعل بـ «إدموند»؟

- He says he will arrest him.

- يقول أنه سوف يعتقله.

### 2. Why does Regan feel ill? (SB)

- لماذا تشعر «ريجان» بالمرض؟

- Because Goneril gave her some poison. لأن «جونيريل» دسّت لها بعض السم.

### 3. Whose blood is on the knife that the officer is carrying? (SB)

- دم من الذي كان على السكين الذي يحمله الضابط؟

- Goneril's blood.

- دم «جونيريل».

### 4. How will the Captain know that Edmund has changed his mind? (SB)

- كيف سيعرف الكابتن أن «إدموند» قد غيّر رأيه؟

- When the Captain receives Edmund's sword, he'll know that Edmund has changed his mind.

- عندما يتسلم الكابتن سيف «إدموند»، سيعلم أن «إدموند» قد غير رأيه.

### 5. Why does Lear say everyone is a traitor and a murderer? (SB)

- لماذا يقول «ليار» أن الجميع خائنون وقتلون؟

- Because Cordelia is dead and he thinks people should have saved her.

- لأن «كورديليا» ماتت ويعتقد أنه كان يجب على الناس إنقاذها.

### 6. What does Albany promise to do for his friends? (SB)

- ماذا وعد «ألبنى» بأن يفعل لأصدقائه؟

- He promises to reward them.

- لقد وعد بمكافأتهم.

### 7. Who rules the kingdom when Lear dies? (SB)

- من حكم المملكة عندما مات «ليار»؟

- Kent and Edgar rule.

- حكم «كينت» و «إدجار».

### 8. What does Edmund think about his actions at the end? (SB)

- ما رأى «إدموند» في تصرفاته في النهاية؟

- He thinks he was wrong.

- أصبح يعتقد أنه كان على خطأ.

### 9. How many people are dead at the end of the last scene of King Lear? (SB)

- كم عدد القتلى في نهاية المشهد الأخير لمسرحية «الملك ليار»؟

- Five people: Goneril, Regan, Cordelia, King Lear and Edmund.

- خمسة أشخاص: «جونيريل»، «ريجان»، «كورديليا»، الملك «ليار» و «إدموند».



# General Exercises

## on Act V (Scene III, continued)

Answer the following questions:

1. "I'm happy to fight anyone who calls me a traitor or a liar." What can we infer from this quotation?

2. Albany has an unexpected surprise to his wife and Edmund. Illustrate.

3. Goneril tried to get rid of her sister by many ways. Discuss.

4. If you were Edgar, would you fight Edmund? Why / Why not?

5. "I'm ready to fight you to prove you are a liar to everyone you work for." What do you think of Edgar's point of view of his brother?

6. Do you think Edmund regretted what he had done? Why / Why not?

7. In your opinion, does Edmund deserve what happened to him? Why / Why not?

8. "I'm the worst. The wheel has come full circle." Who is the speaker and what does he mean by these words?

9. All good and bad people make mistakes, but the difference is whether we mean them or not. Give two examples to prove this.

10. What morals can we learn from this play?

11. Dissatisfaction عدم الرضا is a main theme in this play. Do you agree? How?

12. In your opinion, what are the best and the worst thing in this play?



## General Exercises on play King Lear

### A. Answer the following questions :

1. Edmund was an evil traitor. Explain giving two points.

2. "When you have nothing, there's nothing left to lose." What do you think Edgar means by this?

3. "You and Regan are tigers, not daughters." Do you think the word 'tigers' really describes the two sisters? Why?

### B. Answer the following questions :

1. Do you think that Gloucester still believes his son Edgar has been cruel to him? Why?

2. King Lear says 'This rock is like a stage in theatre.' What do you think he means when he says this? Do you agree?

3. Why do you think that Lear kneels before Cordelia?

### C. Answer the following questions :

1. Why does Regan not want Goneril to talk to Edmund?

2. "If I read about this in a story, I wouldn't believe it was true. It is so sad." Why do you think Edgar says this?

3. Did you expect Regan and Goneril to die? Why?



# For Al-Azhar Students

خاص لطلاب الأزهر الشريف

## 1. Answer the following questions :

1. What does the letter that Edmund show Cornwall prove?  
.....

2. Who is told to take King Lear to Dover in a carriage?  
.....

3. What does Cornwall decide to do to Gloucester?  
.....

## • Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. Duke of Albany ..... with Edmund so Goneril asked him to leave.

a. was happy

b. was angry

c. wanted to fight

d. liked to speak

2. Edmund pretended to fight Edgar .....

a. to protect his father

b. to protect his wife

c. to make Edgar look bad

d. to take gum

3. .... had to leave her family in England.

a. Cordelia

b. Lear's wife

c. Goneril

d. Regan

## 2. Answer the following questions :

1. Which part of Gloucester's body does Cornwall hit with his sword and injure?  
.....

2. What does Edgar wish he didn't have to pretend to be?  
.....

3. Where does Edgar promise to take Gloucester?  
.....

## • Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. Edgar says "When you have nothing, there's nothing ....."

a. to gain

b. to give

c. that can help

d. to lose

2. King Lear wanted to give the largest part of his land to .....

a. the King of France

b. the daughter who loved him most

c. Edgar

d. Kent

3. Regan wanted Edmund to ..... Albany.

a. fight

b. help

c. motivate

d. obey



# Answers of Advanced level

## Unit (7)

### Advanced Exercise On Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. a. alone                      2. c. experience
3. a. determine                4. d. look at
5. b. pick-up

### Advanced Exercise On Language

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. d. b&c
2. b. always impresses
3. a. are stabilising    4. a. owe
5. b. is still remembered

## Unit (8)

### Advanced Exercise On Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. d. argue                      2. b. facility
3. d. b&c                        4. c. connect
5. c. responded

### Advanced Exercise On Language

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. b. will have been bought
2. d. will have forgotten
3. a. will have been collected
4. a. will have been
5. a. will attend

## Unit (9)

### Advanced Exercise On Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. a. volunteered                2. c. to
3. b. challenged                4. d. unchallenged
5. b. endangered

### Advanced Exercise On Language

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. b. become used
2. c. doesn't
3. c. wears
4. a. wasn't
5. a. doesn't work

## Unit (10)

### Advanced Exercise On Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. c. a&b                        2. c. edited out
3. d. broadcast                4. a. find
5. d. matter

### Advanced Exercise On Language

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. d. watched                      2. b. was
3. b. had eaten                      4. a. Using
5. c. Having been polished

## Unit (11)

### Advanced Exercise On Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. a. animate                      2. c. a&b
3. b. gave                        4. d. comics
5. a. utterly

### Advanced Exercise On Language

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. c. have they                      2. c. weren't they
3. d. aren't there                      4. c. does she
5. d. isn't it

## Unit (12)

### Advanced Exercise On Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. a. measured                      2. b. specific
3. d. organisation                      4. a. access
5. b. in

### Advanced Exercise On Language

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. a. who got full marks
2. b. broken
3. a. who is talking
4. b. ,who I love
5. c. announced



 EL-MOASSER

# New Hello!

By A Group Of Supervisors

Mr. Ahmed Sheta

معلم لغة إنجليزية



# Teacher's ORGANIZER

دليلك لاستخدام كتاب المعاصر  
لتدريس فعال و مبدع

Your Guide To Creative and Effective Teaching

Mr. Ahmed Sheta

معلم لغة إنجليزية

**2<sup>nd</sup>**  
**Sec.**  
2024

SECOND TERM  
عام - أزهر

اهداء من ...  
سلسلة كتب المعاصر  
خاص بالسادة المعلمين



**Exercise on (Vocabulary)**

- |                       |                      |
|-----------------------|----------------------|
| 1. a. came across     | 2. b. host           |
| 3. b. determination   | 4. c. get used to    |
| 5. b. encouragement   | 6. b. independent    |
| 7. a. pick            | 8. b. struggle       |
| 9. c. experience      | 10. c. published     |
| 11. b. confused       | 12. b. distracted    |
| 13. c. harbour        | 14. b. challenge     |
| 15. a. understandable | 16. d. lonely        |
| 17. a. whistle        | 18. a. servants      |
| 19. b. determined     | 20. b. stressed      |
| 21. a. experience     | 22. d. a & b         |
| 23. d. drought        | 24. c. weighs        |
| 25. c. volunteered    | 26. a. explore       |
| 27. d. confident      | 28. a. Determination |
| 29. d. Come across    | 30. d. Biology       |
| 31. b. Encouragement  | 32. a. Get used to   |
| 33. a. independent    | 34. d. pick          |
| 35. c. struggle       | 36. c. host          |

**Exercise on (Vocabulary Study)**

- |                      |                     |
|----------------------|---------------------|
| 1. b. reinforcement  | 2. c. support       |
| 3. b. surrender      | 4. a. fight         |
| 5. a. determine      | 6. a. dependent     |
| 7. d. came out       | 8. a. does his best |
| 9. a. do             | 10. a. chief        |
| 11. d. lonesome      | 12. b. attentive    |
| 13. a. encourage     | 14. c. encouraging  |
| 15. a. depends       | 16. d. Independence |
| 17. c. independently | 18. b. to educate   |
| 19. c. to            | 20. a. with         |
| 21. c. servant       |                     |

**Answers key**

إجابات كتاب الشرح (المعاصر)

**General Exercise on (Language)**

- |   |                     |
|---|---------------------|
| 1. b. looks happy   | 2. b. belongs       |
| 3. b. tastes  | 4. c. prefer        |
| 5. a. weigh   | 6. c. bad           |
| 7. c. thinks  | 8. a. wish          |
| 9. d. believe   | 10. b. costs        |
| 11. b. owns   | 12. b. is having    |
| 13. d. sounds   | 14. d. miss         |
| 15. c. love   | 16. b. don't like   |
| 17. a. looks  | 18. b. are killing  |
| 19. b. hate   | 20. c. is having    |
| 21. a. are holding  | 22. c. angrily      |
| 23. c. am thinking  | 24. b. is being     |
| 25. d. angry  | 26. b. tastes       |
| 27. d. is tasting   | 28. c. are weighing |
| 29. c. is smelling  | 30. a. smell        |
| 31. a. mean   | 32. d. doesn't fit  |
| 33. b. am seeing  | 34. a. realises     |
| 35. b. hears  | 36. b. depends      |
| 37. d. includes   | 38. d. is enjoying  |
| 39. c. I am seeing my friends for<br>an informal dinner tomorrow. |                     |
| 40. b. She looks exhausted.                                       |                     |
| 41. a. Silk feels soft.   |                     |

**Lessons 3 & 4****Exercise on (Vocabulary)**

- |                  |                  |
|------------------|------------------|
| 1. d. imagine    | 2. a. in         |
| 3. d. dear diary | 4. b. forgotten  |
| 5. b. taste      | 6. b. feel       |
| 7. d. wish       | 8. b. included   |
| 9. a. accent     | 10. d. mentioned |
| 11. b. entry     | 12. c. organised |
| 13. d. sounded   | 14. b. summarise |
| 15. c. culture   | 16. a. celebrate |



17. d. a & b      18. a. diary  
19. b. All in all      20. d. keep in touch

### Exercise on (Vocabulary Study)

1. c. keep in touch      2. b. made  
3. c. feel      4. a. was  
5. c. tastes      6. b. diary  
7. d. b & c      8. b. well  
9. b. behind      10. d. what to do  
11. a. dairy

### Language (Mini-Tests)

#### (Mini-Test 1)

1. c. are  
2. b. is being cleaned  
3. d. b & c      4. a. feeding  
5. b. being fed      6. a. at the moment

#### (Mini-Test 2)

1. a. is revising  
2. d. is being checked  
3. c. are communicating  
4. c. is studying  
5. b. are always using  
6. a. am travelling      7. d. eat  
8. c. tastes      9. b. takes

### General Exercise on (Language)

1. b. playing      2. c. is watching  
3. c. is raining      4. b. is being down  
5. a. are you doing  
6. c. are you studying  
7. c. are using      8. d. am visiting  
9. c. are always disputing  
10. c. are visiting      11. a. am wearing  
12. d. Is he coming      13. b. aren't you  
14. b. is increasing  
15. d. are always interrupting  
16. b. is riding      17. d. is running  
18. b. am standing      19. a. wants  
20. c. is thinking      21. c. is weighing

22. b. am having  
23. c. is always saying  
24. c. seems      25. b. am having  
26. a. tastes  
27. a. is always making  
28. d. never help  
29. c. is never telling  
30. d. is constantly complaining  
31. a. always get      32. c. is giving  
33. are walking  
34. c. I am being helped with a maths problem by my sister  
35. d. Both 'a' and 'b' are possible  
36. b. Ahmed is flying to London next Friday.  
37. a. Aya is still doing the cooking  
38. d. b & c

### PART THREE

### General Exercise on (Language Hints)

1. d. had gone      2. b. organising  
3. b. had attend      4. c. are  
5. a. is      6. b. else  
7. d. swimming      8. a. hard  
9. d. on      10. c. of  
11. b. to get      12. c. a & b  
13. d. a & b

### (Language Skills)

#### 1. Reading

1. a. A great new discovery  
2. d. Azza Faiad      3. c. student  
4. b. pollution      5. b. Recycling  
6. b. cheap and green  
7. a. Pollution will increase  
8. c. rubbish

#### 3. Translation

Choose the correct Arabic translation from a, b, c or d :

1. b      2. b



1. d                      2. b



- 5. b. showed
- 7. a. building
- 9. c. talent
- 11. d. form
- 13. a. connection
- 15. b. expansion
- 6. c. doing
- 8. b. growth
- 10. b. to open
- 12. a. to
- 14. a. expands

### General Exercise on (Language)

- 1. d. will be sleeping
- 2. c. have been caught
- 3. a. will have
- 4. d. will have prepared
- 5. d. will have completed
- 6. b. By
- 7. a. will have
- 8. c. am travelling
- 9. c. will have been completed
- 10. a. have painted
- 11. a. will your homework have been done
- 12. b. will buy
- 13. d. will have become
- 14. b. are painting
- 15. b. finish
- 16. b. have finished
- 17. c. to have built
- 18. c. will be revising
- 19. d. will have been
- 20. d. will have finished
- 21. c. have been shown
- 22. a. will grow
- 23. c. am doing
- 24. a. Before next week, I will have left.

### Lessons 3&4

#### Exercise on (Vocabulary)

- 1. b. alternative
- 3. c. consider
- 4. d. environmentally friendly
- 5. a. issue
- 7. b. satisfies
- 9. b. responded
- 11. b. earlier
- 13. c. current
- 15. a. inexpensive
- 17. c. paused
- 19. d. leads
- 21. d. further
- 2. a. argument
- 6. d. behalf
- 8. b. significant
- 10. d. later
- 12. d. convenient
- 14. d. satisfactory
- 16. a. governorate
- 18. b. appropriate
- 20. a. cycle
- 22. c. speech

- 23. b. decreases
- 25. b. present
- 27. c. stresses
- 29. a. Environmentally friendly
- 30. a. argument
- 32. c. Significant
- 24. d. grateful
- 26. b. vehicles
- 28. c. crowded
- 31. c. alternative

### Exercise on (Vocabulary Study)

- 1. a. comfortable
- 3. b. acceptable
- 5. d. a & b
- 7. a. with
- 9. d. doing
- 11. c. make
- 13. d. react
- 15. d. response
- 2. b. inquire
- 4. d. on
- 6. a. Reply
- 8. c. using
- 10. d. gets
- 12. b. insignificant
- 14. b. alternatives
- 16. b. significance

### General Exercise on (Language)

- 1. b. will have been
- 3. d. will you have done
- 4. a. will have taken
- 5. b. will have been reclaimed
- 6. a. will have taken
- 8. a. have graduated
- 9. d. won't have finished
- 10. b. will have done
- 11. c. is going to be
- 12. a. will have been
- 13. d. will have arrived
- 14. d. will have had
- 15. a. will have
- 16. a. will have read
- 17. d. will have grown
- 18. d. will have
- 20. b. will be doing
- 22. d. have finished
- 24. a. will look
- 25. b. won't have read
- 26. a. is sending
- 28. b. the mechanic will have checked my car in half an hour.
- 29. a. before
- 2. a. am going
- 7. a. will have
- 19. d. will be
- 21. b. will grow
- 23. a. am staying
- 27. d. b & c
- 30. d. a, b & c



**PART THREE****General Exercise on (Language Hints)**

- |                                 |                       |
|---------------------------------|-----------------------|
| 1. c. why                       | 2. c. obeying         |
| 3. a. Growing                   | 4. c. started         |
| 5. d. Walking                   | 6. d. doing           |
| 7. a. knocking                  | 8. a. Should          |
| 9. c. due to                    | 10. a. That's because |
| 11. b. has                      | 12. d. asking         |
| 13. a. drinking                 | 14. b. to drink       |
| 15. c. a & b                    |                       |
| 16. d. four-metre-high          |                       |
| 17. d. thirty-kilometre-an-hour |                       |

**(Language Skills)****1. Reading**

- d. lack of good relationships
- a. teamwork
- a. communication
- c. Digital Media Teams
- d. program
- a. cooperation
- b. Together with the other members
- d. venture internship

**3. Translation**

**Choose the correct Arabic translation from a, b, c or d :**

- c
- b

**Choose the correct English translation from a, b, c or d :**

- a
- d

**Test on (Unit 8)****1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

- |                         |                     |
|-------------------------|---------------------|
| 1. a. expansion         | 2. a. facilities    |
| 3. c. public            | 4. d. network       |
| 5. b. Underground       | 6. a. alternatives  |
| 7. d. issues            |                     |
| 8. c. will have planted |                     |
| 9. c. be spoken         | 10. d. have arrived |

- d. will have graduated
- a. arrive
- c. will you have
- c. available
- c. am visiting

**2. Read the following passage, then answer the questions :**

- d. self-learning
- b. North Carolina, in the early 20<sup>th</sup> century.
- a. People wouldn't have flown anywhere
- c. never gave up
- a. Two Brothers' Dream
- c. had an engine and propeller
- b. If you don't succeed, keep trying
- a. glider

**3. a. Choose the correct Arabic translation from a, b, c or d :**

- c

**b. Choose the correct English translation from a, b, c or d :**

- a

**4. Answer the following questions :**  
Student's own answer.**5. Writing :**

Student's own answer.

**Al Azhar mini-test****1. Dialogue :**

- a room overlooking the sea
- provide a room with a sea view.
- It's more expensive.
- How much more will I have to pay ?

**2. Writing :**

Student's own answer.

**3. (A) Translate into Arabic:**

يعتقد العلماء أنه سيكون بإمكاننا استخدام الكهرباء في جميع سياراتنا في المستقبل.

**(B) Translate into English:**

We must forget our disputes and conflicts and unite for the sake of Egypt.



## Unit 9

### Lessons 1&2

#### Exercise on (Vocabulary)

- |                     |                    |
|---------------------|--------------------|
| 1. b. biodiversity  | 2. c. challenge    |
| 3. b. conservation  | 4. a. exactly      |
| 5. d. expedition    | 6. b. inhabitants  |
| 7. d. rewarding     | 8. a. scholarship  |
| 9. a. slightly      | 10. b. species     |
| 11. d. survival     | 12. a. preserved   |
| 13. c. challenging  | 14. a. native      |
| 15. d. original     | 16. a. complain    |
| 17. d. generation   | 18. c. recognise   |
| 19. b. well-known   | 20. a. typical     |
| 21. b. council      | 22. d. monitor     |
| 23. c. unique       | 24. c. bay         |
| 25. a. exotic       | 26. b. endangered  |
| 27. c. creature     | 28. b. ensure      |
| 29. d. colony       | 30. c. economy     |
| 31. a. Recycling    | 32. a. generations |
| 33. d. threat       | 34. a. involved    |
| 35. a. progress     | 36. d. livestock   |
| 37. b. variety      | 38. a. Native      |
| 37. c. Challenging  | 38. d. expedition  |
| 39. c. Biodiversity | 40. d. preserve    |
| 41. b. scholarship  | 42. a. species     |

#### Exercise on (Vocabulary Study)

- |                        |                  |
|------------------------|------------------|
| 1. b. preservative     | 2. c. for        |
| 3. c. a decision       | 4. d. a & b      |
| 5. c. satisfying       | 6. b. foreigner  |
| 7. d. a & c            | 8. a. face       |
| 9. a. fight            | 10. a. inhabited |
| 11. c. conservationist | 12. b. for       |
| 13. a. as              | 14. c. to        |

#### Exercise on Language

- |                |                    |
|----------------|--------------------|
| 1. b. the same | 2. a. almost       |
| 3. b. slightly | 4. b. intelligence |

- |  |                      |
|--|----------------------|
| 5. d. taller than                          | 6. b. use to like    |
| 7. b. didn't use to                        | 8. d. use to go      |
| 9. b. used to                              | 10. c. Does Adel     |
| 11. a. teaching                            | 12. c. much easier   |
| 13. b. far                                 | 14. c. more patient  |
| 15. c. exactly the same as                 |                      |
| 16. a. easy                                | 17. a. an adjective  |
| 18. a. used                                | 19. d. isn't         |
| 20. c. does                                |                      |
| 21. d. would always make                   |                      |
| 22. b. get used                            | 23. d. Are you need  |
| 24. b. are used to                         | 25. d. we don't have |
| 26. a. will get used                       | 27. b. does          |
| 28. d. Yara is as tall as Rana             |                      |
| 29. b. I used to be fat, but now I am thin |                      |
| 30. d. don't like koshari any more         |                      |

### Lessons 3&4

#### Exercise on (Vocabulary)

- |                      |                      |
|----------------------|----------------------|
| 1. a. arise          | 2. a. leads          |
| 3. a. so that        | 4. c. result in      |
| 5. a. arise from     | 6. b. However        |
| 7. d. voluntary      | 8. b. as a result    |
| 9. a. risen          | 10. b. career        |
| 11. d. majority      | 12. a. volunteer     |
| 13. a. verb          | 14. c. psychological |
| 15. b. paid          | 16. a. conclusion    |
| 17. c. suitable      | 18. b. contacts      |
| 19. b. gaining       | 20. b. purpose       |
| 21. d. mental        | 22. c. cons          |
| 23. c. benefited     | 24. c. rewarded      |
| 25. b. valuable      | 26. a. contrast      |
| 27. d. opportunities | 28. b. run           |
| 29. a. inspired      | 30. c. community     |
| 31. d. visible       |                      |

#### Exercise on (Vocabulary Study)

- |               |                  |
|---------------|------------------|
| 1. b. from    | 2. c. in         |
| 3. c. leading | 4. d. result in  |
| 5. d. b & c   | 6. b. other than |



SECTION

2

- |                    |                    |
|--------------------|--------------------|
| 7. c. provides     | 8. b. went         |
| 9. d. cover        | 10. d. took        |
| 11. a. got         | 12. d. volunteered |
| 13. a. rather than | 14. d. awarded     |

**General Exercise on (Language)**

- |                                   |                     |
|-----------------------------------|---------------------|
| 1. b. as                          | 2. c. much          |
| 3. c. far more serious            | 4. c. almost        |
| 5. a. far better                  | 6. c. used to leave |
| 7. a. used to                     | 8. b. used to have  |
| 9. b. lives                       | 10. a. used to      |
| 11. b. used to                    | 12. c. go           |
| 13. d. taller than                | 14. b. use          |
| 15. c. Did you use                | 16. d. be annoyed   |
| 17. b. almost as heavy as         |                     |
| 18. d. exactly the same weight as |                     |
| 19. a. would cook                 | 20. a. grow         |
| 21. d. isn't                      | 22. c. taller       |
| 23. d. attended                   | 24. a. to kill      |
| 25. c. became                     | 26. d. There        |
| 27. c. went                       | 28. b. any          |
| 29. c. his                        | 30. a. As           |
| 31. a. quality                    | 32. b. used to      |
| 33. c. used to                    | 34. a. used to      |
| 35. d. b & c                      | 36. a. used to      |
| 37. c. writing                    | 38. d. is used to   |
| 39. c. getting                    |                     |
| 40. a. is not used to making      |                     |
| 41. c. a past habit               |                     |
| 42. a. used to be kind to me      |                     |
| 43. b. there is a bus stop here.  |                     |
| 44. a. She stopped hiding them.   |                     |

**PART THREE**

**General Exercise on (Language Hints)**

- |                     |                   |
|---------------------|-------------------|
| 1. c. did he play   | 2. a. As a result |
| 3. d. not only      | 4. b. to          |
| 5. c. in order that | 6. b. However     |
| 7. a. Consequently  | 8. d. in order to |
| 9. c. so that       | 10. b. does he do |
| 11. c. driving      | 12. d. to putting |

**(Language Skills)**

**1. Reading**

- a. alert
- d. the danger of falling and how to react to it.
- a. on their own      4. b. children
- b. How to help stop home accidents
- c. more dangerous than
- b. Falling      8. a. medical

**3. Translation**

Choose the correct Arabic translation from a, b, c or d :

- a
- c

Choose the correct English translation from a, b, c or d :

- d

**Test on (Unit 9)**

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- |                            |                   |
|----------------------------|-------------------|
| 1. b. biodiversity         | 2. b. exactly     |
| 3. c. inhabitants          | 4. c. preserve    |
| 5. c. scholarship          | 6. c. slightly    |
| 7. c. species              | 8. c. far         |
| 9. b. almost as quickly as |                   |
| 10. b. almost              | 11. c. much       |
| 12. a. used                | 13. c. used to be |
| 14. a. isn't               |                   |
| 15. a. Did he use to work  |                   |

2. Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

- c. have smaller families
- a. people      3. d. Medical care
- b. problems
- c. retire from work
- c. To provide them with security
- a. planning      8. b. decrease

3. a. Choose the correct Arabic translation from a, b, c or d :

- d



- b. Choose the correct English translation from a, b, c or d :**  
• b

**4. Answer the following questions :**  
Student's own answer.

**5. Writing :**  
Student's own answer.

### Al Azhar mini-test

#### 1. Dialogue:

1. What about you?
2. Great idea !
3. When will you leave ?
4. Yes, I do.

#### 2. Writing :

Student's own answer.

#### 3. (a) Translate into Arabic:

إن الكلمة الطيبة أثر طيب علي كل من الانسان والمجتمع لأنها تنشر الأمل والتفاؤل والسعادة والبهجة.

#### (b) Translate into English:

Social media, especially Facebook, have become part of our daily life.

## Unit 10

### Lessons 1 & 2

#### Exercise on (Vocabulary)

- |                    |                       |
|--------------------|-----------------------|
| 1. b. broadcast    | 2. d. channels        |
| 3. b. source       | 4. c. deliberately    |
| 5. c. investigator | 6. c. journalist      |
| 7. b. scene        | 8. c. Search          |
| 9. b. reporter     | 10. b. matter         |
| 11. d. headlines   | 12. c. question       |
| 13. b. programme   | 14. d. editor         |
| 15. a. newsreader  | 16. c. Digital nomads |
| 17. d. checker     | 18. a. correspondent  |
| 19. d. interviewed | 20. d. photographer   |
| 21. c. zoomed      | 22. b. talent         |
| 23. a. confirm     | 24. d. injury         |
| 25. a. disasters   | 26. a. finds          |
| 27. b. meteorite   | 28. c. selected       |

- |                      |                       |
|----------------------|-----------------------|
| 29. c. origin        | 30. b. conference     |
| 31. c. stories       | 32. d. points of view |
| 33. c. holds         | 34. d. fear           |
| 35. b. source        | 36. a. editor         |
| 37. a. search engine | 38. c. headline       |
| 39. a. broadcast     |                       |

#### Exercise on (Vocabulary Study)

- |                    |                    |
|--------------------|--------------------|
| 1. d. accidentally | 2. b. title        |
| 3. c. address      | 4. d. look into    |
| 5. a. deny         | 6. b. doubt        |
| 7. d. b & c        | 8. d. a & b        |
| 9. d. come         | 10. c. verify      |
| 11. a. domestic    | 12. a. into        |
| 13. d. up late     | 14. a. interviewee |
| 15. b. address     | 16. c. title       |

#### General Exercise on (Language)

- |   |                      |
|---|----------------------|
| 1. c. had saved   | 2. a. sent           |
| 3. d. had left  | 4. b. had been       |
| 5. a. arrived / had left                                  | 6. d. discovered     |
| 7. a. wasn't sold   | 8. c. finishing      |
| 9. c. had started   | 10. a. had forgotten |
| 11. c. had already seen                                   |                      |
| 12. d. did  | 13. c. got used to   |
| 14. c. been arrested                                      | 15. d. had forgotten |
| 16. a. had lost   | 17. d. found         |
| 18. d. b & c  | 19. b. checking      |
| 20. a. wasn't awarded                                     |                      |
| 21. d. I didn't leave the house till I had had breakfast. |                      |

### Lessons 3 & 4

#### Exercise on (Vocabulary)

- |                  |                 |
|------------------|-----------------|
| 1. c. witnessed  | 2. d. erected   |
| 3. a. tone       | 4. b. barriers  |
| 5. c. necropolis | 6. a. teenage   |
| 7. c. remarkable | 8. c. sculpture |
| 9. b. remains    | 10. b. launched |
| 11. a. grateful  | 12. a. spill    |



## SECTION

## 2

- |                     |                    |
|---------------------|--------------------|
| 13. b. bank         | 14. c. creation    |
| 15. d. adults       | 16. a. buried      |
| 17. c. incident     | 18. d. exploration |
| 19. b. create       | 20. c. brilliant   |
| 21. b. route        | 22. d. permission  |
| 23. a. spokesperson | 24. b. speed       |

**Exercise on (Vocabulary Study)**

- |                   |                   |
|-------------------|-------------------|
| 1. b. deteriorate | 2. d. a & b       |
| 3. c. built       | 4. a. commonplace |
| 5. c. to be       | 6. c. play        |
| 7. b. making      | 8. a. tell        |
| 9. c. make        | 10. b. for        |
| 11. a. for        | 12. c. out        |

**General Exercise on (Language)**

- |  |                       |
|--|-----------------------|
| 1. c. buying   | 2. b. had done        |
| 3. c. on   | 4. b. doing           |
| 5. b. visited  | 6. c. wasn't          |
| 7. d. had been called  | 8. b. By the time     |
| 9. b. went   | 10. c. had passed     |
| 11. c. had just  | 12. d. had just been  |
| 13. c. had finished  |                       |
| 14. d. had been finished   |                       |
| 15. d. b & c   | 16. a. had gone       |
| 17. d. had left  | 18. c. had learnt     |
| 19. c. had been  | 20. d. when           |
| 21. b. as  | 22. b. had been taken |
| 23. c. had been  | 24. d. had seen       |
| 25. c. had left  | 26. a. Having         |
| 27. d. had   | 28. d. had finished   |
| 29. b. had   | 30. c. did            |
| 31. c. been opened   | 32. c. had drunk      |
| 33. a. Hardly  | 34. d. escaped        |
| 35. c. had   |                       |
| 36. b. Homework had been done                                      |                       |
| 37. b. Before I went home, I had bought the papers for my grandpa. |                       |
| 38. c. she left just after typing the email.                       |                       |
| 39. d. Doing my homework, I went to bed.                           |                       |
| 40. d. a & b   |                       |
| 41. c. Having had my breakfast, I went out.                        |                       |

**PART THREE****General Exercise on (Language Hints)**

- |                  |             |
|------------------|-------------|
| 1. d. no article | 2. c. The   |
| 3. b. one time   | 4. d. a & c |
| 5. a. This       | 6. b. These |
| 7. d. have I had |             |

**(Language Skills)****1. Reading**

- |   |                     |
|---|---------------------|
| 1. a. confront                          | 2. d. seven or more |
| 3. a. The Marquesas                     |                     |
| 4. c. A real adventure at sea           |                     |
| 5. a. so famous                         |                     |
| 6. d. a real accident of a whaling ship |                     |
| 7. b. They eat human flesh              |                     |
| 8. c. crew                              |                     |

**3. Translation**

**Choose the correct Arabic translation from a, b, c or d :**

- |      |      |
|------|------|
| 1. d | 2. b |
|------|------|

**Choose the correct English translation from a, b, c or d :**

- |      |      |
|------|------|
| 1. c | 2. c |
|------|------|

**Test on (Unit 10)**

**1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

- |                      |                      |
|----------------------|----------------------|
| 1. d. broadcast      | 2. a. channel        |
| 3. a. accidentally   | 4. d. investigator   |
| 5. d. some           | 6. c. scene          |
| 7. d. mood           | 8. b. ran            |
| 9. b. had prepared   | 10. b. had I         |
| 11. b. Having        | 12. a. than          |
| 13. a. felt          | 14. d. had forgotten |
| 15. b. being cleaned |                      |

**2. Read the following passage, then answer the questions :**

- |   |                 |
|---|-----------------|
| 1. d. boost                             | 2. a. worthless |
| 3. c. self-acceptance, trust and action |                 |
| 4. c. self-acceptance                   |                 |
| 5. d. leads to confidence and courage   |                 |
| 6. b. buys a car of a latest model      |                 |



7. a. bravery  
8. c. Believing that our past choices were the best

**3. a. Choose the correct Arabic translation from a, b, c or d :**

• b

**b. Choose the correct English translation from a, b, c or d :**

• d

**4. Answer the following questions :**  
Student's own answer.

**5. Writing :**

Student's own answer.

**Al Azhar mini-test**

**1. Dialogue:**

1. Could you help me ?
2. I am ready to help.
3. I the increase in numbers of cars is the main reason.
4. Car fumes pollute the air.

**2. Writing**

Student's own answer.

**3. (a) Translate into Arabic:**

تلعب وسائل الإعلام دوراً بارزاً في تشكيل الرأي العام لأنها تطلعنا على كل ما يحدث في أرجاء العالم.

**(b) Translate into English:**

A lot of young people suffer from some health problems because they misuse computers and mobile phones.

**Unit 11**

**Lessons 1 & 2**

**Exercise on (Vocabulary)**

- |                |                |
|----------------|----------------|
| 1. d. action   | 2. d. animated |
| 3. b. Romantic | 4. d. harness  |

- |                        |                      |
|------------------------|----------------------|
| 5. b. historical       | 6. b. horror         |
| 7. d. hostile          | 8. d. constantly     |
| 9. c. musicals         | 10. b. musical       |
| 11. a. animation       | 12. b. comedies      |
| 13. a. science fiction | 14. d. visuals       |
| 15. b. mates           | 16. d. bestselling   |
| 17. b. adapted         | 18. b. version       |
| 19. b. documentaries   | 20. c. cruel         |
| 21. c. demonstrated    | 22. c. rescue        |
| 23. b. lacks           | 24. d. warmth        |
| 25. b. talent          | 26. c. marvellous    |
| 27. d. remake          | 28. c. storyline     |
| 29. c. mission         | 30. a. brilliant     |
| 31. b. film            | 32. b. neighbourhood |
| 33. a. reviews         | 34. d. approved      |
| 35. a. pity            | 36. d. Musicals      |
| 37. b. Constantly      | 38. a. Talented      |
| 39. d. Science fiction | 40. c. Comedies      |

**Exercise on (Vocabulary Study)**

- |                  |                   |
|------------------|-------------------|
| 1. b. reveal     | 2. d. taken       |
| 3. a. skill      | 4. b. friendly    |
| 5. c. to living  | 6. c. from        |
| 7. d. a & c      | 8. b. get         |
| 9. d. realistic  | 10. d. b & c      |
| 11. d. a little  | 12. a. Liveliness |
| 13. a. comedy    | 14. c. over       |
| 15. a. of        | 16. b. behind     |
| 17. c. horrified |                   |

**Language (Mini-Tests)**

**(Mini-Test 1)**

- |                    |                 |
|--------------------|-----------------|
| 1. c. will         | 2. b. is he     |
| 3. b. is           | 4. d. isn't she |
| 5. c. has he       | 6. b. works     |
| 7. d. doesn't work | 8. c. hasn't    |
| 9. a. she          | 10. b. I        |

**(Mini-Test 2)**

- |               |                  |
|---------------|------------------|
| 1. c. didn't  | 2. b. doesn't he |
| 3. d. doesn't | 4. d. hasn't it  |



## SECTION

## 2

- |                     |                     |
|---------------------|---------------------|
| 5. d. had you       | 6. a. hadn't        |
| 7. a. does he       | 8. c. haven't had   |
| 9. c. doesn't       | 10. b. does         |
| 11. c. don't        | 12. a. do           |
| 13. d. doesn't      | 14. b. does         |
| 15. b. didn't       | 16. a. did          |
| 17. c. was          | 18. d. aren't I     |
| 19. a. am I         | 20. b. hasn't       |
| 22. a. has          | 21. c. doesn't      |
| 23. b. doesn't have | 24. c. has had      |
| 25. d. hasn't had   | 26. d. doesn't      |
| 27. hasn't          | 28. a. don't        |
| 29. b. haven't      | 30. d. didn't       |
| 31. c. did          | 32. b. hadn't       |
| 33. a. had          | 34. b. doesn't need |
| 34. d. wouldn't     |                     |
| 35. d. needn't      | 36. a. needs        |
| 37. c. needed       | 38. b. isn't        |
| 39. a. is           | 40. b. isn't        |
| 41. c. doesn't      | 42. c. doesn't      |
| 43. d. wouldn't     | 44. c. would        |
| 45. c. didn't       | 46. b. hadn't       |

**(Mini-Test 3)**

- |                     |                     |
|---------------------|---------------------|
| 1. c. isn't he      | 2. a. aren't they   |
| 3. a. do they       | 4. c. didn't it     |
| 5. c. they          | 6. a. it            |
| 7. d. they          | 8. c. aren't they   |
| 9. c. didn't they   | 10. a. isn't she    |
| 11. d. haven't they | 12. d. didn't it    |
| 13. b. isn't she    | 14. c. isn't it     |
| 15. a. aren't they  | 16. b. wasn't there |

**(Mini-Test 4)**

- |                  |                   |
|------------------|-------------------|
| 1. b. didn't she | 2. d. wouldn't    |
| 3. a. was it     | 4. c. aren't they |
| 5. d. won't she  | 6. c. will she    |
| 7. c. will she   | 8. a. doesn't he  |

**(Mini-Test 5)**

- |                |                 |
|----------------|-----------------|
| 1. c. shall we | 2. c. have they |
| 3. b. does she | 4. c. did they  |

- |                 |                 |
|-----------------|-----------------|
| 5. a. can       | 6. c. does      |
| 7. c. will you  | 8. d. a, b & c  |
| 7. c. shall we  |                 |
| 9. a. will      | 10. c. oughtn't |
| 11. b. mustn't  | 12. a. does     |
| 13. d. isn't he |                 |

**Lessons 3&4****Exercise on (Vocabulary)**

- |                |                   |
|----------------|-------------------|
| 1. d. awful    | 2. b. hilarious   |
| 3. a. cheerful | 4. c. annoying    |
| 5. b. powerful | 6. d. stupid      |
| 7. a. upset    | 8. c. amazing     |
| 9. c. scenery  | 10. b. personally |
| 11. a. affect  | 12. c. suffer     |
| 13. d. cages   | 14. a. trust      |
| 15. b. invades | 16. d. original   |
| 17. c. brave   | 18. a. mention    |
| 19. d. b & c   | 20. a. starving   |

**Exercise on (Vocabulary Study)**

- |                   |                 |
|-------------------|-----------------|
| 1. b. made        | 2. b. powerful  |
| 3. b. with        | 4. d. to        |
| 5. c. all         | 6. d. up        |
| 7. c. power       | 8. a. playing   |
| 9. c. astonishing | 10. d. a & b    |
| 11. d. happy      | 12. c. pleasant |
| 13. d. b & c      | 14. d. right    |

**Language (Mini-Tests)****(Mini-Test 1)**

- |                              |            |
|------------------------------|------------|
| 1. c. tall girl              | 2. a. tall |
| 3. b. angry                  | 4. d. good |
| 5. c. a boy who was afraid   |            |
| 6. d. babies that are asleep |            |
| 7. a. something wrong        |            |

**(Mini-Test 2)**

- |                                |
|--------------------------------|
| 1. d. the kinder               |
| 2. b. even more expensive than |
| 3. b. more important than      |



4. c. longer than
6. a. The more
8. c. much slower
10. a. the older
5. b. longer
7. d. b & c.
9. b. I do

### (Mini-Test 3)

1. d. the nicest
4. b. least
5. b. most
2. d. the most
3. b. best

### (Mini-Test 4)

1. a. brilliantly
3. d. globally
5. a. heavily
7. c. greatly
9. c. study it easily
11. c. friendly
12. a. badly
13. c. bad
15. c. carefully
2. b. completely
4. b. hardly
6. b. colourfully
8. d. runs quickly
10. b. badly
12. b. heavily
14. d. wrong
16. b. efficiently

### (Mini-Test 5)

1. a. very
3. b. awfully
5. c. big
7. d. very
2. b. absolutely
4. a. rather
6. a. quite
8. d. extremely

### (Mini-Test 6)

1. b. quickly
3. b. clearly
5. d. extremely
7. d. tolerant
8. d. absolutely brilliant
2. a. quick
4. a. clear
6. c. hard

### General Exercise on (Language)

1. b. This is the first time I have ever seen such an intelligent man.
2. b. the more rice you eat, the more weight you put on.
3. c. Naglaa isn't as clever as Esraa.
4. d. Rokaya is as clever as Leen.
5. b. He is very tired.
6. c. it was absolutely astonishing.

7. d. He felt too much anger.
8. c. Luckily, we met him.
9. d. it was surprising that she agreed to marry him.
10. c. he behaves in a cowardly way.
11. a. he teaches well.
12. b. he is perfect at typing on the computer.

## PART THREE

### General Exercise on (Language Hints)

1. a. better
3. d. Like
5. a. as much
7. d. a & c
2. d. b & c
4. c. Unlike
6. c. The
8. a. protect

### (Language Skills)

#### 1. Reading

1. a. enjoyed
3. d. laughed
4. d. Voices
5. c. The kitchen ghost
6. ??? out with friends
7. c. was not angry with
2. c. Sally's brother

#### 3. Translation

1. b
2. d

Choose the correct English translation from a, b, c or d :

1. d
2. d

### Test on (Unit 11)

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. a. animation
3. c. hostile
5. c. hilarious
7. d. romantic
9. c. does he
11. c. will be
13. b. well
15. d. extremely well
2. a. hardness
4. b. Horror
6. d. powerful
8. b. hadn't
10. c. will be
12. a. late
14. d. well-written



2. Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

1. d. Bullying
2. b. Because it is our nature as humans
3. b. different
4. b. are being laughed at
5. a. tolerant
6. a. lower dignity
7. b. powerful
8. a. peers

3. a. Choose the correct Arabic translation from a, b, c or d :

• b

b. Choose the correct English translation from a, b, c or d :

• a

4. Answer the following questions :  
Student's own answer.

5. Writing :

Student's own answer.

### Al Azhar mini-test

1. Dialogue :

1. Do you use social media websites?
2. What about you?
3. Why ?
4. I call them.

2. Writing :

Student's own answer.

3. (a) Translate into Arabic:

ما يتعلمه الطفل بالتجربة من خلال الرياضة له أثر أعمق على شخصيته.

(b) Translate into English:

Tolerance with others is very important, especially when you work with a team.

## Unit 12

### Lessons 1 & 2

#### Exercise on (Vocabulary)

1. b. achievable
2. d. set

- |                     |                     |
|---------------------|---------------------|
| 3. a. recipes       | 4. c. relevant      |
| 5. d. measurable    | 6. a. time-bound    |
| 7. d. a, b & c      | 8. b. specific      |
| 9. c. smart         | 10. c. honeybee     |
| 11. a. entrepreneur | 12. d. profits      |
| 13. b. fit me in    | 14. a. dropped      |
| 15. c. failure      | 16. d. vague        |
| 17. c. progressing  | 18. b. donate       |
| 19. c. essential    | 20. a. finalist     |
| 21. c. qualify      | 22. d. tutorials    |
| 23. b. magnificent  | 24. a. manages      |
| 25. d. adapted      | 26. b. passionate   |
| 27. d. reacted      | 28. a. presentation |
| 29. c. sensible     | 30. a. relevant     |
| 31. b. Time-bound   | 32. d. Specific     |
| 33. a. recipe       | 34. c. Profit       |
| 35. d. entrepreneur | 36. b. achievable   |

#### Exercise on (Vocabulary Study)

- |                    |                   |
|--------------------|-------------------|
| 1. b. dull         | 2. d. a & c       |
| 3. b. a song       | 4. d. smart goals |
| 5. a. non-specific | 6. d. reach       |
| 7. a. gave         | 8. a. ever        |
| 9. c. up           | 10. d. in         |
| 11. c. specific    | 12. a. relevance  |

#### General Exercise on (Language)

- |                 |                 |
|-----------------|-----------------|
| 1. d. a & c     | 2. d. a, b & c  |
| 3. b. whom      | 4. d. a, b & c  |
| 5. c. a & b     | 6. a. which     |
| 7. b. who       | 8. c. which     |
| 9. d. where     | 10. c. a & b    |
| 11. c. a & b    | 12. d. where    |
| 13. a. which    | 14. c. a & b    |
| 15. b. which    | 16. c. a & b    |
| 17. b. which    | 18. b. which    |
| 19. b. at which | 20. c. which    |
| 21. c. whose    | 22. a. whose    |
| 23. d. with     | 24. b. whose    |
| 25. d. a & c    | 26. b. I bought |
| 27. d. a, b & c | 28. b. carrying |
| 29. a. built    | 30. c. a & b    |
| 31. d. a & c    | 32. a. whom     |



**Lessons 3&4****Exercise on (Vocabulary)**

- |                         |                   |
|-------------------------|-------------------|
| 1. a. accessories       | 2. b. global      |
| 3. d. outfit            | 4. a. came across |
| 5. c. crawled           | 6. b. range       |
| 7. c. accessories       | 8. a. local       |
| 9. d. minor             | 10. d. vote       |
| 11. c. selling point    | 12. a. accessible |
| 13. d. loss             | 14. d. sleepsuit  |
| 15. a. non-governmental |                   |
| 16. b. pedal-powered    | 17. a. venue      |
| 18. c. breakthrough     | 19. b. filtered   |
| 20. d. expand           | 21. c. matching   |
| 22. a. fast             | 23. a. accessible |
| 24. d. outline          | 25. c. cobs       |
| 26. b. organisers       | 27. d. joint      |
| 28. d. deaths           | 29. b. sorted out |
| 32. a. Accessories      | 33. b. crawl      |
| 34. c. come across      | 35. d. outfit     |
| 36. b. range            |                   |

**Exercise on (Vocabulary Study)**

- |                         |               |
|-------------------------|---------------|
| 1. b. to seeing         | 2. d. a & b   |
| 3. d. a difference      | 4. a. to      |
| 5. b. break             | 6. d. made    |
| 7. b. experience        | 8. c. selling |
| 9. d. to send           | 10. b. for    |
| 11. a. into             | 12. b. aged   |
| 13. c. organisation man |               |
| 14. a. organisation     |               |

**General Exercise on (Language)**

- |              |             |
|--------------|-------------|
| 1. b. whose  | 2. c. whose |
| 3. b. which  | 4. d. where |
| 5. b. which  | 6. d. which |
| 7. c. which  | 8. d. where |
| 9. a. which  | 10. d. when |
| 11. a. which | 12. b. that |
| 13. b. who   | 14. b. that |

- |   |                        |
|---|------------------------|
| 15. b. which  | 16. c. where           |
| 17. d. living   | 18. d. which           |
| 19. c. which  | 20. b. taken           |
| 21. d. that I saw   | 22. b. to reach        |
| 23. c. whose  | 24. c. she lost        |
| 25. d. with   | 26. d. greeted         |
| 27. d. whose  | 28. a. sold            |
| 29. b. working  | 39. b. which           |
| 30. a. where  | 31. a. with            |
| 32. a. whose  | 33. d. to which        |
| 34. c. played   | 35. c. with            |
| 36. c. overlooking  | 37. d. Salah plays for |
| 38. c. helping  | 39. b. in which        |
| 40. b. whose  |                        |
| 41. c. August is the month which I go to Alexandria in.                 |                        |
| 42. b. There is only one silver-coloured car that we can see right now. |                        |
| 43. a. It is old people that need our help.                             |                        |

**PART THREE****General Exercise on (Language Hints)**

- |             |                 |
|-------------|-----------------|
| 1. a. for   | 2. c. why       |
| 3. d. What  | 4. d. a & c     |
| 5. b. as    | 6. c. for       |
| 7. a. to    | 8. b. but       |
| 9. c. a & b | 10. d. everyday |

**(Language Skills)****1. Reading**

- |  |                    |
|--|--------------------|
| 1. a. pulling sleds in the snow                      |                    |
| 2. c. hair   | 3. c. hair         |
| 4. d. not curly                                      | 5. d. both a and b |
| 6. a. 24   |                    |
| 7. d. they can play and do nothing for men and women |                    |
| 8. d. see  |                    |

**3. Translation**

**Choose the correct Arabic translation from a, b, c or d :**

- |      |      |
|------|------|
| 1. c | 2. c |
|------|------|



Choose the correct English translation from a, b, c or d :

1. a                                      2. c

### Test on (Unit 12)

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- |                       |                  |
|-----------------------|------------------|
| 1. d. b & c           | 2. a. Profitless |
| 3. d. measurable      | 4. b. honeybees  |
| 5. a. joint           | 6. c. experience |
| 7. c. which           |                  |
| 8. d. go to school on |                  |
| 9. d. served          | 10. b. with      |
| 11. d. whose          | 12. a. wearing   |
| 13. b. sent           | 14. d. where     |
| 15. c. I saw          |                  |

2. Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

- |                               |               |
|-------------------------------|---------------|
| 1. c. calm                    | 2. d. reveals |
| 3. c. fan                     | 4. a. Doodles |
| 5. d. Random lines and shapes |               |
| 6. b. paper                   |               |
| 7. b. A flying bird           |               |
| 8. a. Boxes within boxes      |               |

3. a. Choose the correct Arabic translation from a, b, c or d :

- d

b. Choose the correct English translation from a, b, c or d :

- a

4. Answer the following questions :

Student's own answer.

5. Writing :

Student's own answer.

### Al Azhar mini-test

1. Dialogue :

1. No, I didn't.
2. Two hours.
3. How did the actors perform ?
4. Is there anything you didn't like about the film.

2. Writing :

Student's own answer.

3. (a) Translate into Arabic:

في المستقبل سيكون هناك المزيد من الأمصال، وكثير من الأمراض لن تنتشر بسرعة مثلما يحدث الآن.

(b) Translate into English:

You should have enough ambition to achieve your hopes.

Mr. Ahmed Sheta

معلم لغة إنجليزية